CONFINED SPACE

PROFESSIONAL DEVELOPMENT COURSE
CONTINUING EDUCATION COURSE

Technical Learning College

Printing and Saving Instructions

TLC recommends that you download and save this pdf document and assignment to your computer desktop and open it with Adobe Acrobat DC reader.

Adobe Acrobat DC reader is a free computer software program and you can find it at Adobe Acrobat's website.

You can complete the course by viewing the course on your computer or you can print it out. This course booklet does not have the assignment (the test). Please visit our website and download the assignment (the test).

Printing Instructions: Once you have purchased the program, we will give you permission to print this document. If you are going to print this document, it was designed to be printed double-sided or duplexed but can be printed single-sided.

Internet Link to Assignment…
http://www.abctlc.com/downloads/PDF/Confined%20Space%20Ass.pdf

State Approval Listing Link, check to see if your State accepts or has pre-approved this course. Not all States are listed. Not all courses are listed. Do not solely trust our list for it may be outdated. It is your sole responsibility to ensure this course is accepted for credit. No refunds.

Professional Engineers: Most states will accept our courses for credit but we do not officially list the States or Agencies acceptance or approvals.

State Approval Listing URL…
http://www.abctlc.com/downloads/PDF/CEU%20State%20Approvals.pdf

You can obtain a printed version from TLC for an additional $149.95 plus shipping charges.

All downloads are electronically tracked and monitored for security purposes.

Definition of Confined Spaces Requiring an Entry Permit

A Confined space is:
1. Is large enough or so configured that an employee can bodily enter and perform work.
2. Has limited or restricted means for entry or exit (i.e. tanks, vessels, silos, storage bins, hoppers, vaults, and pits are spaces that may have limited means of entry).
3. Is not designed for continuous employee occupancy.

Some States and many employers require the final exam to be proctored.

Do not solely depend on TLC's Approval list for it may be outdated.

United States Library of Congress Number TX 6-600-031
ISBN 978-0-9799928-8-9

Contributing Editors
James L. Six Received a Bachelor of Science Degree in Civil Engineering from the University of Akron in June of 1976, Registered Professional Engineer in the State of Ohio, Number 45031 (Retired), Class IV Water Supply Operator issued by Ohio EPA, Number WS4-1012914-08, Class II Wastewater Collection System Operator issued by Ohio EPA, Number WC2-1012914-94

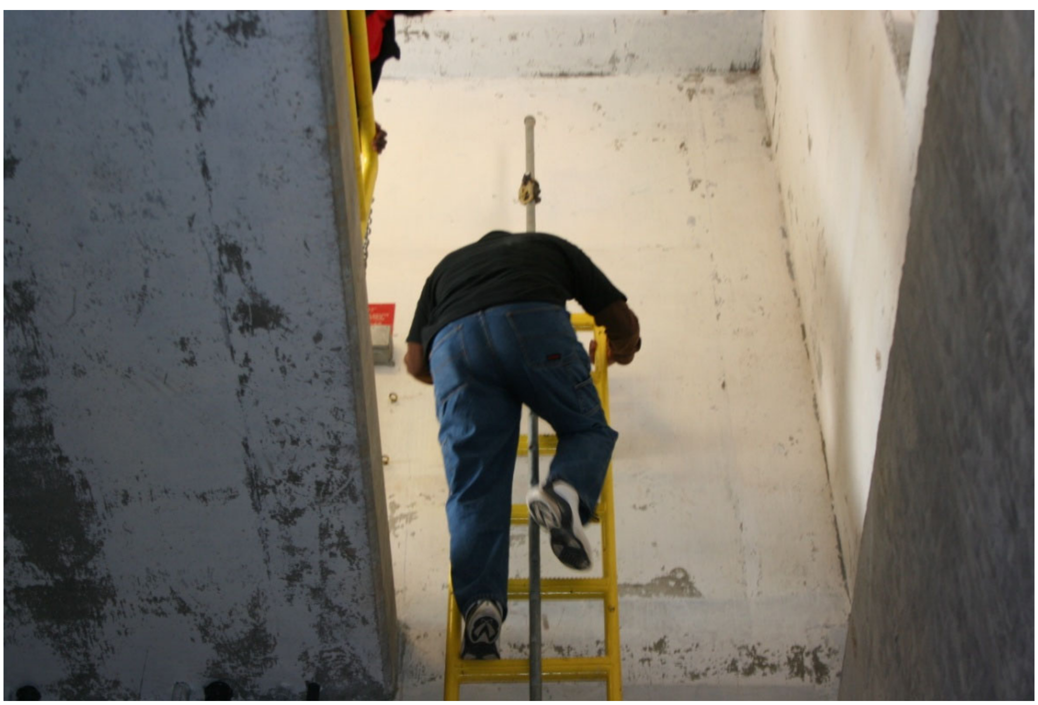
Joseph Camerata has a BS in Management with honors (magna cum laude). He retired as a Chemist in 2006 having worked in the field of chemical, environmental, and industrial hygiene sampling and analysis for 40 years. He has been a professional presenter at an EPA analytical conference at the Biosphere in Arizona and a presenter at an AWWA conference in Mesa, Arizona. He also taught safety classes at the Honeywell and City of Phoenix, and is a motivational/inspirational speaker nationally and internationally.

James Bevan, Water Quality Inspector S.M.E. Twenty years of experience in the environmental field dealing with all aspects of water regulations on the federal, state, and local levels. Experience in the water/wastewater industry includes operation of a wastewater facility, industrial pretreatment program compliance sampling, cross-connection control program management, storm water management, industrial and commercial facility inspections, writing inspection reports for industry, and technical reports per EPA permit requirements. Teacher and Proctor in Charge for Backflow Certification Testing at the ASETT Center in Tucson for the past 15 years and possess an Arizona Community College, Special Teaching Certificate in Environmental Studies. Extensive knowledge and experience in college course and assignment/assessment writing.

Dr. Pete Greer S.M.E., Retired biology instructor, chemistry and biological review.

Jack White, Environmental, Health, Safety expert, City of Phoenix. Art Credits.

A confined space inside another confined space. No permit required signage. What should you do? Death traps are everywhere. Don't play around, make these spaces safe.



Never climb down a fixed ladder without a safety harness as this man is doing. Notice the steel support pole in the middle of the ladder.

Technical Learning College's Scope and Function

Welcome to the Program,

Technical Learning College (TLC) offers affordable continuing education for today's working professionals who need to maintain licenses or certifications. TLC holds several different governmental agency approvals for granting of continuing education credit.

TLC's delivery method of continuing education can include traditional types of classroom lectures and distance-based courses or independent study. TLC's distance based or independent study courses are offered in a print - based distance educational format. We will beat any other training competitor's price for the same CEU material or classroom training.

Our courses are designed to be flexible and for you to finish the material at your convenience. Students can also receive course materials through the mail. The CEU course or e-manual will contain all your lessons, activities and instruction to obtain the assignments. All of TLC's CEU courses allow students to submit assignments using e-mail or fax, or by postal mail. (See the course description for more information.)

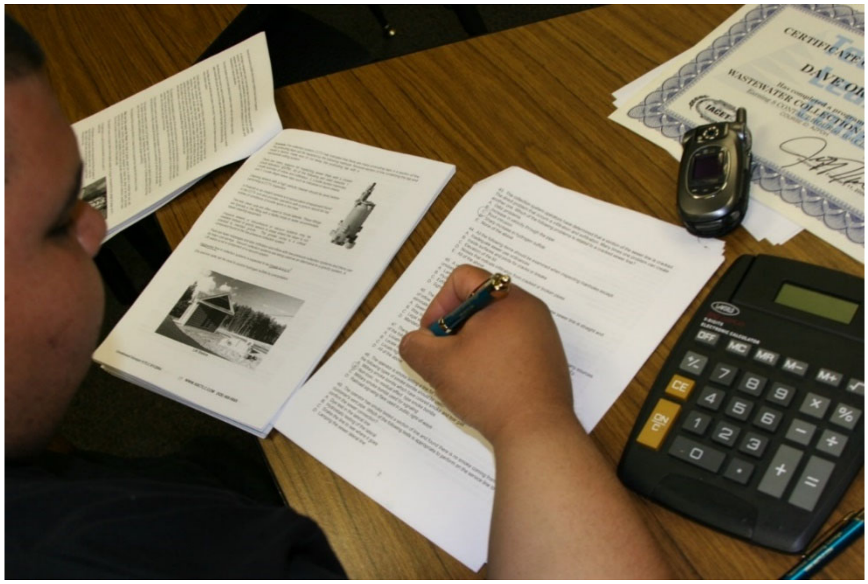
Students have direct contact with their instructor—primarily by e-mail or telephone. TLC's CEU courses may use such technologies as the World Wide Web, e-mail, CD-ROMs, videotapes and hard copies. (See the course description.) Make sure you have access to the necessary equipment before enrolling; i.e., printer, Microsoft Word and/or Adobe Acrobat Reader. Some courses may require proctored closed-book exams, depending upon your state or employer requirements.

Flexible Learning
At TLC there are no scheduled online sessions or passwords you need contend with, nor are you required to participate in learning teams or groups designed for the "typical" younger campus based student. You will work at your own pace, completing assignments in time frames that work best for you. TLC's method of flexible individualized instruction is designed to provide each student the guidance and support needed for successful course completion.

Course Structure
TLC's online courses combine the best of online delivery and traditional university textbooks. You can easily find the course syllabus, course content, assignments, and the post-exam (Assignment). This student-friendly course design allows you the most flexibility in choosing when and where you will study.

Classroom of One
TLC offers you the best of both worlds. You learn on your own terms, on your own time, but you are never on your own. Once enrolled, you will be assigned a personal Student Service Representative who works with you on an individualized basis throughout your program of study. Course specific faculty members (S.M.E.) are assigned at the beginning of each course providing the academic support you need to successfully complete each course. Please call or email us for assistance.

Satisfaction Guaranteed
We have many years of experience, dealing with thousands of students. We assure you, our customer satisfaction is second to none. This is one reason we have taught more than 40,000 students.



We welcome you to do the electronic version of the assignment and submit the answer key and registration to us either by fax or e-mail.

If you need this assignment graded and a certificate of completion within a 48-hour turn around, prepare to pay an additional rush charge of $50.

Contact Numbers
Fax (928) 468-0675
Email Info@tlch2o.com
Telephone (866) 557-1746

Course Description

CONFINED SPACE CEU TRAINING COURSE

Background
Many workplaces contain spaces that are considered "confined" because their configurations hinder the activities of any employees who must enter, work in, and exit them. For example, employees who work in process vessels generally must squeeze in and out through narrow openings and perform their tasks while cramped or contorted. OSHA uses the term "confined space" to describe such spaces.

In addition, there are many instances where employees who work in confined spaces face increased risk of exposure to serious hazards. In some cases, confinement itself poses entrapment hazards. In other cases, confined space work keeps employees closer to hazards, such as asphyxiating atmospheres or the moving parts of machinery. OSHA uses the term "permit-required confined space" (permit space) to describe those spaces that both meet the definition of "confined space" and pose health or safety hazards. Because of various safety hazards inside or near confined spaces, we will examine the Hazard Communication Rule, Respiratory Protection Rule and Excavation and Trenching (Competent Person Rule).

Course Purpose
This is comprehensive safety training course focusing upon confined space dangers and related safety concerns. This course is intended for continuing education or annual safety training. The intent of the course is to ensure a qualified workforce and reduce the possibility of incidents caused by human error. Confined Space entry or work is the most dangerous area that TLC trains students. There are no prerequisites, and no other materials are needed for this course.

Applicable OSHA Rules
1926.21(b)(6)(i)
All employees required to enter into confined or enclosed spaces shall be instructed as to the nature of the hazards involved, the necessary precautions to be taken, and in the use of protective and emergency equipment required. The employer shall comply with any specific regulations that apply to work in dangerous or potentially dangerous areas.

1926.21(b)(6)(ii)
For purposes of paragraph (b)(6)(i) of this section, "confined or enclosed space" means any space having a limited means of egress, which is subject to the accumulation of toxic or flammable contaminants or has an oxygen-deficient atmosphere. Confined or enclosed spaces include, but are not limited to, storage tanks, process vessels, bins, boilers, ventilation or exhaust ducts, sewers, underground utility vaults, tunnels, pipelines, and open-top spaces more than 4 feet in depth, such as pits, tubs, vaults, and vessels.

Course Goals
Confined Space Chapter Learning Objectives
The Confined Space chapter is for students to understand and describe various confined space hazards and how to document and mitigate confined space hazards and related safety related hazards.

Confined Space Chapter Learning Objectives

At the end of this chapter, students will be able to describe and explain:

1. The purpose and need for confined space training.
2. The difference between a confined space and a permit required confined space.
3. The purpose of proper documentation and form completion.

Hazard Communication Chapter Learning Objectives

The basic goal of a Hazard Communication Program is to make sure employers and employees know about potential work hazards, how to recognize them and, most importantly, how to protect themselves. This chapter is designed to help reduce the possible incidence of chemical source illness and injuries.

Hazard Communication Chapter Learning Objectives

By the end of this chapter, students should able to understand and explain:

1. The purpose and need for Hazard Communication.
2. The purpose of SDS and related resources.
3. The need for Personal Protective Equipment.
4. Describe different types of Hazard Communication Programs that may relate to working in confined spaces.

Respiratory Protection Chapter Learning Objectives

This chapter covers basic respirator protection and the Federal OSHA RP Rule. This section is general in nature and not state specific.

Respiratory Protection Chapter Goals

1. Respirator Protection Familiarization.
   a. Definitions
   b. Physical Description
   c. Protective Personnel Equipment
   d. Rules
2. Types of Devices and Applications.
   a. Common RP Devices and Engineering Controls OSHA
   b. Definitions
   c. Rules and Regulations
   d. Identify RP Standard
3. Program Review
   a. References
   b. Glossary
4. Advanced RP Application and Competency

Respiratory Protection Chapter Learning Objectives

By the end of this chapter, students should understand:

1. The purpose and application of process safety management, including training and employee participation required by OSHA's regulation;
2. The importance of paying greater attention to the risks of the highly hazardous materials covered by the regulation;
3. The importance of being involved in manager programs to reduce the chance of catastrophic releases of hazardous substances;
4. Be familiar with the company's written procedures for respirator use in normal and emergency situations and understand why a respirator is necessary.
5. Understand the different types of respirators and their purposes.

6. Know how to make respirators fit correctly and how to use the respirator effectively in emergency situations.
7. Know the importance of and how to conduct regular inspections, cleaning, and maintenance of respirators.
8. Understand the limitations and capabilities of respirators.
9. Know how to recognize medical signs and symptoms that may limit or prevent the effective use of respirators.

Excavation and Trenching Chapter Learning Objectives

This chapter reviews the dangers of trenching and excavation and related safety fundamentals and covers the basic requirements of OSHA's Competent Person 29 CFR 1926.650 Subpart F and other related federal safety rules. The Competent Person Program, as it is called, requires formal training and on-the-job experience. The intent of the chapter is to ensure a qualified workforce and reduce the possibility of incidents caused by human error.

Excavation and Trenching Chapter Goals

1. Excavation and Trench Familiarization
   a. Safety Principles
   b. Protective System Review
2. Soil Classification Review
   a. Definitions
3. Confined Space
   a. References
   b. Safety Standards
4. Advanced Rule application/competency (29 CFR 1926.650 Subpart F)

Excavation and Trenching Chapter Learning Objectives

1. Identify One Call Center rules, underground utilities;
2. Extensive knowledge of 29 CFR 1926 Subpart P – Excavations;
3. Analyze and correct soil-testing procedures;
4. Hazard identification associated with trenching and excavations;
5. Identify a confined space and associated hazards; and
6. Understanding of the different types of protective systems.

Course Registration and Support

TLC offers complete registration and support services for all correspondence courses via e-mail, Web site, telephone, fax, and mail. TLC will attempt to provide immediate, prompt service. When a student registers for a distance or correspondence course, he/she is assigned a "start date" and an "end date." It is the student's responsibility to note dates for assignments and keep up with the course work. If a student falls behind, he/she must contact TLC and request an end date extension in order to complete the course. It is the prerogative of TLC to decide whether or not to grant the request.

Students have 90 days from receipt of this manual to complete the assignments in order to receive their continuing education units (CEUs) or professional development hours (PDHs). A score of 70% or better is necessary to pass this course. If students need any assistance, they should e-mail or call TLC with their concerns.

Required Texts

This course comes complete and does not require any other materials.

Environmental Terms, Abbreviations, and Acronyms

TLC provides a glossary in the rear of this manual that defines, in non-technical language, commonly used environmental terms appearing in publications and materials, as well as abbreviations and acronyms used throughout the EPA and other governmental agencies.

Instructions for Written Assignments

The Confined Space training correspondence course uses multiple choice and true/false questions. Answers may be written in this manual or typed out on a separate answer sheet. TLC prefers that students type out and e-mail their answer sheets to info@tlch2o.com, but they may be faxed to (928) 468-0675.

Grading Criteria

TLC will offer the student either pass/fail or a standard letter grading assignment. If TLC is not notified, you will only receive a pass/fail notice. For security purposes, please fax or e-mail a copy of your driver's license and always call us to confirm we've received your assignment and to confirm your identity. TLC offers students the option of either pass/fail or assignment of a standard letter grade. If a standard letter grade is not requested, a pass/fail notice will be issued.

Final course grades are based on the total number of possible points. The grading scale is administered equally to all students in the course. Do not expect to receive a grade higher than that merited by your total points. No point adjustments will be made for class participation or other subjective factors.

Feedback Mechanism (examination procedures)

Each student will receive a feedback form as part of the study packet. You will be able to find this form in the front of the course or lesson.

Grading Criteria

TLC will offer the student either pass/fail or a standard letter grading assignment. If TLC is not notified, you will only receive a pass/fail notice. For security purposes, please fax or e-mail a copy of your driver's license and always call us to confirm we've received your assignment and to confirm your identity.

Security and Integrity

We expect every student to produce his/her original, independent work. Lesson sheets and final exams are not returned to the students, to discourage sharing of answers. If any fraud or deceit is discovered, the student will forfeit all fees, and the appropriate agency will be notified.

Any student whose work indicates a violation of the Academic Misconduct Policy (cheating and/or plagiarism) can expect penalties as specified in the Student Handbook, which is available through Student Services; contact them at (928) 468-0665.

Forfeiture of Certificate (Cheating)
If a student is found to have cheated on an examination, the penalty may include--but is not limited to--expulsion; foreclosure from future classes for a specified period; forfeiture of certificate for course/courses enrolled in at TLC; or all of the above in accordance with TLC's Student Manual. A letter notifying the student's sponsoring organization (State Agency) of the individual's misconduct will be sent by the appropriate official at TLC. No refund will be given for paid courses. An investigation of all other students that have taken the same assignment within 60-day period of the discovery will be re-examined for fraud or cheating. TLC reserves the right to revoke any published certificates and/or grades if cheating has been discovered for any reason and at any time. Students shall sign affidavit agreeing with all security measures.

Disclaimer and Security Notice
The student shall understand that it their responsibility to ensure that this CEU course is either approved or accepted in my State for CEU credit. The student shall understand and follow State laws and rules concerning distance learning courses and understand these rules change on a frequent basis and will not hold Technical Learning College responsible for any changes. The student shall understand that this type of study program deals with dangerous conditions and will not hold Technical Learning College, Technical Learning Consultants, Inc. (TLC) liable for any errors or omissions or advice contained in this CEU education training course or for any violation or injury caused by this CEU education training course material. The student shall contact TLC if I need help or assistance and double-check to ensure my registration page and assignment has been received and graded. The student shall submit a driver's license for signature verification and track their time worked on the assignment. The student shall sign an affidavit verifying they have not cheated and worked alone on the assignment.

Record Keeping and Reporting Practices
TLC keeps all student records for a minimum of seven years. It is the student's responsibility to give the completion certificate to the appropriate agencies. However, TLC will send the required information to Texas, Indiana, and Pennsylvania for certificate renewals

ADA Compliance
TLC will make reasonable accommodations for persons with documented disabilities. Students should notify TLC and their instructors of any special needs. Course content may vary from this outline to meet the needs of these particular students.

Note to Students
Keep a copy of everything that you submit! If your work is lost, you can submit your copy for grading. If you do not receive your certificate of completion or other results within two to three weeks after submitting it, please contact your instructor.

When the Student finishes this course…
At the finish of this course, you (the student) should be able to explain and describe the various confined space and permit required confined space terms and conditions, including the revised Hazard Communication system, respitory protection and competent person requirements. The student will understand and explain the physical, chemical, engineering hazards, the dangers of trenching, hazardous conditions and hazardous chemicals. The student will understand and explain the personal protection equipment, administrative and engineering controls.

Educational Mission

The educational mission of TLC is:

To provide TLC students with comprehensive and ongoing training in the theory and skills needed for the environmental education field,

To provide TLC students with opportunities to apply and understand the theory and skills needed for operator certification,

To provide opportunities for TLC students to learn and practice environmental educational skills with members of the community for the purpose of sharing diverse perspectives and experience,

To provide a forum in which students can exchange experiences and ideas related to environmental education,

To provide a forum for the collection and dissemination of current information related to environmental education, and to maintain an environment that nurtures academic and personal growth.

Checking the atmosphere with a gas meter is essential for entering any permit required confined space.

NOTICE

THIS MATERIAL WAS PREPARED BY TECHNICAL LEARNING COLLEGE. THIS PUBLICATION IS DESIGNED TO PROVIDE BASIC INFORMATION IN REGARD TO THE SUBJECT OF CONFINED SPACE AWARENESS ONLY.

THE INFORMATION PROVIDED IS NOT DESIGNED TO INTERPRET THE FEDERAL RULES OR STATE LAWS, STANDARDS, RULES OR REGULATIONS OR TO REPLACE THE LEGAL ADVICE OF AN ATTORNEY.

TECHNICAL LEARNING COLLEGE WILL NOT TAKE ANY RESPONSIBILITY FOR ANY INJURIES, DEATHS, OR DAMAGES TO PROPERTY, REAL OR OTHERWISE CONNECTED TO THIS TRAINING.

EXCAVATION WORK IS VERY DANGEROUS. IF THERE IS ANY MATERIAL IN WHICH YOU DO NOT CLEARLY UNDERSTAND, IT IS YOUR RESPONSIBILITY TO HAVE THOSE AREAS EXPLAINED TO YOU BY YOUR SUPERVISOR.

TECHNICAL LEARNING COLLEGE OR THE INSTRUCTOR IS NOT RESPONSIBLE FOR ANY PERSONAL PROPERTY DAMAGE OR FOR YOUR COMPANY'S SAFETY POLICES OR PROCEDURES.

TECHNICAL LEARNING COLLEGE IS NOT LIABLE IN ANY WAY FOR ANY INJURIES, DEATHS, LOSS OF WAGES, OR LOSS OF PROPERTY.

I HAVE READ THE ABOVE AND UNDERSTAND THAT THIS COURSE IS ONLY A TRAINING AWARENESS SESSION.

I ALSO UNDERSTAND THAT CONFINED SPACE AND EXCAVATION WORK IS VERY DANGEROUS, AND THAT IT IS MY RESPONSIBILITY TO KNOW AND FOLLOW ALL PERTINENT SAFETY POLICES AND PROCEDURES.

NAME: ____ DATE: ____________

This guide does not list every conceivable confined space hazard. It is not intended as a legal interpretation of federal or state standards, and should not be used as a substitute for training.

New Confined Space Construction Standard

On May 4, 2015, OSHA issued a new standard for construction work in confined spaces, which became effective August 3, 2015. Confined spaces can present physical and atmospheric hazards that can be avoided if they are recognized and addressed prior to entering these spaces to perform work. The new standard, Subpart AA of 29 CFR 1926 will help prevent construction workers from being hurt or killed by eliminating and isolating hazards in confined spaces at construction sites similar to the way workers in other industries are already protected. The new standard, Subpart AA of 29 CFR 1926, will help prevent construction workers from being hurt or killed by eliminating and isolating hazards in confined spaces at construction sites similar to the way workers in other industries are already protected.

Confined Space Training and Education Requirements

OSHA's General Industry Regulation, §1910.146 Permit-required confined spaces, contains requirements for practices and procedures to protect employees in general industry from the hazards of entry into permit-required confined spaces. This regulation does not apply to construction.

On May 4, 2015, OSHA issued a new standard for construction work in confined spaces, which became effective August 3, 2015. Confined spaces can present physical and atmospheric hazards that can be avoided if they are recognized and addressed prior to entering these spaces to perform work. The new standard, Subpart AA of 29 CFR 1926 will help prevent construction workers from being hurt or killed by eliminating and isolating hazards in confined spaces at construction sites similar to the way workers in other industries are already protected.

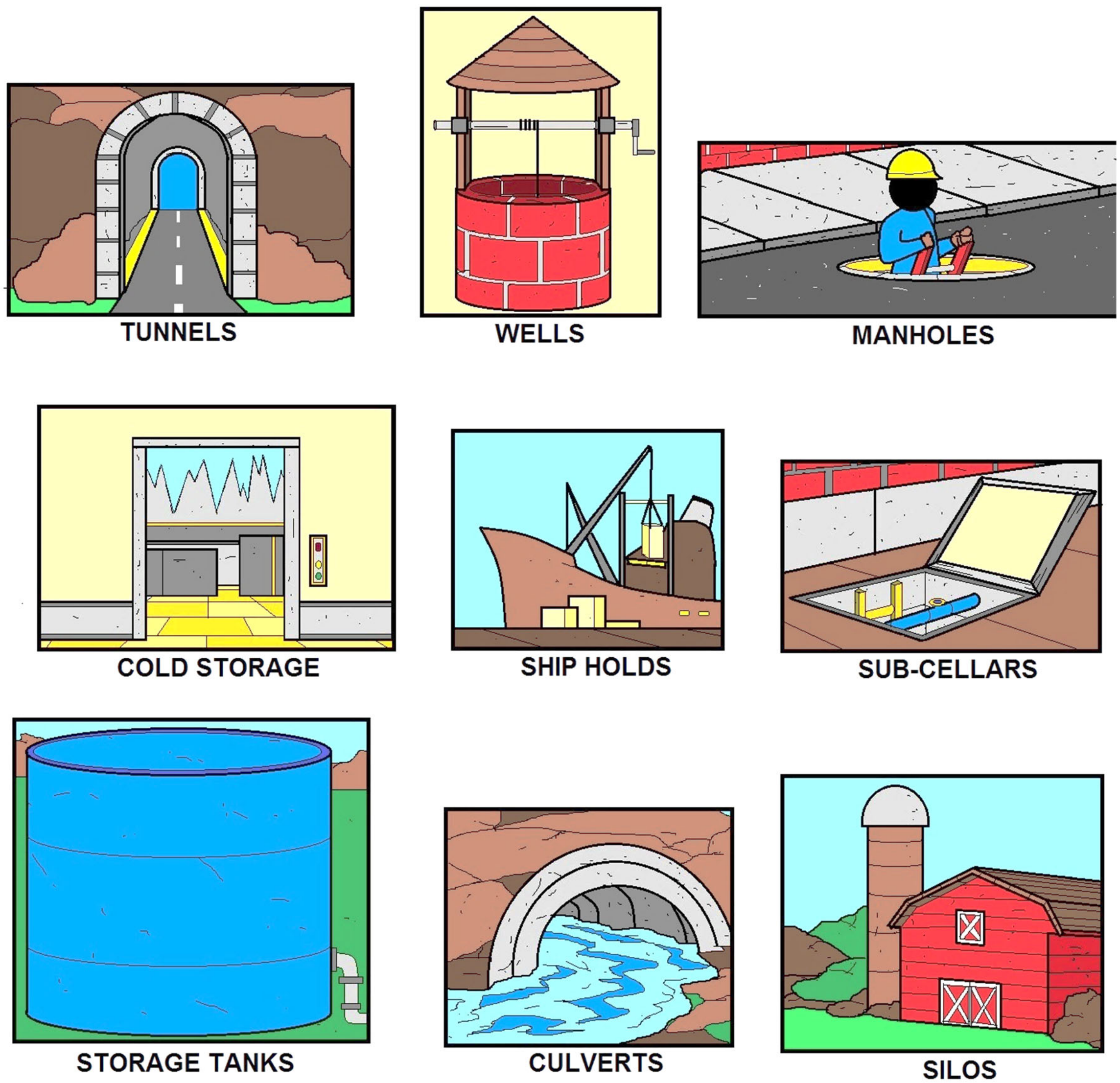
TABLE OF CONTENTS

OSHA Rule Section

Confined Space Chapter

Section Focus: You will learn the basics of proper confined space entry. At the end of this section, you the student will be able to understand and describe confined space and permit required confined spaces. There is a post quiz at the end of this section to review your comprehension and a final examination in the Assignment for your contact hours.

Scope/Background: The Confined Space Entry Program is provided to protect authorized employees that will enter confined spaces and may be exposed to hazardous atmospheres, engulfment in materials, conditions which may trap or asphyxiate due to converging or sloping walls, or contains any other safety or health hazards.
Reference: OSHA-Permit-Required Confined Spaces (**29 CFR 1910.146**).



EXAMPLES OF CONFINED SPACES

Scenario. A fixed ladder drops deep inside a permit required or type II confined space. One man goes inside and passes out from hazardous fumes. A second man goes in and dies within seconds trying to help his buddy.

A third man goes in to save the others and dies on the spot. Only the first man survives, that is if you can say that being brain dead is surviving. Never try to rescue your buddies unless you are trained and have proper equipment. Never! Call 911 first. This scenario actually happened inside a sewer system. ***Don't be the next victim.***

Hazardous Incident Number 1

A man was overcome by carbon dioxide gas after entering a 4,500-liter wine vat containing crushed grape skins and seeds. He entered through a 15 inch opening at the top of the vat.

The juice from the crushed grapes had been drained off through the drainer at the bottom of the tank. The atmosphere was inert due to the presence of a large amount of carbon dioxide.

Carbon dioxide is added to the winemaking process as an antioxidant to displace oxygen during the winemaking process.

Contributing Factors

- Lack of atmospheric monitoring equipment to test the internal atmosphere in the wine vats. (Non-scientific methods such as the sniff test are not satisfactory and expose workers to harmful gases).
- The employee appeared to have a lack of appreciation of the risks associated with carbon dioxide; that is, the rapidity of symptoms, the onset of euphoria, loss of muscle control and was dead within four (4) minutes.

Confined Space Entry Permits

✓ Confined Space Entry Permits must be completed before any employee enters a permit-required confined space. The permit must be completed and signed by an authorized member of management before entry.
✓ Permits will expire before the completion of the shift or if any pre-entry conditions change.
✓ Permits will be maintained on file for 12 months.

Hazardous Incident Number 2 - Three Sanitation Workers and One Policeman Die in an Underground Pumping Station in Kentucky

Introduction
On July 5, 1985, a police officer and two sewer workers died in an attempt to rescue a third sewer worker, who had been overcome by sewer gas at the bottom of an underground pumping station. All four persons were pronounced dead upon removal from the station.

Synopsis of Events
On July 5, 1985, at approximately 10 a.m., two sewer workers (27 and 28 years of age) entered a 50-foot-deep underground pumping station. The station is 1 of 12 that pump sewage to the city's waste water treatment plant. The workers entered through a metal shaft (3 feet in diameter) on a fixed ladder that leads to an underground room (8 feet by 8 feet by 7 feet).

The ventilating fan was not functioning correctly. The workers were not wearing personal protective clothing or equipment.

The two workers proceeded to remove the bolts of an inspection plate from a check valve. The plate blew off, allowing raw sewage to flood the chamber, overwhelming one of the workers. The second worker exited the pumping station and radioed the police department, requesting assistance.

He again entered the station and was also overcome. Two police officers responded to the call at approximately 10:09 a.m. and one officer entered the pumping station. Later the sewage systems field manager arrived on the scene and followed the officer into the pumping station. None of the rescuers returned to the top of the ladder.

A construction worker, who was passing by the site, stopped and entered the station in a rescue attempt. After descending approximately 10 feet into the shaft, he called for help. The second police officer assisted the construction worker out of the shaft. None of the responding men wore respirators.

Fire department personnel arrived at the accident site at approximately 10:11 a.m. One fireman, wearing a self-contained breathing apparatus (**SCBA**), entered the shaft, but could not locate the four men. By this time sewage had completely flooded the underground room.

The fireman exited the pumping station. A second volunteer fireman (6'8", 240 lbs.) entered the shaft wearing a SCBA and a life line. As he began his descent he apparently slipped from the ladder and became wedged in the shaft approximately 20 feet down. (His body was folded with his head and feet facing upward.) Not being able to breathe, he removed the face mask and lost consciousness.

Rescuers at the site extricated the fireman after a 30-minute effort. No further rescue attempts were made, until professional divers were required to enter the station and removed the bodies. Autopsy results revealed a considerable amount of sewage in the lungs of the sewer workers and only a trace of sewage in the lungs of the field manager and police officer.

Recommendations/Discussion

Recommendation #1: Employers should develop proper work procedures and should adequately train employees to maintain and repair the sewage system. This training should include recognition of potential hazards associated with failures within those systems.

Discussion: The sewer workers did not have an understanding of the pumping station's design; therefore, mechanical failures and hazards associated with those failures were not adequately identified. Records were not kept of mechanical failures or repairs. The sewer workers "believed" that a malfunctioning valve had previously been repaired.

This valve permitted the pumping station to flood. The lack of training resulted in the employee not being able to properly isolate the work area from fumes and sewage seepage.

Recommendation #2: Employers should develop comprehensive policies and procedures for confined space entry.

Discussion: Prior to confined space entry, all procedures should be documented. All types of emergencies and potential hazardous conditions should be addressed.

These procedures should minimally include the following:
1. Air quality testing to assure adequate oxygen supply, adequate ventilation, and the absence of all toxic air contaminants;
2. Employee and supervisory training in the selection and usage of respiratory protection;
3. Development of site-specific working procedures and emergency access and egress plans;
4. Emergency rescue training;
5. Availability, storage, and maintenance of emergency rescue equipment.

The air quality was not determined before the sewer workers entered the confined space and the ventilation system was not functioning properly. One respirator was available for use; however, it was not appropriate for the chemical contamination (sewer gas) present. Life lines were not available.

Once confined space pre-entry procedures are developed, employees should be trained to follow them.

Recommendation #3: Fire fighters, police officers, and others responsible for emergency rescue should be trained for confined space rescue.

Discussion: A police officer died in the rescue attempt of the sewer workers. The police officer was not trained in confined space rescue techniques and did not recognize the hazards associated with the confined space.

The volunteer fireman, who attempted the rescue and wedged himself inside the shaft, should not have been allowed to enter. His size alone created a potential hazard for himself and the incident delayed possible rescue of the victims. Emergency rescue teams must be cognizant of all hazards associated with confined spaces, including rescue hindrances, and they should wear proper personal protection and devices for emergency egress.

Hazardous Incident Number 3
Unnecessary Confined Space Deaths

Two self-employed well cleaners (the victims) drowned while cleaning a residential well. Victim #1 was a 40-year-old male and victim #2 was a 43-year-old male. The well was 36 inches in diameter and 40-feet deep. Concrete casings supported the sides of the well, while the well floor was left as exposed soil to allow flow of ground water.

At the time of the incident, victim #1 was at the well bottom brushing down the concrete casings and shoveling muck from the well floor; he apparently became disoriented and was unable to exit the well. Victim #2 then entered the well in a rescue attempt. However, the two were unable to exit the well due to inadequate rescue equipment. The homeowner called 911 and emergency rescue units arrived within approximately 10 minutes. Victim #2 was removed from the well approximately 20 minutes after the first rescue unit arrived. He was transported to the local hospital and pronounced dead shortly after arrival.

Victim #1 was pulled from the well approximately 4 hours after the 911 call. He was pronounced dead at the scene. NIOSH investigators determined that, to prevent similar occurrences, employers, including the self-employed involved in well cleaning operations, should:

- Develop and implement a comprehensive confined space entry program.
- NIOSH investigators also determined, for the protection of rescue personnel, volunteer fire departments should:
- identify the types of confined spaces within their jurisdictions and develop and implement confined space entry and rescue programs
- develop and implement a respiratory protection program to protect firefighters from respiratory hazards
- Develop and implement a general safety program to help firefighters recognize, understand, and control hazards.

On May 1, 1993, two self-employed well cleaners (the victims) drowned while conducting well cleaning operations at a residential well site. On June 23, 1993, the Maryland Occupational Safety and Health Administration (**MOSH**), notified the Division of Safety Research (**DSR**) of these deaths and requested technical assistance. On July 12, 1993, an environmental health and safety specialist and an engineering intern from DSR conducted a field investigation of this incident.

Interviews were conducted with the MOSH investigator, the county confined space rescue team, the county volunteer fire department, and the son of victim #2. Photographs were obtained of the incident site. Medical examiner's reports for both victims were also obtained. No atmospheric testing was conducted as the well site had been filled in and sealed.

The investigation was complicated in part by certain factors: the time lapse between the incident and the investigation, the number of emergency responders, the particular sequence of events, and the time frames of these events, and differing perceptions of the series of events occurring in a crisis situation.

Therefore, a scenario of this incident was developed after carefully evaluating a diverse mixture of information. The victims in this incident worked part-time as self-employed well cleaners and grave diggers.

This was the only source of employment for victim #1. Victim #2 was employed full-time as a truck driver for the county in which the incident occurred. Neither victim had any safety or confined space training. However, both victims were aware that well cleaning was a dangerous job, according to the son of victim #2.

In summarizing this confined space investigation, there were three major hazards identified: (1) oxygen deficient atmosphere (NIOSH, 1979), (2) toxic (carbon monoxide) atmosphere (NIOSH, 1972), and (3) cold water exposure (Golden, 1976). The medical examiner listed the blood carboxyhemoglobin saturation levels as 37% in victim #1 and 13% in victim #2.

The bacterial action and biomass in the well could have been a source for a small percentage of the carbon monoxide. However, an external source was probably responsible for the largest percentage of carbon monoxide. Testing conducted by the volunteer fire unit indicated that the oxygen level (only gas tested) at the 20-foot level was 17% by volume. When the well was pumped to the bottom, the oxygen level would have likely decreased to 12 to 15% by volume. Under conditions of reduced ambient oxygen concentration, such as the reduced oxygen level in the well, the exposure to carbon monoxide was even more critical. The water temperature in the well was reported to be between 35 and 40 degrees F. Survival time in water at 32 degrees F is predicted to be less than 15 minutes (Golden, 1976).

Cause of Death
The medical examiner listed the cause of death for victim #1 as "drowning complicating carbon monoxide poisoning," and the cause of death for victim #2 as drowning.

Recommendation #1: Employers involved in well cleaning operations, including the self-employed, should develop and implement a comprehensive confined space entry program.

Discussion: There was no confined space entry program in effect at the residential well site at the time of the incident. The atmosphere was not tested before entry, no mechanical ventilation or respiratory protection was provided, and no rescue plans were developed.

Employers, even self-employed well cleaning operations, should develop and implement a written confined space entry program to address all provisions outlined in the following NIOSH Publications: Working in Confined Spaces: Criteria for a Recommended Standard (Pub. No. 80-106); NIOSH Alert, Request for Assistance in Preventing Occupational Fatalities in Confined Spaces (Pub. No. 86-110); A Guide to Safety in Confined Spaces (Pub. No. 87-113); and NIOSH Guide to Industrial Respiratory Protection (Pub. No. 87-116).

Most of this text is credited to OSHA.

Confined Spaces are

-large enough to allow entry of any body part, and
-limited or restricted entry or exit, and
-not designed for continuous employee occupancy

Permit Required Confined Spaces are confined spaces that have any of the following

-potential hazardous atmosphere
-material inside that may engulf or trap you
-internal design that could trap or asphyxiate you
-any other serious safety or health hazard

Entry Permits are required before you enter any "**Permit Required Confined Space**"

Hazards include

- Fire & Explosion
- Engulfment
- Asphyxiation
- Entrapment
- Slips & Falls
- Electric Shock
- Noise & Vibration
- Chemical Exposure
- Toxic Atmospheres
- Thermal / Chemical Burns

Engineering Controls

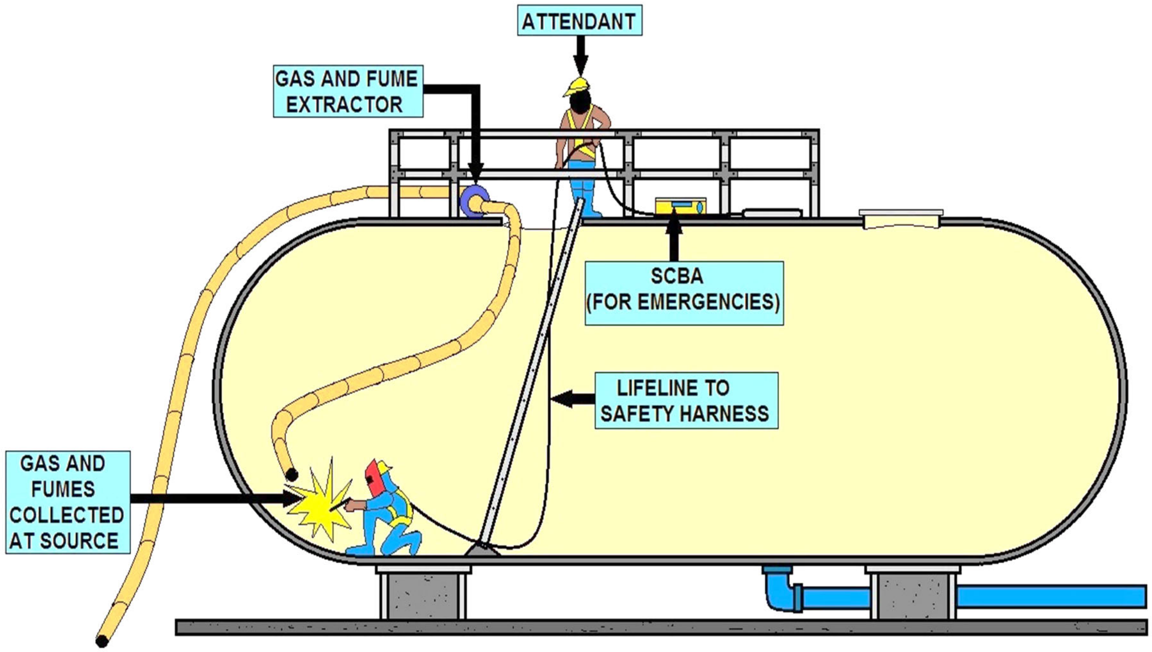
- ❑ Ventilation
- ❑ Locked Access
- ❑ Lighting

Administrative Controls

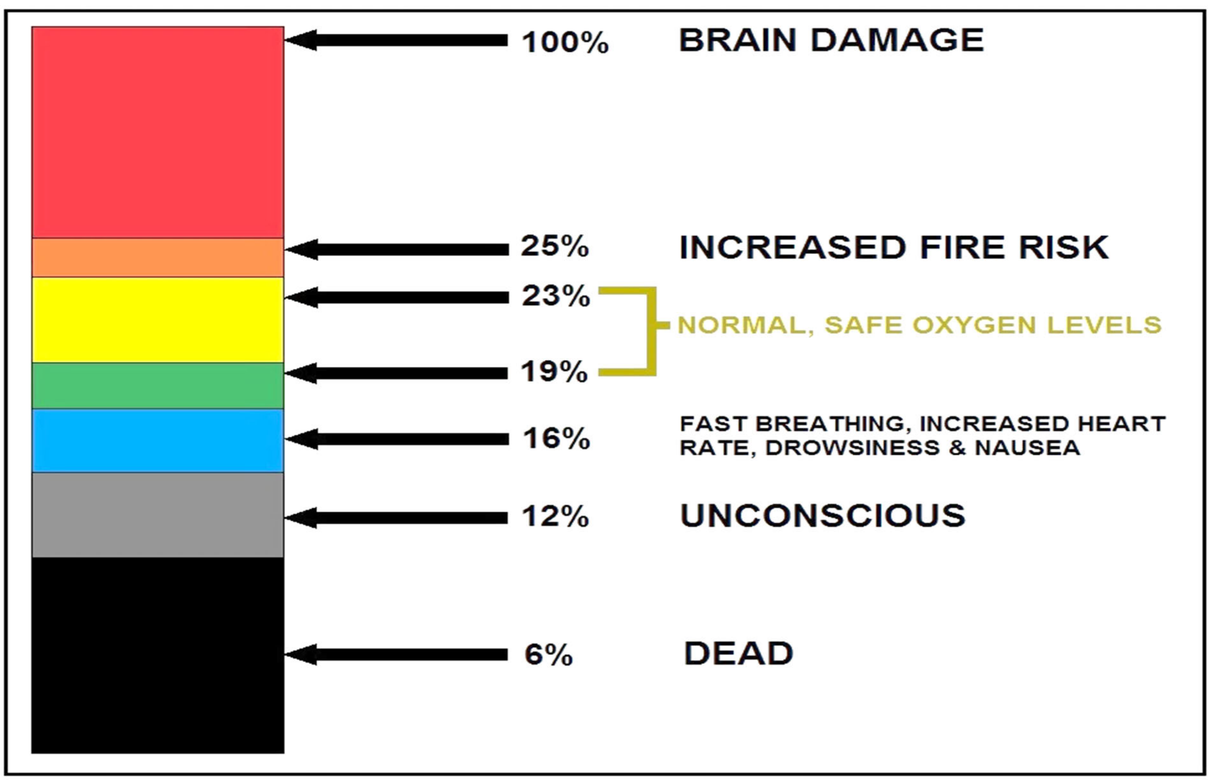
- ❑ Controlled Access
- ❑ Hazard Assessments
- ❑ Entry Permits & Procedures
- ❑ Signs & Lockout Tagout
- ❑ Training

Smart Safety Rules

Know what you are getting into.
Know how to get out in an emergency.
Know the hazards & how they are controlled.
Only authorized & trained personnel may enter a Confined Space or act as an attendant.
No smoking in Confined Space or near entrance or exit area.
Attendant must be present at all times.
Constant visual or voice communication must be maintained between the attendant and entrants.
No bottom or side entry will be made, or work conducted below the level any hanging material or material which could cause engulfment.
Air and oxygen monitoring is required before entering a Permit-Required Confined Space.
Ventilation & oxygen monitoring is required when welding is performed.



CONFINED SPACE DIAGRAM



RESULTS OF OXYGEN LEVELS IN CONFINED SPACES

Confined Space Terms

"Acceptable entry conditions" means the conditions that must exist in a permit space to allow entry and to ensure that employees involved with a permit-required confined space entry can safely enter into and work within the space.

"Attendant" means an individual stationed outside one or more permit spaces who monitors the authorized entrants and who performs all attendant's duties assigned in the employer's permit space program.

"Authorized entrant" means an employee who is authorized by the employer to enter a permit space.

"Blanking or blinding" means the absolute closure of a pipe, line, or duct by the fastening of a solid plate (such as a spectacle blind or a skillet blind) that completely covers the bore and that is capable of withstanding the maximum pressure of the pipe, line, or duct with no leakage beyond the plate.

"Confined space" means a space that:
(1) Is large enough and so configured that an employee can bodily enter and perform assigned work; and

(2) Has limited or restricted means for entry or exit (for example, tanks, vessels, silos, storage bins, hoppers, vaults, and pits are spaces that may have limited means of entry.); and

(3) Is not designed for continuous employee occupancy.

"Double block and bleed" means the closure of a line, duct, or pipe by closing and locking or tagging two in-line valves and by opening and locking or tagging a drain or vent valve in the line between the two closed valves.

"Emergency" means any occurrence (including any failure of hazard control or monitoring equipment) or event internal or external to the permit space that could endanger entrants.

"Engulfment" means the surrounding and effective capture of a person by a liquid or finely divided (flowable) solid substance that can be aspirated to cause death by filling or plugging the respiratory system or that can exert enough force on the body to cause death by strangulation, constriction, or crushing.

"Entry" means the action by which a person passes through an opening into a permit-required confined space. Entry includes ensuing work activities in that space and is considered to have occurred as soon as any part of the entrant's body breaks the plane of an opening into the space.

"Entry permit (permit)" means the written or printed document that is provided by the employer to allow and control entry into a permit space and that contains the information specified in paragraph (f) of this section.

"Entry supervisor" means the person (such as the employer, foreman, or crew chief) responsible for determining if acceptable entry conditions are present at a permit space where entry is planned, for authorizing entry and overseeing entry operations, and for terminating entry as required by this section.

NOTE: An entry supervisor also may serve as an attendant or as an authorized entrant, as long as that person is trained and equipped as required by this section for each role he or she fills. Also, the duties of entry supervisor may be passed from one individual to another during the course of an entry operation.

"Hazardous atmosphere" means an atmosphere that may expose employees to the risk of death, incapacitation, impairment of ability to self-rescue (that is, escape unaided from a permit space), injury, or acute illness from one or more of the following causes:

(1) Flammable gas, vapor, or mist in excess of 10 percent of its lower flammable limit (LFL);

(2) Airborne combustible dust at a concentration that meets or exceeds its LFL;

NOTE: This concentration may be approximated as a condition in which the dust obscures vision at a distance of 5 feet (1.52 m) or less.

(3) Atmospheric oxygen concentration below 19.5 percent or above 23.5 percent;

(4) Atmospheric concentration of any substance for which a dose or a permissible exposure limit is published in Subpart G, Occupational Health and Environmental Control, or in Subpart Z, Toxic and Hazardous Substances, of this Part and which could result in employee exposure in excess of its dose or permissible exposure limit;

NOTE: An atmospheric concentration of any substance that is not capable of causing death, incapacitation, impairment of ability to self-rescue, injury, or acute illness due to its health effects is not covered by this provision.

(5) Any other atmospheric condition that is immediately dangerous to life or health.

NOTE: For air contaminants for which OSHA has not determined a dose or permissible exposure limit, other sources of information, such as Material Safety Data Sheets that comply with the Hazard Communication Standard, section 1910.1200 of this Part, published information, and internal documents can provide guidance in establishing acceptable atmospheric conditions.

"Hot work permit" means the employer's written authorization to perform operations (for example, riveting, welding, cutting, burning, and heating) capable of providing a source of ignition.

"Immediately dangerous to life or health (IDLH)" means any condition that poses an immediate or delayed threat to life or that would cause irreversible adverse health effects or that would interfere with an individual's ability to escape unaided from a permit space.

NOTE: Some materials -- hydrogen fluoride gas and cadmium vapor, for example -- may produce immediate transient effects that, even if severe, may pass without medical attention, but are followed by sudden, possibly fatal collapse 12-72 hours after exposure. The victim "feels normal" from recovery from transient effects until collapse. Such materials in hazardous quantities are considered to be "immediately" dangerous to life or health.

"Inerting" means the displacement of the atmosphere in a permit space by a noncombustible gas (such as nitrogen) to such an extent that the resulting atmosphere is noncombustible.

NOTE: This procedure produces an IDLH oxygen-deficient atmosphere.

"Isolation" means the process by which a permit space is removed from service and completely protected against the release of energy and material into the space by such means as: blanking or blinding; misaligning or removing sections of lines, pipes, or ducts; a double block and bleed system; lockout or tagout of all sources of energy; or blocking or disconnecting all mechanical linkages.

"Line breaking" means the intentional opening of a pipe, line, or duct that is or has been carrying flammable, corrosive, or toxic material, an inert gas, or any fluid at a volume, pressure, or temperature capable of causing injury.

"Non-permit confined space" means a confined space that does not contain or, with respect to atmospheric hazards, have the potential to contain any hazard capable of causing death or serious physical harm.

"Oxygen deficient atmosphere" means an atmosphere containing less than 19.5 percent oxygen by volume.

"Oxygen enriched atmosphere" means an atmosphere containing more than 23.5 percent oxygen by volume.

"Permit-required confined space (permit space)" means a confined space that has one or more of the following characteristics:

(1) Contains or has a potential to contain a hazardous atmosphere;

(2) Contains a material that has the potential for engulfing an entrant;

(3) Has an internal configuration such that an entrant could be trapped or asphyxiated by inwardly converging walls or by a floor which slopes downward and tapers to a smaller cross-section; or

(4) Contains any other recognized serious safety or health hazard.

"Permit-required confined space program (permit space program)" means the employer's overall program for controlling, and, where appropriate, for protecting employees from, permit space hazards and for regulating employee entry into permit spaces.

"Permit system" means the employer's written procedure for preparing and issuing permits for entry and for returning the permit space to service following termination of entry.

"Prohibited condition" means any condition in a permit space that is not allowed by the permit during the period when entry is authorized.

"Rescue service" means the personnel designated to rescue employees from permit spaces.

"Retrieval system" means the equipment (including a retrieval line, chest or full-body harness, wristlets, if appropriate, and a lifting device or anchor) used for non-entry rescue of persons from permit spaces.

"Testing" means the process by which the hazards that may confront entrants of a permit space are identified and evaluated. Testing includes specifying the tests that are to be performed in the permit space.

Would you consider this a confined space? How about a permit required?
Think about the various chemicals that we use inside confined spaces.

Confined Space Entry Program - Introduction

Purpose

The Confined Space Entry Program is provided to protect authorized employees that will enter confined spaces and may be exposed to hazardous atmospheres, engulfment in materials, conditions which may trap or asphyxiate due to converging or sloping walls, or contains any other safety or health hazards.
Reference: OSHA-Permit-Required Confined Spaces (**29 CFR 1910.146**).

Scope

You are required to recognize the dangers and hazards associated with confined spaces, and this program is designed to assist you in the safety of and compliance with the OSHA standards associated with such.

Most communities will utilize the Fire Department for all rescues and additional assistance dealing with confined spaces, understanding that most Fire Department operations utilize additional in house SOG's/SOP's pertaining to such operations.

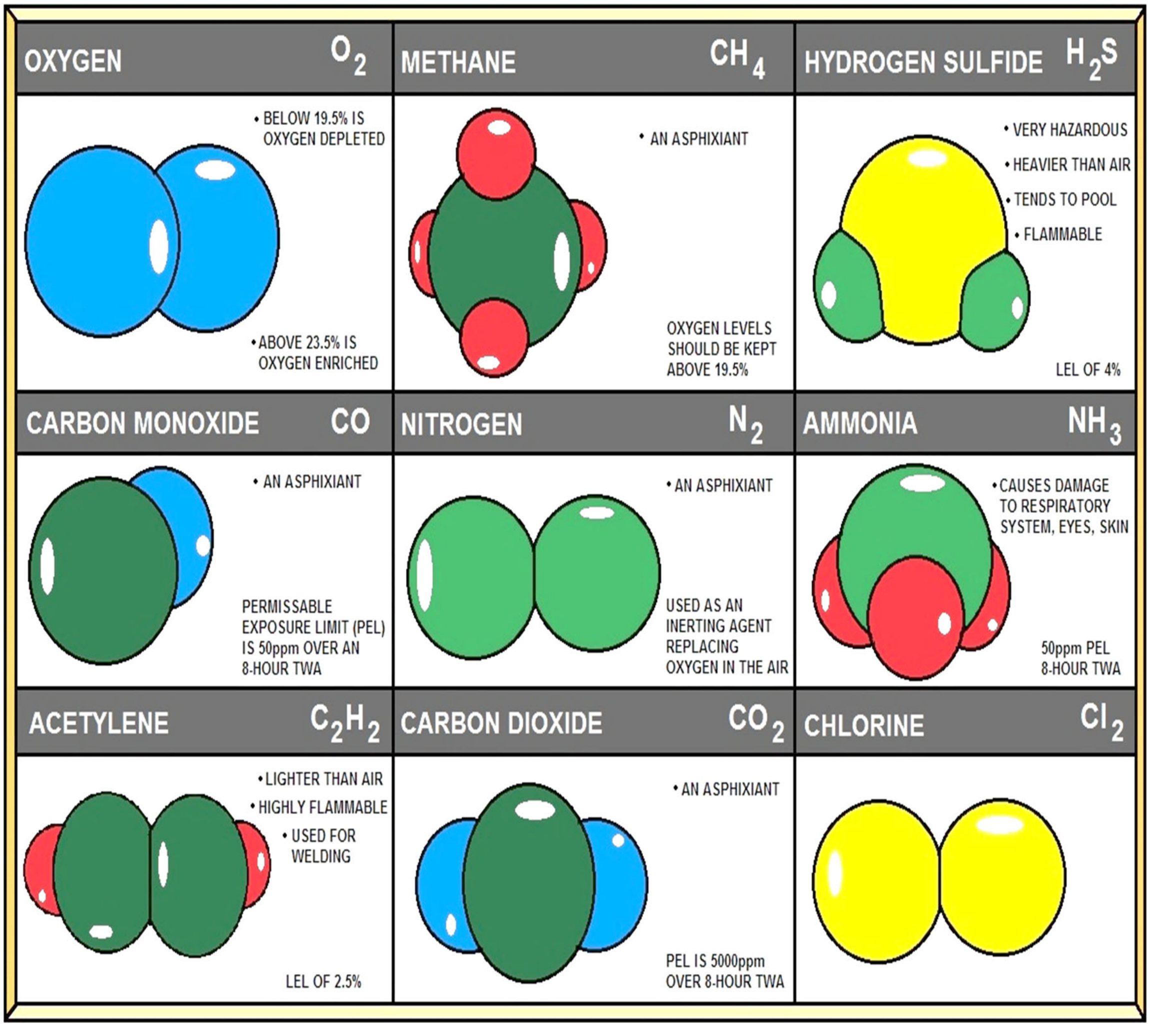
Definitions

Confined space:

- ✓ Is large enough or so configured that an employee can bodily enter and perform work.
- ✓ Has limited or restricted means for entry or exit (i.e. tanks, vessels, silos, storage bins, hoppers, vaults, and pits are spaces that may have limited means of entry).
- ✓ Is not designed for continuous employee occupancy.
- ✓ Permit required confined space (permit space), is a confined space that has one or more of the following characteristics:

1. Contains or has a potential to contain a hazardous atmosphere.
2. Contains a material that has the potential for engulfing an entrant.
3. Has an internal configuration such that an entrant could be trapped or asphyxiated by inwardly covering walls or by a floor which slopes downward and tapers to a smaller cross-section.
4. Contains any other recognized serious safety or health hazard.

Each Permit-Required Confined Space will be marked
"***Confined Space - Entry Permit Required***".
Most of this text is credited to OSHA.



COMMON GASES THAT CAN BE FOUND IN CONFINED SPACE

Confined Space Hazards

Fatalities and injuries constantly occur among construction workers who, during the course of their jobs, are required to enter confined spaces. In some circumstances, these workers are exposed to multiple hazards, any of which may cause bodily injury, illness, or death.

Newspaper and magazine articles abound with stories of workers injured and killed from a variety of atmospheric factors and physical agents. Throughout the construction jobsite, contractors and workers encounter both inherent and induced hazards within confined workspaces.

Inherent Hazards
Inherent hazards, such as electrical, thermal, chemical, mechanical, etc., are associated with specific types of equipment and the interactions among them.

Examples include high voltage (shock or corona discharge and the resulting burns), radiation generated by equipment, defective design, omission of protective features (no provision for grounding non-current-carrying conductive parts), high or low temperatures, high noise levels, and high-pressure vessels and lines (rupturing with resultant release of fragments, fluids, gases, etc.).

Inherent hazards usually cannot be eliminated without degrading the system or equipment, or without making them inoperative. Therefore, emphasis must be placed on hazard control methods.

Induced Hazards
Induced hazards arise, and are induced from, a multitude of incorrect decisions and actions that occur during the actual construction process. Some examples are: omission of protective features, physical arrangements that may cause unintentional worker contact with electrical energy sources, oxygen-deficient atmospheres created at the bottom of pits or shafts, lack of safety factors in structural strength, and flammable atmospheres.

Typical Examples of Confined Workspaces
Following are typical examples of confined workspaces in construction which contain both inherent and induced hazards.

Vaults
A variety of vaults are found on the construction jobsite. On various occasions, workers must enter these vaults to perform a number of functions.

The restricted nature of vaults and their frequently below-grade location can create an assortment of safety and health problems.

Oxygen-Deficient Atmosphere
One of the major problems confronting construction workers while working in vaults is the ever-present possibility of an oxygen-deficient atmosphere.

Explosive or Toxic Gases, Vapors, or Fumes
While working in an electrical vault, workers may be exposed to the build-up of explosive gases such as those used for heating (propane). Welding and soldering produce toxic fumes which are confined in the limited atmosphere.

Electrical Shock
Electrical shock is often encountered from power tools, line cords, etc. In many instances, such electrical shock results from the fact that the contractor has not provided an approved grounding system or the protection afforded by ground-fault circuit interrupters or low-voltage systems.

Purging
In some instances, purging agents such as nitrogen and argon may enter the vault from areas adjacent to it. These agents may displace the oxygen in the vault to the extent that it will asphyxiate workers almost immediately.

Materials Falling In and On
A hazard normally considered a problem associated with confined spaces is material or equipment which may fall into the vault or onto workers as they enter and leave the vault.

Vibration could cause the materials on top of the vault to roll off and strike workers. If the manhole covers were removed, or if they were not installed in the first place, materials could fall into the vault, causing injury to the workers inside.

Condenser Pits
A common confined space found in the construction of nuclear power plants is the condenser pit. Because of their large size, they are often overlooked as potentially hazardous confined spaces.

These below-grade areas create large containment areas for the accumulation of toxic fumes, gases, and so forth, or for the creation of oxygen-deficient atmospheres when purging with argon, Freon, and other inert gases.

Other hazards will be created by workers above dropping equipment, tools, and materials into the pit.

Manholes
Throughout the construction site, manholes are commonplace. As means of entry into and exit from vaults, tanks, pits, and so forth, manholes perform a necessary function. However, these confined spaces may present serious hazards which could cause injuries and fatalities.

A variety of hazards are associated with manholes. To begin with, the manhole could be a dangerous trap into which the worker could fall. Often covers are removed and not replaced, or else they are not provided in the first place.

Pipe Assemblies
One of the most frequently unrecognized types of confined spaces encountered throughout the construction site is the pipe assembly. Piping of sixteen to thirty-six inches in diameter is commonly used for a variety of purposes.

For any number of reasons, workers will enter the pipe. Once inside, they are faced with potential oxygen-deficient atmospheres, often caused by purging with argon or another inert gas. Welding fumes generated by the worker in the pipe, or by other workers operating outside the pipe at either end, subject the worker to toxic atmospheres.

The generally restricted dimensions of the pipe provide little room for the workers to move about and gain any degree of comfort while performing their tasks. Once inside the pipe, communication is extremely difficult. In situations where the pipe bends, communication and extrication become even more difficult. Electrical shock is another problem to which the worker is exposed.

Ungrounded tools and equipment or inadequate line cords are some of the causes. As well, heat within the pipe run may cause the worker to suffer heat prostration.

Ventilation Ducts
Ventilation ducts, like pipe runs, are very common at the construction site. These sheet metal enclosures create a complex network which moves heated and cooled air and exhaust fumes to desired locations in the plant.

Ventilation ducts may require that workers enter them to cut out access holes, install essential parts of the duct, etc. Depending on where these ducts are located, oxygen deficiency could exist. They usually possess many bends, which create difficult entry and exit and which also make it difficult for workers inside the duct to communicate with those outside it. Electrical shock hazards and heat stress are other problems associated with work inside ventilation ducts.

Tanks
Tanks are another type of confined workspace commonly found in construction. They are used for a variety of purposes, including the storage of water, chemicals, etc.

Tanks require entry for cleaning and repairs. Ventilation is always a problem. Oxygen-deficient atmospheres, along with toxic and explosive atmospheres created by the substances stored in the tanks, present hazards to workers. Heat, another problem in tanks, may cause heat prostration, particularly on a hot day.

Since electrical line cords are often taken into the tank, the hazard of electrical shock is always present. The nature of the tank's structure often dictates that workers must climb ladders to reach high places on the walls of the tank.

Sumps
Sumps are commonplace. They are used as collection places for water and other liquids. Workers entering sumps may encounter an oxygen-deficient atmosphere.

Also, because of the wet nature of the sump, electrical shock hazards are present when power tools are used inside. Sumps are often poorly illuminated. Inadequate lighting may create an accident situation.

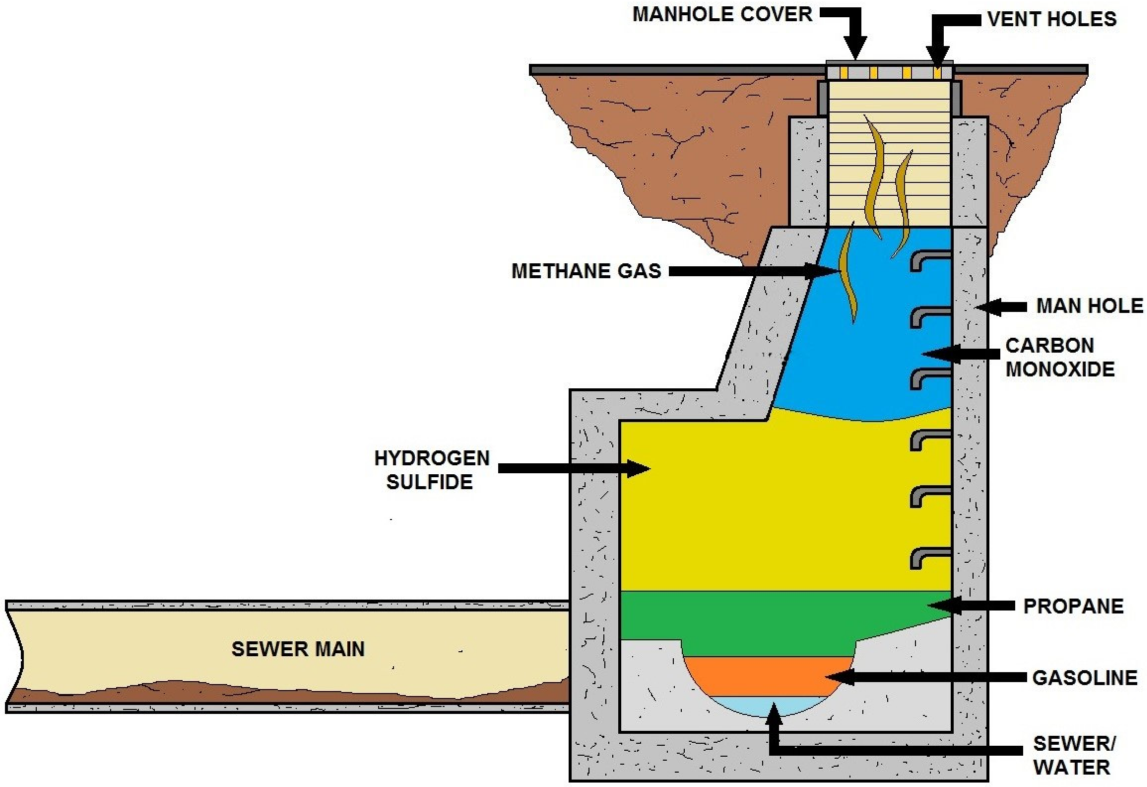
Containment Cavities
These large below-grade areas are characterized by little or no air movement. Ventilation is always a problem. In addition, the possibility of oxygen deficiency exists. As well, welding and other gases may easily collect in these areas, creating toxic atmospheres. As these structures near completion, more confined spaces will exist as rooms are built off the existing structure.

Electrical Transformers
Electrical transformers are located on the jobsite. They often contain a nitrogen purge or dry air. Before they are opened, they must be well vented by having air pumped in. Workers, particularly electricians and power plant operators, will enter these transformers through hatches on top for various work-related reasons. Testing for oxygen deficiency and for toxic atmospheres is mandatory.

Heat Sinks
These larger pit areas hold cooling water in the event that there is a problem with the pumps located at the water supply to the plant--normally a river or lake--which would prevent cooling water from reaching the reactor core.

When in the pits, workers are exposed to welding fumes and electrical hazards, particularly because water accumulates in the bottom of the sink.

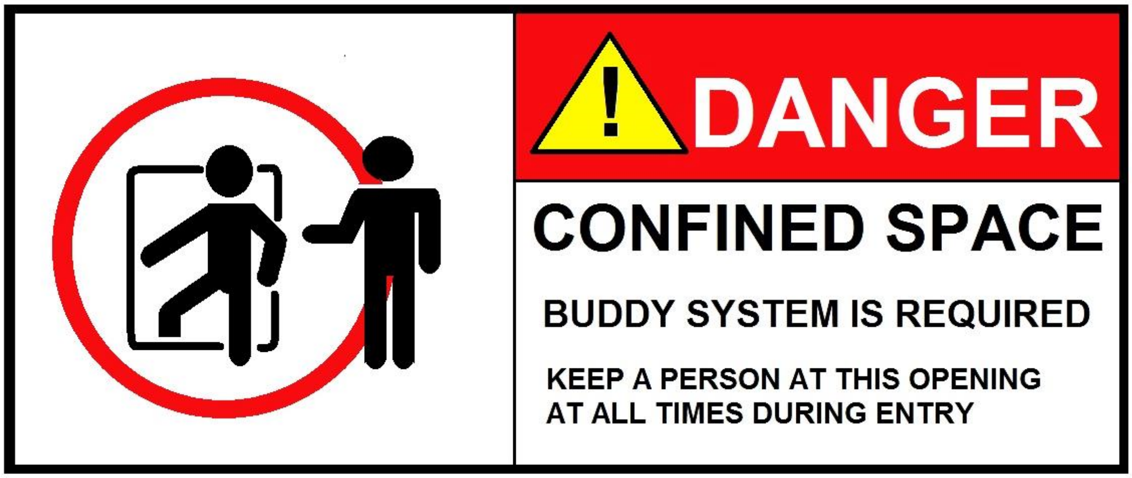
Generally, it is difficult to communicate with workers in the heat sink, because the rebar in the walls of the structure deaden radio signals.



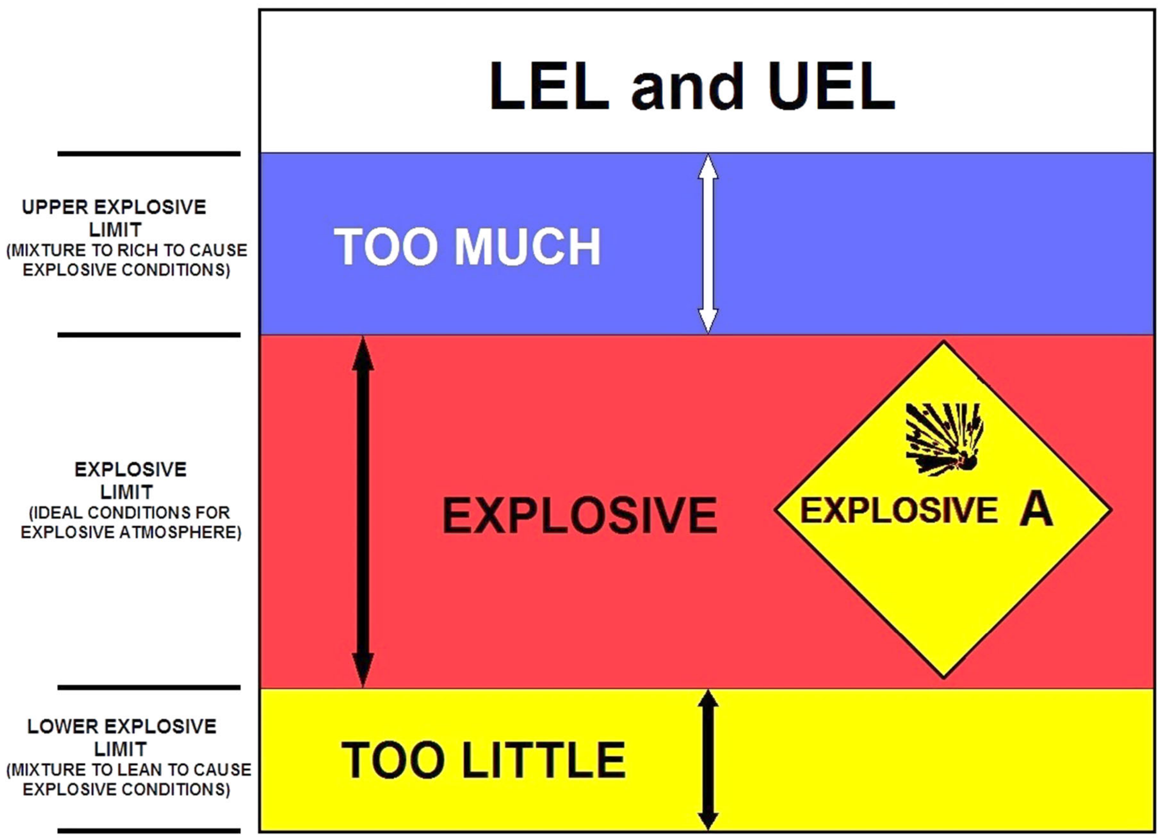
POSSIBLE HAZARDOUS ATMOSPHERES PRESENT IN A CONFINED SPACE (EXAMPLE IS OF A SEWER MAIN)

COMMON HAZARDOUS GASES THAT MAY BE PRESENT IN CONFINED SPACE					
SUBSTANCE *	8-HOUR TIME-WEIGHTED AVERAGE (TWA)	15-MINUTE SHORT-TERM EXPOSURE LIMIT (STEL)	CEILING LIMIT (Never To Be Exceeded)	IMMEDIATELY DANGEROUS TO LIFE AND HEALTH (IDLH)	RECOMMENDED ALARM SETTINGS (Low / High)
AMMONIA	25 ppm	35 ppm	—	300 ppm	13 ppm / 25 ppm
CARBON MONOXIDE	25 ppm	100 ppm	—	1200 ppm	13 ppm / 25 ppm
CHLORINE	0.5 ppm	1 ppm	—	10 ppm	0.25 ppm / 0.5 ppm
HYDROGEN SULFIDE	—	—	10 ppm	100 ppm	5 ppm / 10 ppm
METHANE	1000 ppm	—	—	—	500 ppm / 1000 ppm
NITROGEN DIOXIDE	—	—	1 ppm	20 ppm	0.5 ppm / 1 ppm
SULFUR DIOXIDE	2 ppm	5 ppm	—	100 ppm	1 ppm / 2 ppm
OXYGEN	—	—	—	—	20.5 % of Atmosphere
LOWER EXPLOSIVE LIMIT (LEL)	—	—	—	—	5 % LEL

EXAMPLE OF A CHART OF CONFINED SPACE GASES



EXAMPLE OF A CONFINED SPACE ENTRY DANGER SIGN



UNDERSTANDING UPPER (UEL) & LOWER (LEL) EXPLOSIVE LIMITS

Unusual Conditions

Confined Space within a Confined Space
By the very nature of construction, situations are created which illustrate one of the most hazardous confined spaces of all--a confined space within a confined space.

This situation appears as tanks within pits, pipe assemblies or vessels within pits, etc. In this situation, not only do the potential hazards associated with the outer confined space require testing, monitoring, and control, but those of the inner space also require similar procedures.

Often, only the outer space is evaluated. When workers enter the inner space, they are faced with potentially hazardous conditions.

A good example of a confined space within a confined space is a vessel with a nitrogen purge inside a filtering water access pit. Workers entering the pit and/or the vessel should do so only after both spaces have been evaluated and proper control measures established.

Hazards in One Space Entering another Space
During an examination of confined spaces in construction, one often encounters situations which are not always easy to evaluate or control. For instance, a room or area which classifies as a confined space may be relatively safe for work.

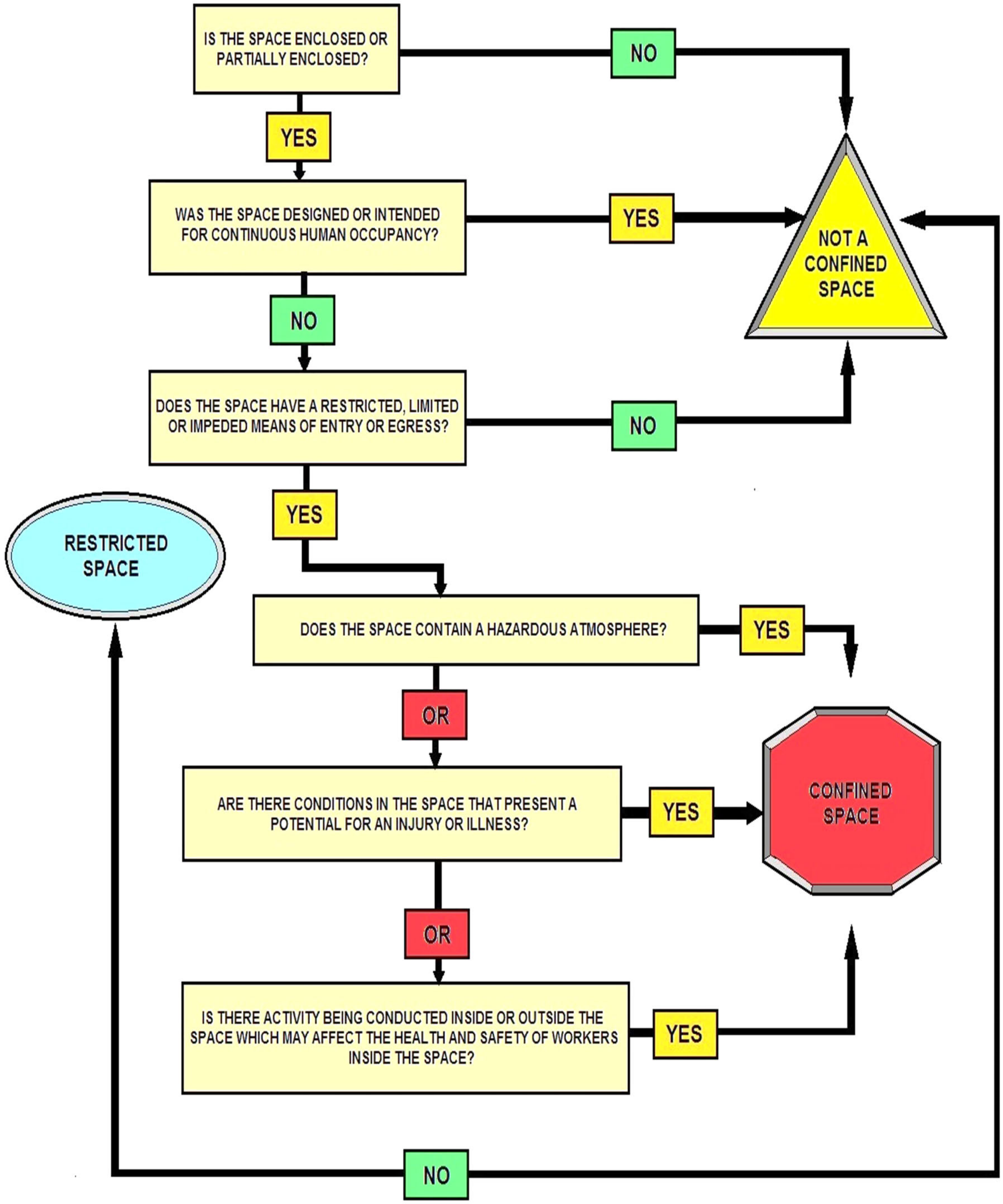
However, access passages from other areas outside or adjacent to the room could, at some point, allow the transfer of hazardous agents into the "***safe***" one. One such instance would be a pipe coming through a wall into a containment room.

Welding fumes and other toxic materials generated in one room may easily travel through the pipe into another area, causing it to change from a safe to an unsafe workplace.

A serious problem with a situation such as this is that workers working in the "**safe**" area are not aware of the hazards leaking into their area. Thus, they are not prepared to take action to avoid or control it.

Session Conclusion
In this discussion, we have defined inherent and induced hazards in confined spaces. We have examined typical confined spaces on construction sites and we have described representative hazards within these confined spaces.

Most of this text is credited to OSHA.



HOW TO DETERMINE CONFINED SPACES

Permitted Confined Space Entry Program

Definition of Confined Spaces Requiring an Entry Permit
Confined space:

- ✓ Is large enough or so configured that an employee can bodily enter and perform work.
- ✓ Has limited or restricted means for entry or exit (i.e. tanks, vessels, silos, storage bins, hoppers, vaults, and pits are spaces that may have limited means of entry).
- ✓ Is not designed for continuous employee occupancy.

Purpose
The Permit Required Space (**PRCS**) Program is provided to protect authorized employees that will enter confined spaces and may be exposed to hazardous atmospheres, engulfment in materials, conditions which may trap or asphyxiate due to converging or sloping walls, or contains any other safety or health hazards.

Many workplaces contain confined spaces not designed for human occupancy which due to their configuration hinder employee activities including entry, work and exit. Asphyxiation is the leading cause of death in confined spaces.

Subpart P applies to all open excavations in the earth's surface.

- ✓ All trenches are excavations.
- ✓ All excavations are not trenches.

Permit Required Confined Space Entry General Rules

During all confined space entries, the following safety rules must be strictly enforced:

1. Only authorized and trained employees may enter a confined space or act as safety watchmen/attendants.

2. No smoking is permitted in a confined space or near entrance/exit area.

3. During confined space entries, a watchmen or attendant must be present at all times.

4. Constant visual or voice communication will be maintained between the safety watchmen and employees entering a confined space.

5. No bottom or side entry will be made or work conducted below the level any hanging material or material which could cause engulfment.

6. Air and oxygen monitoring is required before entering any permit-required confined space. Oxygen levels in a confined space must be between 19.5 and 23.5 percent. Levels above or below will require the use of an SCBA or other approved air supplied respirator. Additional ventilation and oxygen level monitoring is required when welding is performed. The monitoring will check oxygen levels, explosive gas levels and carbon monoxide levels. Entry will not be permitted if explosive gas is detected above one-half the Lower Explosive Limit (**LEL**).

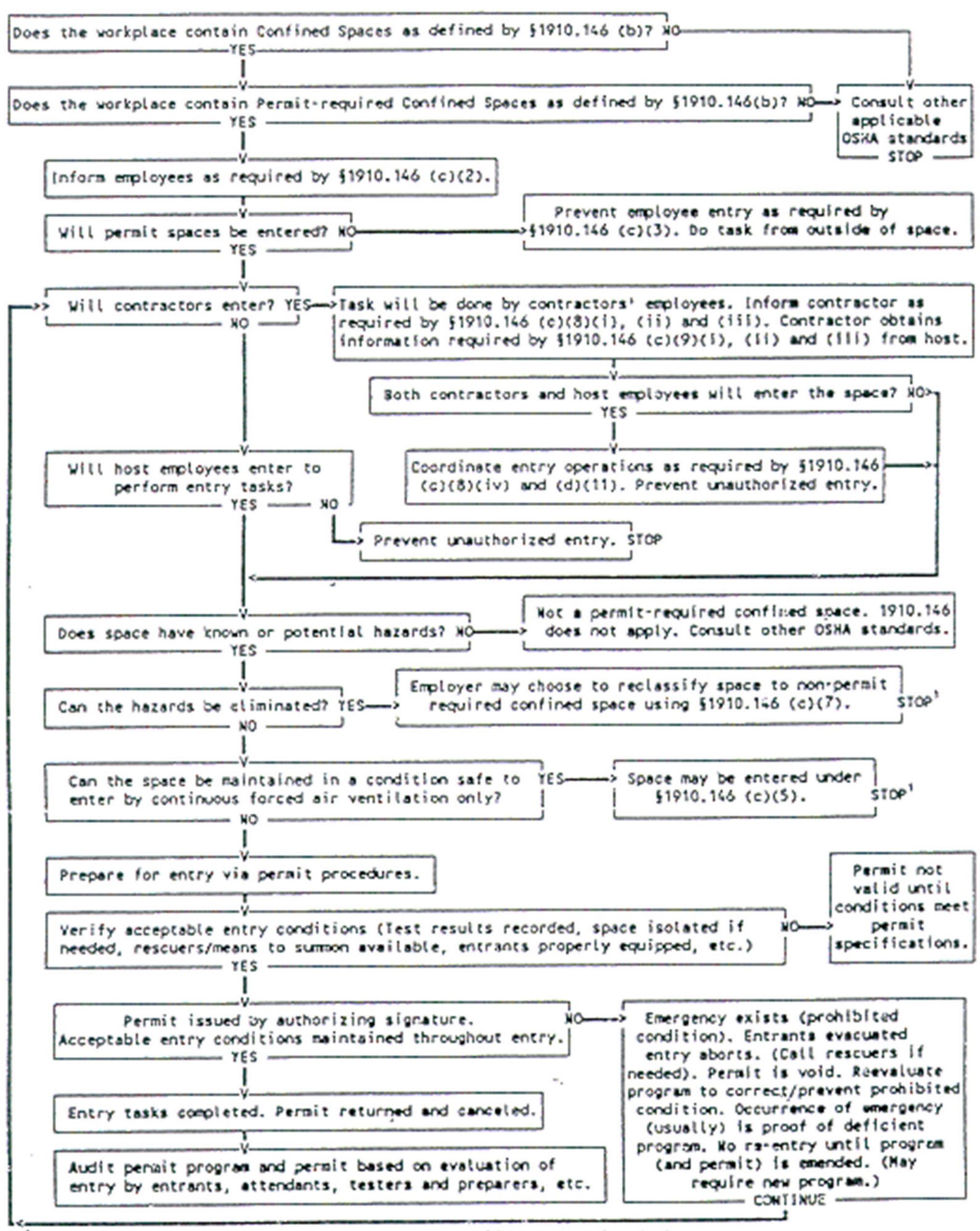
7. To prevent injuries to others, all openings to confined spaces will be protected by a barricade when covers are removed.

Appendix A to §1910.146

Permit-Required Confined Space Decision Flow Chart

Note: Appendices A through F serve to provide information and non-mandatory guidelines to assist employers and employees in complying with the appropriate requirements of this section.

APPENDIX A TO §1910.146—PERMIT-REQUIRED CONFINED SPACE DECISION FLOW CHART



¹ Spaces may have to be evacuated and re-evaluated if hazards arise during entry

[58 FR 4549, Jan. 14, 1993; 58 FR 34846, June 29, 1993; 63 FR 66039, Dec. 1, 1998]

Confined Space Entry Permit *Example*

Date & Time Issued		Date & time Expires	
Space I.D.		Supervisor	
Equipment Affected		Task	
Standby Team			
Pre-Entry Atmospheric Checks	Time (am - pm)		
	Oxygen		
	Explosive (% LEL)		
	Toxic (PPM)		
	Testers Signature		

Pre-entry Fluid System Isolation	Yes	No
Pumps /lines blinded, blocked, disconnected		
Ventilation Source Established		
Mechanical Forced Air		
Natural Ventilation		
Post Ventilation Pre-Entry Atmospheric Checks		
Time		
Oxygen (%)		
Explosive (% LEL		
Toxic (PPM)		
Tester Signature		
Communication Procedures Established per specific Confined Space SOP		
Rescue Procedures established per specific Confined Space SOP		

Training Verification - for the following persons & space to be entered	YES	NO
All persons entering Confined Space		
All persons acting as Supervisor for the Entry		
All persons assigned backup positions		
All persons assigned to monitor access and interior activities		
All persons assigned to emergency rescue team		

Equipment on Scene	YES	NO	NA		YES	NO	NA
Gas Monitor				Life Line			
Safety Harness				Hoisting Equipment			
Fall Arrest Gear				Powered Comm Eq.			
SCBAs				Air Line Respirators			

Protective Clothing				Elect Gear Properly Rated			

Periodic Atmospheric Checks				
Time (am - pm)				
Oxygen				
Explosive (% LEL)				
Toxic (PPM)				
Testers Signature				

A review of the work authorized by this permit and the information contained on this Entry Permit. Written instructions and safety procedures have been received and are understood. Entry cannot be approved if any squares are marked in the "**No**" column. This permit is not valid unless all appropriate items are completed.

Permit Prepared By: (Supervisor) ______________________________

Approved By: (Unit Supervisor) ________________________________

This permit to be kept at job site.

Return job site copy to Safety Office following job completion.

Copies: Safety Office, Unit Supervisor, Job site

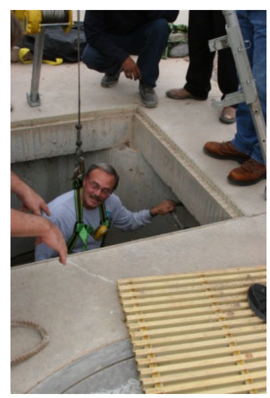
Confined Space Duties & Responsibilities

Examples of assignments
Employees

- Follow program requirements.
- Report any previously un-identified hazards associated with confined spaces.
- Do not enter any confined spaces that have not been evaluated for safety concerns.

Management
- Provide annual Confined Space training to all employees that may need confined space training.
- Ensure confined space assessments have been conducted.
- Annually review this program and all Entry Permits.

Rescue or Training Department
- Ensure proper training for entry & rescue teams.
- Provide proper equipment for entry & rescue teams.
- Ensure all permit required confined spaces are posted.
- Evaluate rescue teams and service to ensure they are adequately trained and prepared.
- Ensure rescue team at access during entry into spaces with Immediately Dangerous to Life or Health (IDLH) atmospheres.
- Provide annual confined space awareness training to all employees that may need confined space awareness training.



Entry Supervisor
Entry supervisors are responsible for the overall permit space entry and must coordinate all entry procedures, tests, permits, equipment and other relevant activities.

The following entry supervisor duties are required:
Know the hazards that may be faced during entry, including information on the mode, signs or symptoms, and consequences of the exposure.

Verify by checking that the appropriate entries have been made on the permit, all tests specified by the permit have been conducted, and that all procedures and equipment specified by the permit are in place before endorsing the permit and allowing entry to begin.
Terminate the entry and cancel the permit when the entry is complete or there is a need for terminating the permit.
Verify that rescue services are available and that the means for summoning them are operable.
Remove unauthorized persons who enter or attempt to enter the space during entry operations.

Determine whenever responsibility for a permit space entry operation is transferred and at intervals dictated by the hazards and operations performed within the space that entry operations remain consistent with the permit terms and that acceptable entry conditions are maintained.

Entry Attendants

At least one attendant is required outside the permit space into which entry is authorized for the duration of the entry operation.

Responsibilities include:

- To know the hazards that may be faced during entry, including information on the mode, signs or symptoms, and consequences of the exposure
- To be aware of possible behavioral effects of hazard exposure on entrants
- To continuously maintain an accurate count of entrants in the permit space and ensures a means to accurately identify authorized entrants
- To remain outside the permit space during entry operations until relieved by another attendant (once properly relieved, they may participate in other permit space activities, including rescue if they are properly trained and equipped).
- To communicate with entrants as necessary to monitor entrant status and alert entrants of the need to evacuate.
- To monitor activities inside and outside the space to determine if it is safe for entrants to remain in the space; orders the entrants to immediately evacuate if: the attendant detects a prohibited condition, detects entrant behavioral effects of hazard exposure, detects a situation outside the space that could endanger the entrants; or if the attendant cannot effectively and safely perform all the attendant duties.
- To summon rescue and other emergency services as soon as the attendant determines the entrants need assistance to escape the permit space hazards.
- To perform non-entry rescues as specified by that rescue procedure and entry supervisor and not to perform duties that might interfere with the attendants' primary duty to monitor and protect the entrants.

Most of this text is credited to OSHA.

Is Entry Necessary?

Can the task be accomplished from the outside? For example, measures that eliminate the need for employees to enter confined spaces should be carefully evaluated and implemented if at all possible before considering human entry into confined spaces to perform non-emergency tasks.

CONFINED SPACE ENTRY CHECKLIST EXAMPLE

New Confined Space Construction Standard

On May 4, 2015, OSHA issued a new standard for construction work in confined spaces, which became effective August 3, 2015. Confined spaces can present physical and atmospheric hazards that can be avoided if they are recognized and addressed prior to entering these spaces to perform work. The new standard, Subpart AA of 29 CFR 1926 will help prevent construction workers from being hurt or killed by eliminating and isolating hazards in confined spaces at construction sites similar to the way workers in other industries are already protected.

The new standard, Subpart AA of 29 CFR 1926, will help prevent construction workers from being hurt or killed by eliminating and isolating hazards in confined spaces at construction sites similar to the way workers in other industries are already protected.

Training requirements

Employers must provide training to each employee whose work is regulated by this standard, at no cost to the employee, and ensure that employees possess the understanding, knowledge and skills necessary to safely perform the duties assigned under this standard. Training must result in an understanding of the hazards in the permit space and the methods used to isolate, control or in other ways protect employees from these hazards. For employees not authorized to perform entry rescues, it must convey the dangers of attempting such rescues.

Affected employees must be trained:

- In both a language and vocabulary that the employee can understand;
- Before the employee is first assigned duties under this standard;
- Before there is a change in assigned duties;
- Whenever there is a change in permit space entry operations that presents a hazard about which an employee has not previously been trained; and
- Whenever there is any evidence of a deviation from the permit space entry procedures required by paragraph §1926.1204(c) of this standard or there are inadequacies in the employee's knowledge or use of these procedures.

The training must establish employee proficiency in the duties required by this standard and must introduce new or revised procedures, as necessary, for compliance.
The employer must maintain training records to show required training has taken place. Training records must contain each employee's name, the name of the trainers, and the dates of training. Documentation must be available for inspection by employees and their authorized representatives, for the period of time the worker is employed by that employer.

Common questions

To assist employers in complying with the new standard, here are some frequently asked questions and answers outline by on its website at www.osha.gov:

How do I know whether to follow the general industry or construction confined space rule?

If you are doing construction work – such as building a new structure or upgrading an old one – then you must follow the construction confined space rule.

Why did OSHA believe that the former standard needed to be changed?
Previously the only requirement for confined spaces in construction was training. OSHA concluded this was inadequate as injuries and fatalities continued to occur.

How does the new final rule differ from the rules that previously applied to construction work performed in confined spaces?
The rule requires employers to determine what kinds of spaces their workers are in, what hazards could be there, how those hazards should be made safe, what training workers should receive, and how to rescue those workers if anything goes wrong.

Where can I find the final rule for Confined Spaces in Construction?
Information on the new confined spaces standard can be found on the Confined Spaces page at www.osha.gov/confinedspaces/index.html.

How can I contact OSHA if I have questions about the final rule?
For compliance assistance regarding application of the final rule contact: Directorate of Construction, Room N3468, OSHA, U.S. Department of Labor, 200 Constitution Avenue NW, Washington, DC 20210; telephone (202)-693-2020 or fax (202)-693-1689.

Who is affected by Subpart AA?
All construction employers whose workers may be exposed to confined space hazards.

Do I need to do anything if there are permit spaces at the worksite, but my employees will not need to enter the permit space?
Yes, you must take effective steps to prevent your employees from entering the space.

What standard should I follow if my workers are doing construction AND general industry work in confined spaces?
An employer whose workers are engaged in both construction and general industry work in confined spaces will meet OSHA requirements if that employer meets the requirements of 29 CFR 1926 Subpart AA - Confined Spaces in Construction.

Entering a Confined Space Procedures

This space requires an emergency retrieval system, continuous air monitoring, and safety watch or two-way communication for safe entry.

Donning the personal protective equipment (**PPE**) necessary for confined space entry.
The full-body harness provides fully adjustable leg and shoulder straps for worker comfort and proper fit. Stamped steel sliding back D-ring and sub-pelvic strap provide optimum force distribution.

Example of a "***D-Ring***" and fall protection harness used when entering a confined space. The D-Ring provides a compatible anchor point for connecting devices such as lanyards or retractable lifelines. The shock absorbing lanyard provides a deceleration distance during a fall to reduce fall arrest forces for extra protection against injury.

Tripod-retrieval assembly in use for an entry into one of the many confined spaces.

Checking the cable tension and inertial locking mechanism of the retrieval assembly.

Correct use of this device prevents free-falls greater than 2 feet.

The entrant descends into the space as the attendant critiques the operation.

Dramatic rescue simulation using the tripod-retrieval system.

The entrant is now safely out of the space and is ready to return to his many other projects after this simulated exercise.

Duties of the Person Authorizing or in Charge of the Entry

The person who authorizes or is in charge of the permit entry confined space must comply with the following:

1. Make certain that all pre-entry requirements as outlined on the permit have been completed before any worker is allowed to enter the confined space.
2. Make certain that any required pre-entry conditions are present.
3. If an in-plant/facility rescue team is to be used in the event of an emergency, make sure they would be available. If your Employer does not maintain an in-plant rescue team, dial 911 on any telephone for the Rescue Squad.
4. Make sure that any communication equipment which would be used to summon either the in-plant rescue team or other emergency assistance is operating correctly.
5. Terminate the entry upon becoming aware of a condition or set of conditions whose hazard potential exceeds the limits authorized by the entry permit.

If the person who would otherwise issue an entry permit is in charge of the entry and present during the entire entry, then a written permit is not required if that person uses a checklist as provided in the section on "***Permits***".

This person may also serve as the attendant at the site.

Special Considerations During A Permit Required Entry

Certain work being performed in a permit entry confined space could cause the atmosphere in the space to change.

Examples of this are welding, drilling, or sludge removal. In these situations, air monitoring of the confined space should be conducted on a continuous basis throughout the time of the entry.

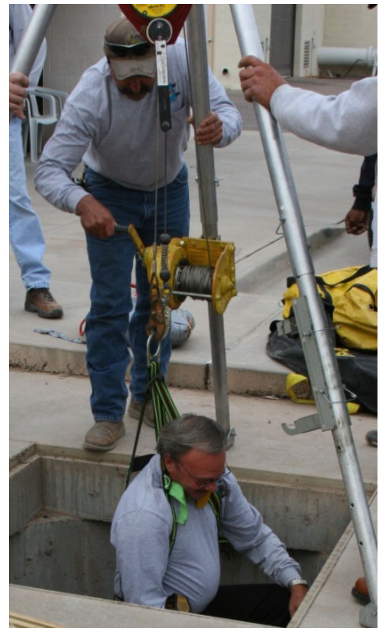
If the workers leave the confined space for any significant period of time, such as for a lunch or other break, the atmosphere of the confined space must be retested before the workers reenter the confined space.

Unauthorized Persons

Take the following actions when unauthorized persons approach or enter a permit space while entry is under way:

1. Warn the unauthorized persons that they must stay away from the permit space,
2. Advise unauthorized persons that they must exit immediately if they have entered the space, and
3. Inform the authorized entrants and the entry supervisor if unauthorized persons have entered the permit space.

Entrants



All entrants must be authorized by the entry supervisor to enter permit spaces, have received the required training, have used the proper equipment, and observed the entry procedures and permit requirements.

The following entrant duties are required:
Know the hazards that may be faced during entry, including information on the mode, signs or symptoms, and consequences of the exposure;

Properly use the equipment required for safe entry;
Communicate with the attendant as necessary to enable the attendant to monitor the status of the entrants and to enable the attendant to alert the entrants of the need to evacuate the space if necessary;

Alert the attendant whenever; the entrant recognizes any warning signs or symptoms of exposure to a dangerous situation, or any prohibited condition is detected; and Exit the permit space as quickly as possible whenever the attendant or entry supervisor gives an order to evacuate the permit space, the entrant recognizes any warning signs or symptoms of exposure to a dangerous situation, the entrant detects a prohibited condition, or an evacuation alarm is activated.

Hazards

- ✓ **Explosive / Flammable Atmospheres**
- ✓ **Toxic Atmospheres**
- ✓ **Engulfment**
- ✓ **Asphyxiation**
- ✓ **Entrapment**
- ✓ **Slips & falls**
- ✓ **Chemical Exposure**
- ✓ **Electric Shock**
- ✓ **Thermal / Chemical Burns**
- ✓ **Noise & Vibration**

Hazard Control

Engineering Controls

- ➢ Locked entry points
- ➢ Temporary ventilation
- ➢ Temporary Lighting

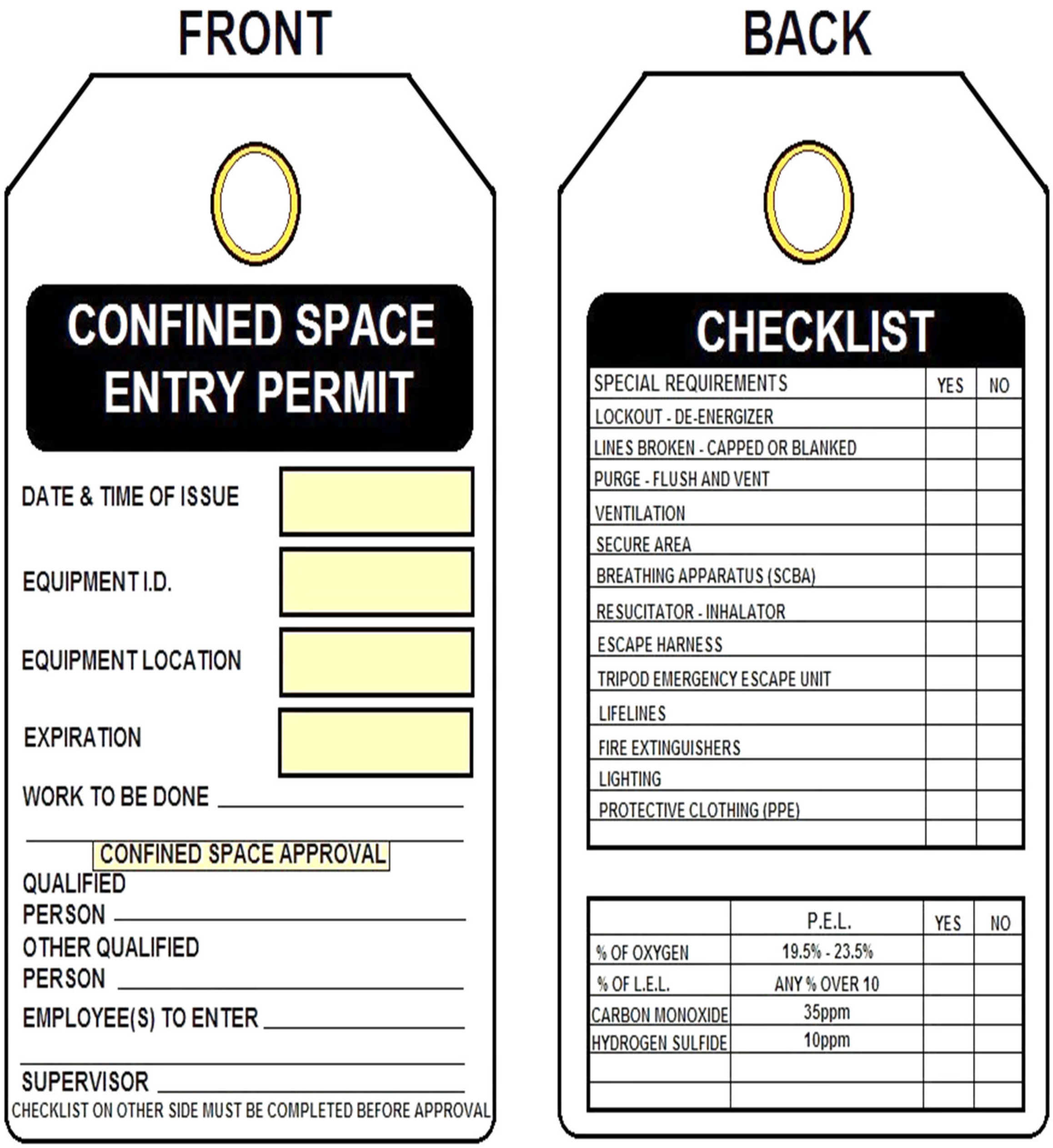
Administrative Controls

- ➢ Signs
- ➢ Employee training
- ➢ Entry procedures
- ➢ Atmospheric Monitoring
- ➢ Rescue procedures
- ➢ Use of prescribed Personal Protective Equipment

Entry Standard Operating Procedures

This program outlines:

- ➢ Hazards
- ➢ Hazard Control & Abatement
- ➢ Acceptable Entry Conditions
- ➢ Means of Entry
- ➢ Entry Equipment Required
- ➢ Emergency Procedures



EXAMPLE OF A CONFINED SPACE TAG

Permit Required Confined Space Entry General Rules

During all confined space entries, the following safety rules must be strictly enforced:

1. Only authorized and trained employees may enter a confined space or act as safety watchman/attendant.

2. No smoking is permitted in a confined space or near entrance/exit area.

3. During confined space entries, a watchman must be present at all times.

4. Constant visual or voice communication will be maintained between the safety watchman/attendant and employees entering a confined space.

5. No bottom or side entry will be made or work conducted below the level of any hanging material or material which could cause engulfment.

6. Air and oxygen monitoring is required before entering any permit-required confined space. Oxygen levels in a confined space must be between 19.5 and 23.5 percent. Levels above or below will require the use of an SCBA or other approved air supplied respirator.

Additional ventilation and oxygen level monitoring is required when welding is performed. The monitoring will check oxygen levels, explosive gas levels and carbon monoxide levels. Entry will not be permitted if explosive gas is detected above one-half the Lower Explosive Limit (**LEL**), or 10% of a specific gas explosive limit.

7. To prevent injuries to others, all openings to confined spaces will be protected by a barricade when covers are removed.

Confined Space Entry Procedures

Each employee who enters or is involved in the entry must:

1. Understand the procedures for confined space entry
2. Know the Hazards of the specific space
3. Review the specific procedures for each entry
4. Understand how to use entry and rescue equipment

Confined Space Entry Permits

- ✓ Confined Space Entry Permits must be completed before any employee enters a permit-required confined space. The permit must be completed and signed by an authorized member of management before entry.
- ✓ Permits will expire before the completion of the shift or if any pre-entry conditions change.
- ✓ Permits will be maintained on file for 12 months.

Contractor Entry

All work by non-company employees that involves the entry into confined spaces will follow the procedures of this program. The information of this program and specific hazards of the confined spaces to be entered will be provided to contractor management prior to commencing entry or work.

Important Rescue Service Questions

What is the availability of the rescue service?

Is it unavailable at certain times of the day or in certain situations?

What is the likelihood that key personnel of the rescue service might be unavailable at times?

If the rescue service becomes unavailable while an entry is underway, does it have the capability of notifying the employer so that the employer can instruct the attendant to abort the entry immediately?

Confined Space Training

***Training for Confined Space Entry includes*:**
1. Duties of entry supervisor, entrant and attendants
2. Confined space entry permits
3. Hazards of confined spaces
4. Use of air monitoring equipment
5. First aid and CPR training
6. Emergency action & rescue procedures
7. Confined space entry & rescue equipment
8. Rescue training, including entry and removal from representative spaces

Confined Space Training and Education
OSHA's General Industry Regulation, §1910.146 Permit-required confined spaces, contains requirements for practices and procedures to protect employees in general industry from the hazards of entry into permit-required confined spaces. This regulation does not apply to construction.

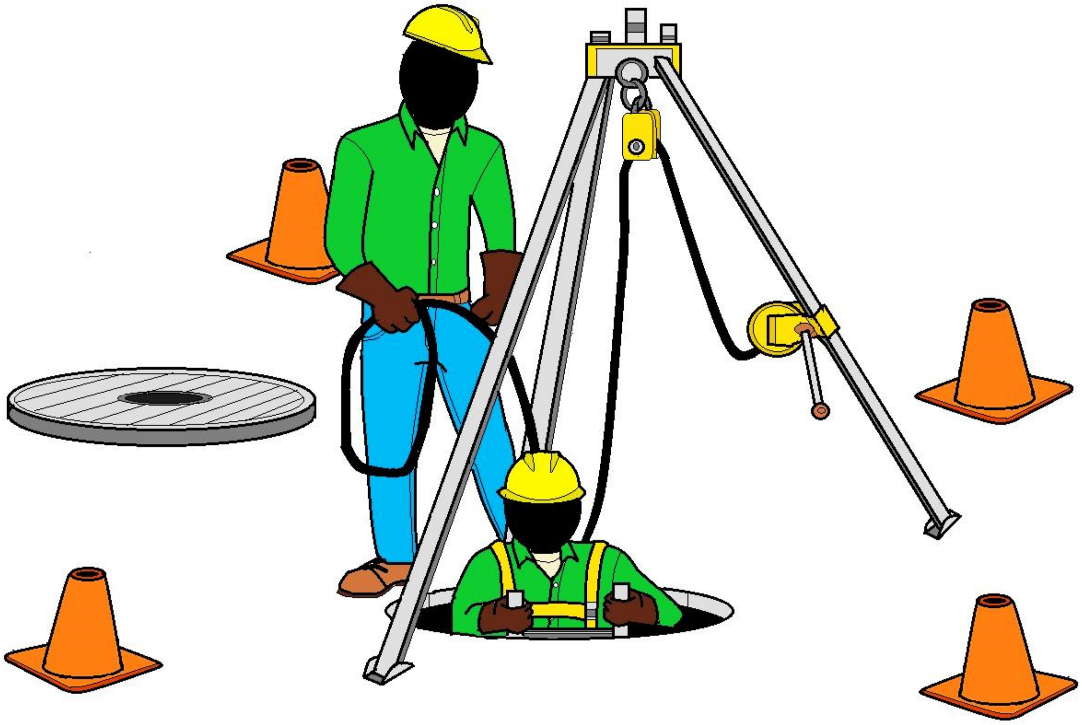
On May 4, 2015, OSHA issued a new standard for construction work in confined spaces, which became effective August 3, 2015. Confined spaces can present physical and atmospheric hazards that can be avoided if they are recognized and addressed prior to entering these spaces to perform work. The new standard, Subpart AA of 29 CFR 1926 will help prevent construction workers from being hurt or killed by eliminating and isolating hazards in confined spaces at construction sites similar to the way workers in other industries are already protected. These requirements are shown below.

§1926.21 Safety Training and Education. (Partial)
(b)(6)(i) All employees required to enter into confined or enclosed spaces shall be instructed as to the nature of the hazards involved, the necessary precautions to be taken, and in the use of protective and emergency equipment required. The employer shall comply with any specific regulations that apply to work in dangerous or potentially dangerous areas.

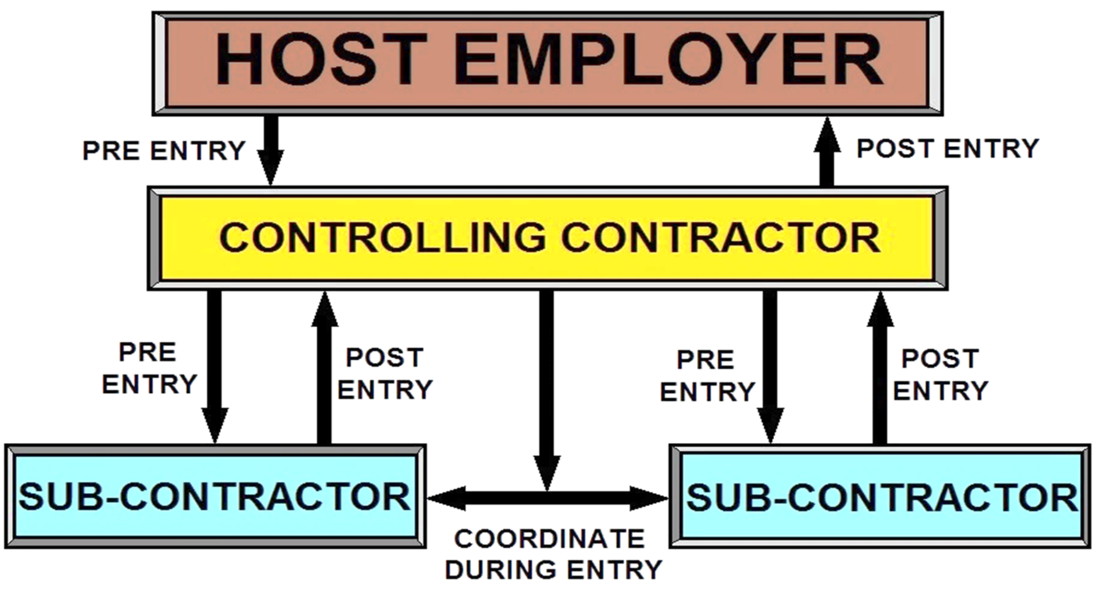
(ii) For purposes of paragraph (b)(6)(i) of this section, "***confined or enclosed space***" means any space having a limited means of egress, which is subject to the accumulation of toxic or flammable contaminants or has an oxygen deficient atmosphere. Confined or enclosed spaces include, but are not limited to, storage tanks, process vessels, bins, boilers, ventilation or exhaust ducts, sewers, underground utility vaults, tunnels pipelines, and open top spaces more than 4 feet in depth such as pits, tubs, vaults, and vessels.

OSHA's Construction Regulations also contain requirements dealing with confined space hazards in underground construction (Subpart S), underground electric transmission and distribution work (§1926.956), excavations (Subpart P), and welding and cutting (Subpart J).

Further guidance may be obtained from American National Standard ANSI Z117.1-1989, Safety Requirements for Confined Spaces. This standard provides minimum safety requirements to be followed while entering, exiting and working in confined spaces at normal atmospheric pressure. This standard does not pertain to underground mining, tunneling, caisson work or other similar tasks that have established national consensus standards.



ENTERING A CONFINED SPACE



COORDINATING CONFINED SPACE ENTRY ON JOBSITES

Your Employer is Responsible for Certain Training Requirements

These are as follows:

1. **GENERAL:** As an employer, your employer must ensure that all workers who must enter a permit entry confined space in the course of their work are informed of appropriate procedures and controls for entry into such spaces. These workers must be made aware of the fact that an unauthorized entry could be fatal, and that their senses are unable to detect and evaluate the severity of atmospheric hazards.

2. **TRAINING FOR AUTHORIZED ENTRANTS:** Your employer must ensure that all authorized entrants know the emergency action plan and have received training covering the following subjects prior to entering any permit entry confined space:

a**. Hazard Recognition**: Each worker must understand the nature of the hazard before entering and the need to perform appropriate testing to determine if it is safe to enter.

b. **Use of Personal Protective Equipment**: Each employee must be taught the proper use of all personal protective equipment required for entry or rescue, and the proper use of protective barriers and shields.

c. **Self-Rescue**: Each worker must be trained to get out of the confined space as rapidly as possible without help whenever an order to evacuate is given by the attendant, whenever an automatic evacuation alarm is activated, or whenever workers recognize the warning signs of exposure to substances that could be found in the confined space.

They must also be made aware of the toxic effects or symptoms of exposure to hazardous materials he could encounter in the confined space. This includes anything that could be absorbed through the skin or which could be carried through the skin by any solvents that are used. They must be trained to relay an alarm to the attendant and to attempt self- rescue immediately upon becoming aware of these effects.

d. **Special Work Practices or Procedures**: Each worker must be trained in any modifications of normal work practices that are necessary for permit entry confined space work.

3. **TRAINING FOR PERSONS AUTHORIZING OR IN CHARGE OF ENTRY:** In addition to other requirements already covered, the person authorizing or in charge of entry shall be trained to recognize the effects of exposure to hazards that could be in the confined space. They must also carry out all duties that the permit assigns to them.

Rescue practice training. This photo is showing a sand bag being utilized as a dummy.

4. **TRAINING FOR ATTENDANT** Any worker functioning as an attendant at a permit entry confined space must be trained in the company's emergency action plan, the duties of the attendant, and in;

a. Proper use of the communications equipment furnished for communicating with authorized workers entering the confined space or for summoning emergency or rescue services.

b. Authorized procedures for summoning rescue or other emergency services.

c. Recognition of the unusual actions of a worker which could indicate that they could be experiencing a toxic reaction to contaminants that could be present in the space.

d. Any training for rescuers, if the attendant will function as a rescuer also.

e. Any training for workers who enter the confined space, if the permit specifies that the duty of the attendant will rotate among the workers authorized to enter the confined space.

CONFINED SPACE AUTHORIZED ENTRANT'S LOG EXAMPLE

CONFINED SPACE: **DATE:**
TIME:

ENTRANT'S NAME (PRINT)	TIME IN	TIME OUT

ENTRY Attendant:

ENTRY Supervisor Review:

What do you think? Is this a dangerous confined space? Would you weld inside a large pipe all alone? I am sure he is paid well, but is he safe and sound?

Confined Space Entry Procedure

Space ________________ Date Last Modified ____________

Place check mark in all applicable areas

	Hazards			**Personal Protective Equipment**
	Explosive / Combustion Hazard			Air supplied Respirator
	Exposed Electrical Circuits			Air Purifying Respirator
	Unguarded Machine Parts			Welding Protection
	Atmospheric Hazard			Gloves
	Potential Atmospheric Hazard			Hard Hat
	Thermal Hazard		**Ventilation Requirements**	
	Chemical Hazard			Continuous ___cu.ft/min Note*: See Ventilation Guidelines for Confined Spaces for typical ventilation configurations and formulas.*
	Fall Hazard			
	Engulfment hazard		Note: *Additional ventilation may be required for hot work, grinding or other operations that would produce airborne fumes, mist or dust. Entry Supervisor must assess additional ventilation requirements base on tasks to be performed in the space*	
	Converging Walls			
	Floors slope-small cross-section			
	Slip Hazard			
Entry Path				Vent Exhaust Point:
	Side entry			Vent Supply Point:
	Bottom entry			Space Volume
	Door			**Initial Purge Time=** 7.5 X _____ (space volume) / Effective Blower Capacity
	Top open entry			
	Top manhole entry			**20 Air Changes per Hour (ACH) for duration of entry**
	Hinged hatch			**Minimum initial Purge Time= 20 Minutes**
Entry & Rescue Equipment				**Adequate Blower Capacity (ABC) = ________** ABC = Space Volume x 20 ACH / 60 minutes
	Life Line			
	Floor level opening barrier		**Acceptable Entry Conditions**	
	Body Harness			Confined Space Entry permit posted
	Tripod			Oxygen 19.5 23.5%
	Man Winch			Lower Explosive Level %
	Fall Arrest Unit			Toxic fumes/vapors Less than PEL
	Emerg Retrieval Line			No engulfing material in space
	Atmospheric Monitor			No hazardous chemicals or material
	Blower /Saddle / Trunks			Drained - Flushed
	Drop Light			Rescue Team Available on Site
	Communication Gear			Ventilation Established & Maintained
	Ladder			LOTO Electrical components in space
	Hand held radios			LOTO Mechanical Components in space
	Portable Lighting			LOTO All pipes to and from space

Other Hazards

Flammable Atmospheres

A flammable atmosphere generally arises from enriched oxygen atmospheres, vaporization of flammable liquids, byproducts of work, chemical reactions, concentrations of combustible dusts, and desorption of chemical from inner surfaces of the confined space.

An atmosphere becomes flammable when the ratio of oxygen to combustible material in the air is neither too rich nor too lean for combustion to occur. Combustible gases or vapors will accumulate when there is inadequate ventilation in areas such as a confined space.

Flammable gases such as acetylene, butane, propane, hydrogen, methane, natural or manufactured gases or vapors from liquid hydrocarbons can be trapped in confined spaces, and since many gases are heavier than air, they will seek lower levels as in pits, sewers, and various types of storage tanks and vessels. In a closed top tank, it should also be noted that lighter than air gases may rise and develop a flammable concentration if trapped above the opening.

The byproducts of work procedures can generate flammable or explosive conditions within a confined space. Specific kinds of work such as spray painting can result in the release of explosive gases or vapors. Welding in a confined space is a major cause of explosions in areas that contain combustible gas.

Chemical reactions forming flammable atmospheres occur when surfaces are initially exposed to the atmosphere, or when chemicals combine to form flammable gases. This condition arises when dilute sulfuric acid reacts with iron to form hydrogen or when calcium carbide makes contact with water to form acetylene.

Other examples of spontaneous chemical reactions that may produce explosions from small amounts of unstable compounds are acetylene-metal compounds, peroxides, and nitrates. In a dry state, these compounds have the potential to explode upon percussion or exposure to increased temperature.

Another class of chemical reactions that form flammable atmospheres arise from deposits of pyrophoric substances (carbon, ferrous oxide, ferrous sulfate, iron, etc.) that can be found in tanks used by the chemical and petroleum industry. These tanks containing flammable deposits will spontaneously ignite upon exposure to air.

Combustible dust concentrations are usually found during the process of loading, unloading, and conveying grain products, nitrated fertilizers, finely ground chemical products, and any other combustible material.

High charges of static electricity, which rapidly accumulate during periods of relatively low humidity (below 50%) can cause certain substances to accumulate electrostatic charges of sufficient energy to produce sparks and ignite a flammable atmosphere.

These sparks may also cause explosions when the right air or oxygen to dust or gas mixture is present.

Toxic Atmospheres

The substances to be regarded as toxic in a confined space can cover the entire spectrum of gases, vapors, and finely-divided airborne dust in industry. The sources of toxic atmospheres encountered may arise from the following:

1. The manufacturing process (for example, in producing polyvinyl chloride, hydrogen chloride is used as well as vinyl chloride monomer, which is carcinogenic).
2. The product stored [removing decomposed organic material from a tank can liberate toxic substances, such as hydrogen sulfide (**H_2S**)].
3. The operation performed in the confined space (for example, welding or brazing with metals capable of producing toxic fumes).

During loading, unloading, formulation, and production, mechanical and/or human error may also produce toxic gases which are not part of the planned operation.

Carbon monoxide (**CO**) is a hazardous gas that may build up in a confined space. This odorless, colorless gas that has approximately the same density as air is formed from incomplete combustion of organic materials such as wood, coal, gas, oil, and gasoline; it can be formed from microbial decomposition of organic matter in sewers, silos, and fermentation tanks.

CO is an insidious toxic gas because of its poor warning properties. Early stages of CO intoxication are nausea and headache. CO may be fatal at as little as 1000 ppm or 10% in air, and is considered dangerous at 200 ppm or 2%, because it forms Carboxyhemoglobin in the blood which prevents the distribution of oxygen in the body.

CO is a relatively abundant colorless, odorless gas. Therefore, any untested atmosphere must be suspect. It must also be noted that a safe reading on a combustible gas indicator does not ensure that CO is not present. CO must be tested for specifically.

The formation of CO may result from chemical reactions or work activities, therefore fatalities due to CO poisoning are not confined to any particular industry. There have been fatal accidents in sewage treatment plants due to decomposition products and lack of ventilation in confined spaces.

Another area where CO results as a product of decomposition is in the formation of silo gas in grain storage elevators. In another area, the paint industry, varnish is manufactured by introducing the various ingredients into a kettle, and heating them in an inert atmosphere, usually town gas, which is a mixture of carbon dioxide and nitrogen.

In welding operations, oxides of nitrogen and ozone are gases of major toxicological importance, and incomplete oxidation may occur and carbon monoxide can form as a byproduct.

Another poor work practice, which has led to fatalities, is the recirculation of diesel exhaust emissions. Increased CO levels can be prevented by strict control of the ventilation and the use of catalytic converters.

Procedures for Atmospheric Testing. - 1910.146 App B
OSHA Requirement

Sub-Part Title: General Environmental Controls

Atmospheric testing is required for two distinct purposes:
evaluation of the hazards of the permit space and verification that acceptable entry conditions for entry into that space exist.

(1) Evaluation testing. The atmosphere of a confined space should be analyzed using equipment of sufficient sensitivity and specificity to identify and evaluate any hazardous atmospheres that may exist or arise, so that appropriate permit entry procedures can be developed and acceptable entry conditions stipulated for that space.

Evaluation and interpretation of these data, and development of the entry procedure, should be done by, or reviewed by, a technically qualified professional (e.g., OSHA consultation service, or certified industrial hygienist, registered safety engineer, certified safety professional, certified marine chemist, etc.) based on evaluation of all serious hazards.

(2) Verification testing. The atmosphere of a permit space which may contain a hazardous atmosphere should be tested for residues of all contaminants identified by evaluation testing using permit specified equipment to determine that residual concentrations at the time of testing and entry are within the range of acceptable entry conditions.

Results of testing (i.e., actual concentration, etc.) should be recorded on the permit in the space provided adjacent to the stipulated acceptable entry condition.

(3) Duration of testing. Measurement of values for each atmospheric parameter should be made for at least the minimum response time of the test instrument specified by the manufacturer.

(4) Testing stratified atmospheres. When monitoring for entries involving a descent into atmospheres that may be stratified, the atmospheric envelope should be tested a distance of approximately 4 feet (1.22 m) in the direction of travel and to each side. If a sampling probe is used, the entrant's rate of progress should be slowed to accommodate the sampling speed and detector response.

(5) Order of testing. A test for oxygen is performed first because most combustible gas meters are oxygen dependent and will not provide reliable readings in an oxygen deficient atmosphere.

Combustible gases are tested for next because the threat of fire or explosion is both more immediate and more life threatening, in most cases, than exposure to toxic gases and vapors. If tests for toxic gases and vapors are necessary, they are performed last.

This is a ten-minute escape air pack or emergency air supply. The plastic bag with go over your head during an emergency and provide enough air to get out of the hole. There are smaller versions of this system.

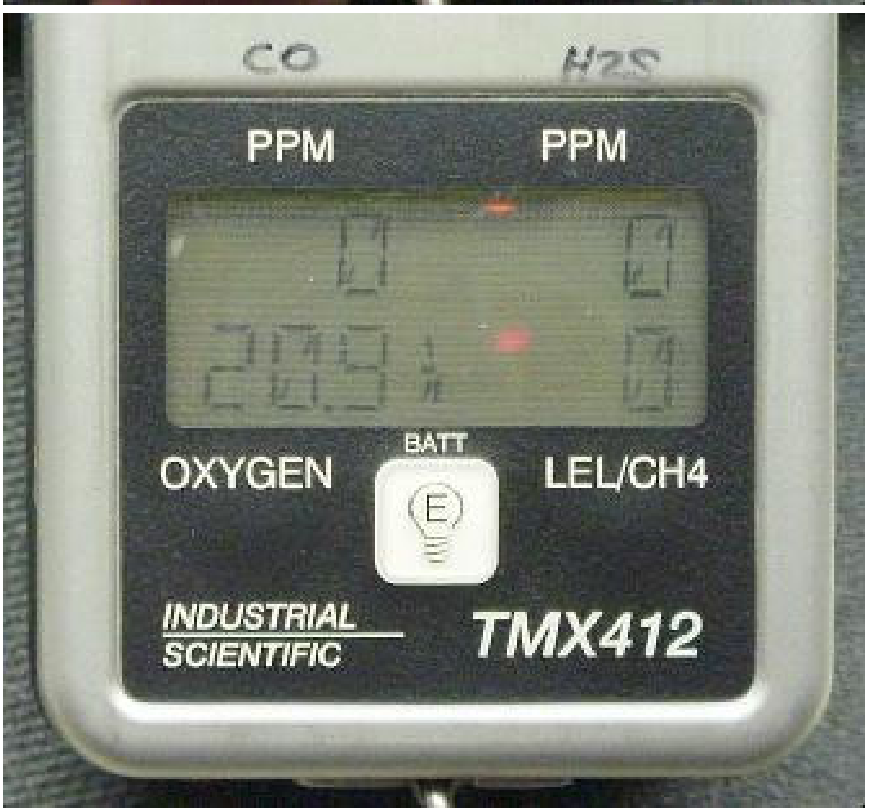
Functional Buttons:

On/Off	Press black button and hold until display tells you to RELEASE. Turn on in a clean-air environment.
Mode	Press "mode" button at display prompt.
E Button	Press (E) button at display prompt.
Alarm Mode	Red lights flash and unit beeps. Beeps are more frequent at higher contaminant levels, or lower oxygen level.

Forced air ventilation with a disposable air shaft.

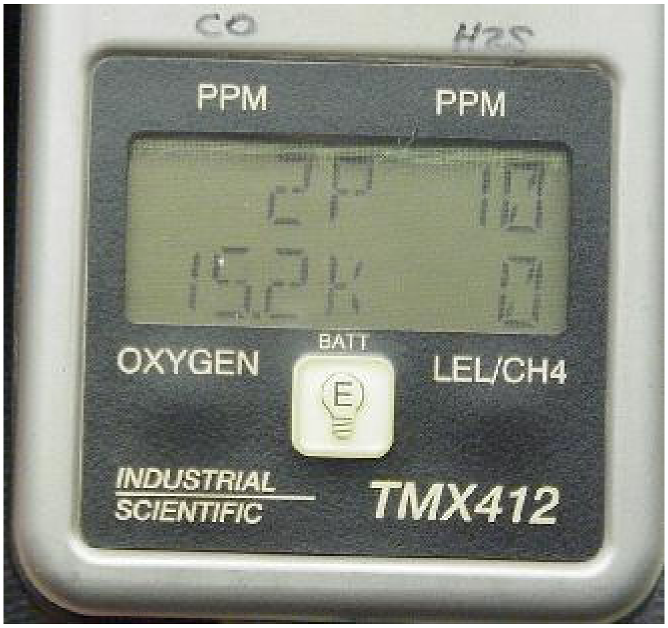
Typical Display of the TMX412

Location of gases on display.



Example of a clean air display. Carbon monoxide (**CO**) and hydrogen sulfide (**H_2S**) are in ppm; oxygen (**O_2**) and lower explosive limit (**LEL**) readings are percentage values. The battery-life indicator is just right of the oxygen display (i.e., 20.9); each line represents about one hour of service remaining.

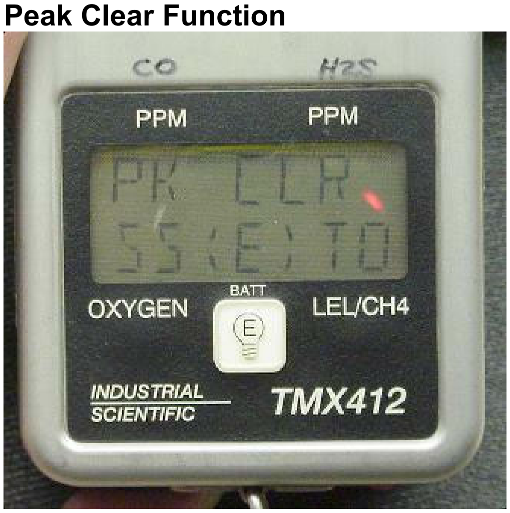
Peak Display Function



Example Display for Peak Mode: The display reads 2 ppm peak value for CO and 10 ppm peak value for H_2S (top line);
15.2 % for oxygen and 0 % for LEL (bottom line).

- Use the PEAK function to display highest recorded readings for CO, H2S, and LEL, and the lowest reading for O2.
- Readings are not erased when you turn the unit off. You must use the PEAK CLEAR function to erase the memory.
- Make sure you check the peak readings have been cleared before you start your monitoring session.
- Press mode button until display reads "P" (top line), and "K" (bottom line) (see photo).

Peak Clear Function



- Use the **PEAK CLEAR** function to clear peak readings from the internal memory. Readings are not erased when you turn the unit off. You must use the **PEAK CLEAR** function to erase the memory.
- Press mode button until display reads "**PK CLR PRESS (E) TO RESET**". After you press the (E) button, press mode button again until peak reading appears. Unit should now read 0,0 (top line), and 21, 0 (bottom line) assuming this was performed in a clean-air environment.

Zero Function and Calibration Function:

- Zero and Calibration Functions are performed by Attendant or as specified by the Supervisor or manufacturer.
- Special equipment and experience is necessary to properly perform these functions.

Documentation and Training:

- Make sure you are familiar with all of our confined space entry equipment, including the multi-gas monitor, before use.
- Make sure to document your air monitoring data (e.g., peak values and other relevant data) on the Confined Space Air Monitoring Data Form.

You need continued atmospheric monitoring during the entry in any confined space. Most entrants will carry two gas monitors for increased safety.

Atmospheric Testing Policy *Example*

Before entry, it is necessary to test the atmosphere in the confined space for oxygen levels, flammability, and/or any contaminants that have a potential to be present in that confined space. This testing must be done by a qualified person using equipment which has been approved for use in such areas.

The testing equipment itself should be checked to make sure it is working properly before using it. Follow the manufacturer's recommended procedures.

Testing of the confined spaces should be conducted throughout the entire portion of the space that workers will occupy during the entry. This testing shall be done without the use of ventilation systems.

Where the entry is vertical into the confined space, it is recommended that remote probes be used to measure the atmosphere at various levels. This is necessary because some gases and vapors are lighter or heavier than air and can accumulate at different levels in the confined space. Test outside the confined space to make sure the surrounding air is not contaminated.

Atmospheric conditions are considered unacceptable if oxygen levels are less than 19.5% or greater than 23.5%. Regulations define the following unacceptable levels of other hazards monitored:

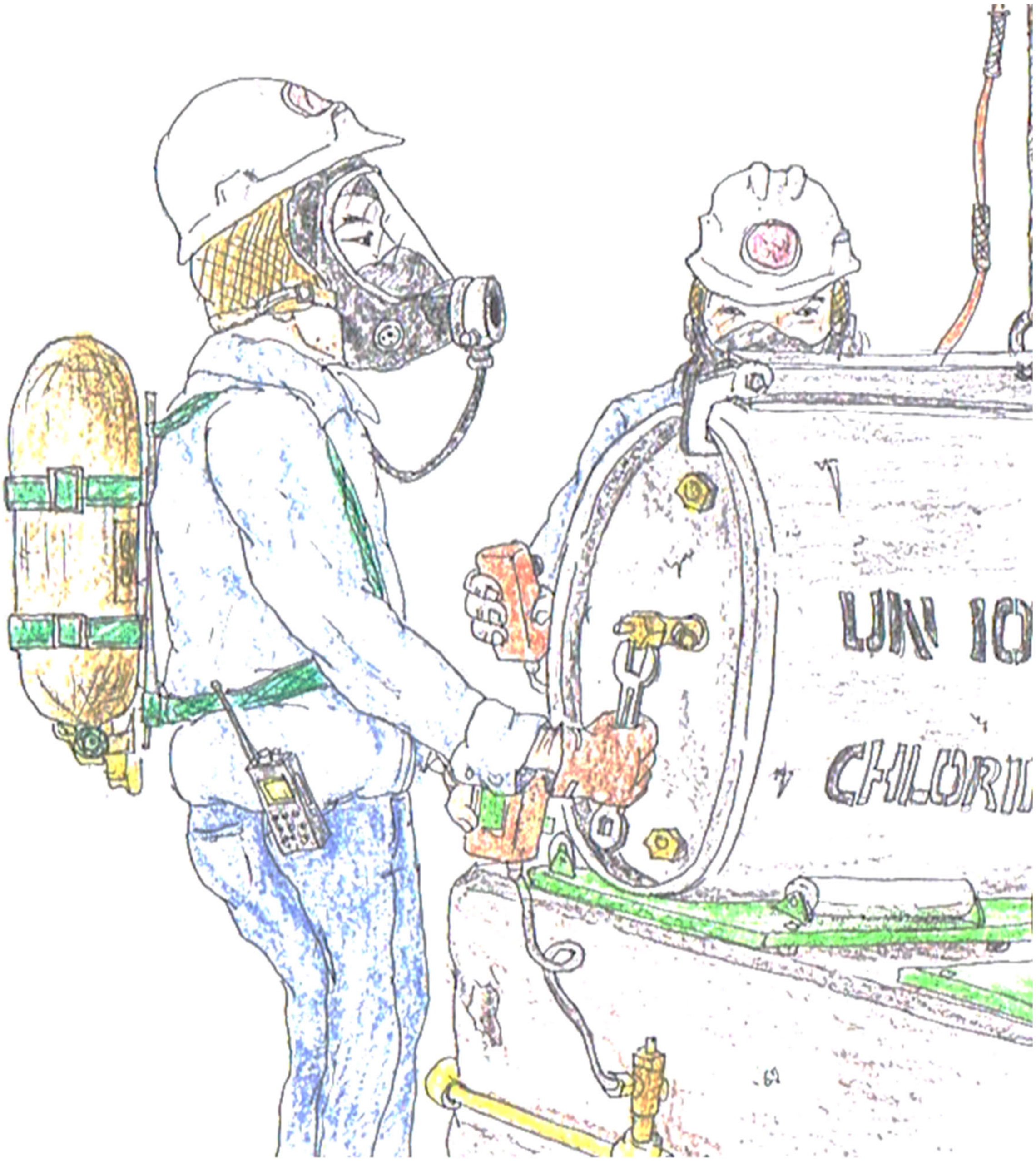
1. A flammable gas, vapor or mist greater than 10% of its lower flammable limit (**LFL**). LFL means the minimum concentration of the flammable material which will ignite if an ignition source is present.

2. An airborne combustible dust at a concentration that obscures vision at a distance of five feet or less.

3. An atmospheric concentration of a substance greater than the allowed limit in the Material Safety Data Sheet for that substance.

If test results conclude that the atmospheric condition of the confined space is unacceptable, entry is prohibited until such conditions are brought into acceptable limits. This may be done by purging, cleaning and/or ventilating the space.
Purging refers to the method by which gases, vapors, or other airborne impurities are displaced from a confined space.

The confined space may also be made non-flammable, non-explosive or otherwise chemically non-reactive by displacing or diluting the original atmosphere with steam or gas that is non-reactive with respect to that space, a process referred to as "***inerting***".



Fire, Explosion, and Reactivity Hazards

Some chemicals present physical hazards such as the potential for fire, explosion, and reactivity. The SDS formerly called the MSDS explains these physical hazards.
Flammable chemicals—catch fire easily. The SDS will tell if it's flammable.
Flash point—the minimum temperature at which a liquid gives off enough vapors to burn. The lower the flash point, the more flammable the substance.
Flammable limits—the range of concentration of a substance in the air within which a substance can readily catch fire. Concentrations below or above the limits are less likely to ignite or burn.

Irritant (Corrosive) Atmospheres

Irritant or corrosive atmospheres can be divided into primary and secondary groups. The primary irritants exert no systemic toxic effects (effects on the entire body).

Examples of primary irritants are chlorine, ozone, hydrochloric acid, hydrofluoric acid, sulfuric acid, nitrogen dioxide, ammonia, and sulfur dioxide. A secondary irritant is one that may produce systemic toxic effects in addition to surface irritation. Examples of secondary irritants include benzene, carbon tetrachloride, ethyl chloride, trichloroethane, trichloroethylene, and chloropropene.

Irritant gases vary widely among all areas of industrial activity. They can be found in plastics plants, chemical plants, the petroleum industry, tanneries, refrigeration industries, paint manufacturing, and mining operations.

Prolonged exposure at irritant or corrosive concentrations in a confined space may produce little or no evidence of irritation. This may result in a general weakening of the defense reflexes from changes in sensitivity. The danger in this situation is that the worker is usually not aware of any increase in his/her exposure to toxic substances.

Asphyxiating Atmospheres
The normal atmosphere is composed approximately of 20.9% oxygen and 78.1% nitrogen, and 1% argon with small amounts of various other gases. Reduction of oxygen in a confined space may be the result of either consumption or displacement.

The consumption of oxygen takes place during combustion of flammable substances, as in welding, heating, cutting, and brazing. A more subtle consumption of oxygen occurs during bacterial action, as in the fermentation process.

Oxygen may also be consumed during chemical reactions as in the formation of rust on the exposed surface of the confined space (iron oxide). The number of people working in a confined space and the amount of their physical activity will also influence the oxygen consumption rate.

A second factor in oxygen deficiency is displacement by another gas. Examples of gases that are used to displace air, and therefore reduce the oxygen level are helium, argon, and nitrogen.

Carbon dioxide may also be used to displace air and can occur naturally in sewers, storage bins, wells, tunnels, wine vats, and grain elevators.

Aside from the natural development of these gases, or their use in the chemical process, certain gases are also used as inerting agents to displace flammable substances and retard pyrophoric reactions.

Gases such as nitrogen, argon, helium, and carbon dioxide, are frequently referred to as non-toxic inert gases but have claimed many lives. The use of nitrogen to inert a confined space has claimed more lives than carbon dioxide.

The total displacement of oxygen by nitrogen will cause immediate collapse and death.

Carbon Dioxide
Carbon dioxide and argon, with specific gravities greater than air, may lie in a tank or manhole for hours or days after opening. Since these gases are colorless and odorless, they pose an immediate hazard to health unless appropriate oxygen measurements and ventilation are adequately carried out.

Oxygen Deprivation
Oxygen deprivation is one form of asphyxiation. While it is desirable to maintain the atmospheric oxygen level at 21% by volume, the body can tolerate deviation from this ideal. When the oxygen level falls to 17%, the first sign of hypoxia is deterioration to night vision, which is not noticeable until a normal oxygen concentration is restored.

Physiologic effects are increased breathing volume and accelerated heartbeat.

Between 14-16% physiologic effects are increased breathing volume, accelerated heartbeat, very poor muscular coordination, rapid fatigue, and intermittent respiration.

Between 6-10% the effects are nausea, vomiting, inability to perform, and unconsciousness. Less than 6%, the effects are spasmodic breathing, convulsive movements, and death in minutes.

Mechanical Hazards
If activation of electrical or mechanical equipment would cause injury, each piece of equipment should be manually isolated to prevent inadvertent activation before workers enter or while they work in a confined space. The interplay of hazards associated with a confined space, such as the potential of flammable vapors or gases being present, and the build-up of static charge due to mechanical cleaning, such as abrasive blasting, all influence the precautions which must be taken.

To prevent vapor leaks, flashbacks, and other hazards, workers should completely isolate the space. To completely isolate a confined space, the closing of valves is not sufficient.

All pipes must be physically disconnected or isolation blanks bolted in place. Other special precautions must be taken in cases where flammable liquids or vapors may re-contaminate the confined space.

The pipes blanked or disconnected should be inspected and tested for leakage to check the effectiveness of the procedure. Other areas of concern are steam valves, pressure lines, and chemical transfer pipes. A less apparent hazard is the space referred to as a void, such as double walled vessels, which must be given special consideration in blanking off and inerting.

Thermal Effects
Four factors influence the interchange of heat between people and their environment. They are: (1) air temperature, (2) air velocity, (3) moisture contained in the air, and (4) radiant heat. Because of the nature and design of most confined spaces, moisture content and radiant heat are difficult to control.

As the body temperature rises progressively, workers will continue to function until the body temperature reaches approximately 102°F.

When this body temperature is exceeded, the workers are less efficient, and are prone to heat exhaustion, heat cramps, or heat stroke. In a cold environment, certain physiologic mechanisms come into play, which tend to limit heat loss and increase heat production.

The most severe strain in cold conditions is chilling of the extremities so that activity is restricted. Special precautions must be taken in cold environments to prevent frostbite, trench foot, and general hypothermia.

Proper signage is essential.

Protective Insulated Clothing

Protective insulated clothing for both hot and cold environments will add additional bulk to the worker and must be considered in allowing for movement in the confined space and exit time. Therefore, air temperature of the environment becomes an important consideration when evaluating working conditions in confined spaces.

Noise
Noise problems are usually intensified in confined spaces because the interior tends to cause sound to reverberate and thus expose the worker to higher sound levels than those found in an open environment.

This intensified noise increases the risk of hearing damage to workers, which could result in temporary or permanent loss of hearing. Noise in a confined space which may not be intense enough to cause hearing damage may still disrupt verbal communication with the emergency standby person on the exterior of the confined space.

If the workers inside are not able to hear commands or danger signals due to excessive noise, the probability of severe accidents can increase.

Vibration
Whole body vibration may affect multiple body parts and organs, depending upon the vibration characteristics. Segmental vibration, unlike whole body vibration, appears to be more localized in creating injury to the fingers and hands of workers using tools, such as pneumatic hammers, rotary grinders or other hand tools which cause vibration.

Other Hazards
Some physical hazards cannot be eliminated because of the nature of the confined space or the work to be performed. These hazards include such items as scaffolding, surface residues, and structural hazards.

The use of scaffolding in confined spaces has contributed too many accidents caused by workers or materials falling, improper use of guard rails, and lack of maintenance to insure worker safety.

The choice of material used for scaffolding depends upon the type of work to be performed, the calculated weight to be supported, and the surface on which the scaffolding is placed, as well as the substance previously stored in the confined space.

Surface residues in confined spaces can increase the already hazardous conditions of electrical shock, reaction of incompatible materials, liberation of toxic substances, and bodily injury due to slips and falls. Without protective clothing, additional hazards to health may arise due to surface residues.

Structural hazards within a confined space such as baffles in horizontal tanks, trays in vertical towers, bends in tunnels, overhead structural members, or scaffolding installed for maintenance constitute physical hazards, which are exacerbated by the physical surroundings. In dealing with structural hazards, workers must review and enforce safety precautions to assure safety.

Abbreviations:
PEL - permissible exposure limit: Average concentration that must not be exceeded during 8-hour work shift of a 40-hour workweek.
STEL - Short-term exposure limit: 15-minute exposure limit that must not be exceeded during the workday.
REL - Recommended exposure limit: Average concentration limit recommended for up to a 10-hour workday during a 40-hour workweek.
IDLH - Immediately dangerous to life or health: Maximum concentration from which person could escape (in event of respiratory failure) without permanent or escape-impairing effects within 30 minutes.

SCBA Storage Box

Required Confined Space Equipment Policy *Example*

Air Testing Equipment
All air-testing equipment should be calibrated in accordance with the manufacturer's instruction.

Oxygen Meters and Monitors
The oxygen content of the air in a confined space is the first and most important constituent to measure before entry is made. The acceptable range of oxygen is between 19.5 and 23.5 percent. This content is measured before flammability is tested because rich mixtures of flammable gases or vapors give erroneous measurement results.

For example, a mixture of 90 percent methane and 10 percent air will test nonflammable because there is not enough oxygen to support the combustion process in the flammability meters. This mixture will not support life and will soon become explosive if ventilation is provided to the space. Before entry, spaces must be ventilated until both oxygen content and flammability are acceptable.

Flammability Meters
Flammability meters are used to measure the amount of flammable vapors or gases in the atmosphere as a percent of the LEL/LFL. The oxygen content must be near 21 percent for results to be meaningful.

Toxic Air Contamination Testers
Tests for toxic contaminants must be specific for the target toxin. The instrument manufacturer should be consulted for interferences. Therefore, it is important to know the history of the confined space so proper tests can be performed. Part of hazard assessment is to identify all possible contaminants that could be in the confined space.

Protective Devices

Fall-Protection Equipment
Fall-protection equipment for confined spaces should be the chest-waist harness type to minimize injuries from uncontrolled movements when it arrests a worker's fall. This type of harness also permits easier retrieval from a confined space than a waist belt. Adjustable lanyards should be used to limit free fall to two feet before arrest.

Respirators
An industrial hygienist should select respirators on the basis of his or her evaluation of possible confined-space hazards. NIOSH-approved respirators should be identified in the approved procedure required by the confined-space entry permit. It is important to note that air-purifying respirators cannot be used in an oxygen deficient atmosphere.

Lockout/Tagout Devices
Lockout/tagout devices permit employees to work safely on de-energized equipment without fear that the devices will be accidentally removed. Lock and tag devices are required to withstand a 50-pound pull without failure.

Devices used to block or restrain stored mechanical energy devices must be engineered for safety.

Safety Barriers
Safety barriers separate workers from hazards that cannot reasonably be eliminated by other engineering controls.

Required barriers will be identified in the approved confined-space entry procedure.

Ground Fault Circuit Interrupters
Ground fault circuit interrupter must be used for all portable electrical tools and equipment in confined spaces because most workers will be in contact with grounded surroundings.

Emergency Response Equipment

Fire Extinguishers
"***Hot work***" inside a confined space requires that an approved fire extinguisher and a person trained in its use be stationed in the confined space or in a suitable vantage point where he or she could effectively suppress any fire that might result from the work.

First Aid Equipment
Blankets, first-aid kit, Stokes stretchers, and any other equipment that may be needed for first-response treatment must be available just outside the confined space. Medical and safety professionals should select equipment on the basis of their evaluations of the potential hazards in the confined space.

Retrieval Equipment
A tripod or another suitable anchorage, hoisting device, harnesses, wristlets, ropes, and any other equipment that may be needed to make a rescue must be identified in the confined-space safe-entry procedures.

It is important that this equipment be available for immediate use. Harnesses and retrieval ropes must be worn by entrants unless they would increase hazards to the entrants or impede their rescue.

Summary
A Confined Space Entry Program Should Include the Following:

- Written confined space entry procedures
- Evaluation to determine whether entry is necessary
- Issuance of a confined space entry permit
- Evaluation of the confined space by a qualified person
- Testing and monitoring the air quality in the confined space to ensure:
- Oxygen level is at least 19.5%
- Flammable range is less than 10% of the LFL (lower flammable limit)
- Training of workers and supervisors in the selection and use of:
    - *safe entry procedures*
    - *respiratory protection*
    - *lifelines and retrieval systems*
    - *protective clothing*
- Training of employees in safe work procedures in and around confined spaces
- Training of employees in confined space rescue procedures
- Conducting safety meetings to discuss confined space safety
- Availability and use of proper ventilation equipment
- Monitoring the air quality while workers are in the confined space.

Recommendation #2: Employers should identify the types of confined spaces within their jurisdiction and develop and implement confined space entry and rescue programs.

Discussion: Employers may be required to enter confined spaces to perform either non-emergency tasks or emergency rescue.

Therefore, employers should identify the types of confined spaces within their jurisdiction and develop and implement confined space entry and rescue programs that include written emergency rescue guidelines and procedures for entering confined spaces. A confined space program, as outlined in NIOSH Publications 80-106 and 87-113, should be implemented. At a minimum, the following should be addressed:

1. Is entry necessary? Can the task be accomplished from the outside? For example, measures that eliminate the need for employees to enter confined spaces should be carefully evaluated and implemented if at all possible before considering human entry into confined spaces to perform non-emergency tasks.

2. If entry is to be made, has the air quality in the confined space been tested for safety based on the following:
    - oxygen supply at least 19.5%
    - flammable range for all explosive gases less than 10% of the lower flammable limit
    - absence of toxic air contaminants?

3. Is ventilation equipment available and/or used?

4. Is appropriate rescue equipment available?

5. Are supervisors being continuously trained in the selection and use of appropriate rescue equipment such as:

- SCBA's
- lifelines
- human hoist systems offering mechanical advantage
- protective clothing
- ventilation systems

6. Are employees being properly trained in confined space entry procedures?

7.Are confined space safe work practices discussed in safety meetings?

8. Are employees trained in confined space rescue procedures?

9. Is the air quality monitored when the ventilation equipment is operating?

The American National Standards Institute (ANSI) Standard Z117.1-1989 (Safety Requirements for Confined Spaces), 3.2 and 3.2.1 state, "***Hazards shall be identified for each confined space. The hazard identification process shall include, ... the past and current uses of the confined space which may adversely affect the atmosphere of the confined space; ... The hazard identification process should consider items such as ... the operation of gasoline engine powered equipment in or around the confined space***."

D-Ring on the rear of the harness is necessary for the entrant to be retrieved from the confined space.

Confined Space Post Quiz

Answers are found in the rear after the OSHA Rule Section
Internet Link to Assignment…
http://www.abctlc.com/downloads/PDF/Confined%20Space%20Ass.pdf

Confined space:

1. A confined space is large enough or so configured that an employee can ________________.

2. A confined space is not designed for ______________________.

3. A permit required confined space (permit space) contains a material that has __________________.

Confined Space Hazards

4. Fatalities and injuries constantly occur among construction workers who are required to enter __________________.

5. ______________ are associated with specific types of equipment and the interactions among them. These hazards can be electrical, thermal, chemical, mechanical, etc.

Typical Examples of Confined Workspaces

6. Confined workspaces in construction contain _____________________.

7. Workers must enter ________________ found on the construction jobsite to perform a number of functions.

8. The ever-present possibility of ______________________ is one of the major problems confronting construction workers while working in vaults.

9. According to the text, a _______________ normally considered a problem associated with confined spaces is material or equipment which may fall into the vault.

10. Manholes are necessary to provide a means of entry into and exit from vaults, tanks, and pits, but these confined spaces may present _________________ which could cause injuries and fatalities.

11. The pipe assembly is one of the ____________________ encountered throughout the construction site,

12. Once inside a pipe assembly, workers are faced with __________________, often caused by purging with argon or another inert gas.

13. ____________ is another problem to which the worker is exposed when inside a pipe assembly.

14. The worker may suffer ______________ caused by heat within the pipe run.

15. Tanks are _____________________ that are used for a variety of purposes, including the storage of water and chemicals.

16. According to the text, oxygen-deficient atmospheres, along with toxic and explosive atmospheres created by the substances stored in the tanks, present hazards to workers.
A. True B. False

17. Heat in tanks may cause ________________, particularly on a hot day.

18. Entry supervisors must coordinate all entry procedures, tests, ___________, equipment, and other activities related to the permit space entry.

19. Before endorsing the permit and allowing entry to begin, the _______________ must check that all appropriate entries have been made on the permit, all tests specified by the permit have been conducted, and that all procedures and equipment specified by the permit are in place.

20. A responsibility of the entry attendant is to know the hazards that may be faced during entry, including information on the mode, signs or symptoms, and consequences of the exposure.
A. True B. False

Revised Hazard Communication Standard Chapter

Section Focus: You will learn the basics of hazard communication. At the end of this section, you the student will be able to understand and describe the revised hazard communication standard. There is a post quiz at the end of this section to review your comprehension and a final examination in the Assignment for your contact hours.

Scope/Background: The revised Hazard Communication Standard (HazCom 2012) requires employers disclose toxic and hazardous substances, to provide employees with unrestricted access to Safety Data Sheets (formerly referred to as Material Safety Data Sheets), and to provide health and safety training so employees understand risks.

In the above photo, this is a Class 1 HazMat suit. Many of us need to wear protective clothing in order to enter or work inside a permit required confined space. Because we utilize chemicals inside confined spaces, we will cover the HAZ COM rule.

The Hazard Communication Standard (HCS) is OSHA's way of ensuring safety to employees who potentially come in contact with hazardous chemicals. Those who manufacture or import chemicals must assess their hazards, as well as create labels and safety data sheets (SDS) that inform their customers of the potential dangers.

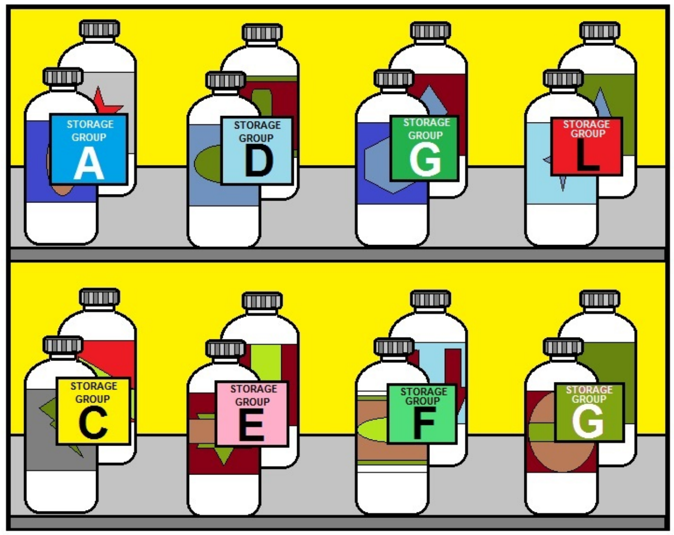
STORAGE GROUPS

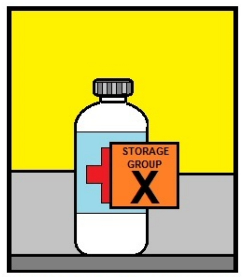
STORE CHEMICALS IN SEPARATE CONTAINMENT CABINETS

A	COMPATIBLE ORGANIC BASES
B	COMPATIBLE PYROPHORIC & WATER REACTIVE MATERIALS
C	COMPATIBLE INORGANIC BASES
D	COMPATIBLE ORGANIC ACIDS
E	COMPATIBLE ORGANIC OXIDIZERS INCLUDING PEROXIDES
F	COMPATIBLE INORGANIC ACIDS NOT INCLUDING OXIDIZERS OR COMBUSTIBLE
G	NOT REACTIVE OR FLAMMABLE OR COMBUSTIBLE
J*	POISON COMPRESSED GAS
K*	COMPATIBLE EXPLOSIVE OR OTHER HIGHLY UNSTABLE MATERIAL
L	NON-REACTIVE FLAMMABLE AND COMBUSTIBLE, INCLUDING SOLVENTS
X*	INCOMPATIBLE WITH ALL OTHER STORAGE GROUPS

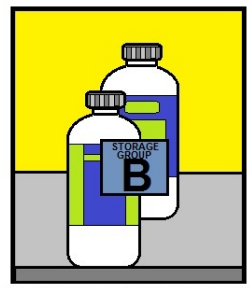
*STORAGE GROUPS J, K AND X: CONSULT SAFETY REPRESENTATIVE FOR SPECIFIC STORAGE REQUIREMENTS

(CHECK MANUFACTURERS SAFETY DATA SHEETS)





STORAGE GROUP X MUST BE SEGREGATED FROM ALL OTHER CHEMICALS



STORAGE GROUP B IS NOT COMPATIBLE WITH ANY OTHER STORAGE GROUPS

HOW TO SAFETY STORE SPECIFIC CHEMICALS

Hazard Communication Introduction

"Exposure to hazardous chemicals is one of the most serious threats facing American workers today," said U.S. Secretary of Labor Hilda Solis. "Revising OSHA's Hazard Communication standard will improve the quality and consistency of hazard information, making it safer for workers to do their jobs and easier for employers to stay competitive." The Hazard Communication Standard (HCS) is now aligned with the Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labeling of Chemicals (GHS).

This update to the Hazard Communication Standard (HCS) will provide a common and coherent approach to classifying chemicals and communicating hazard information on labels and safety data sheets. Once implemented, the revised standard will improve the quality and consistency of hazard information in the workplace, making it safer for workers by providing easily understandable information on appropriate handling and safe use of hazardous chemicals. This update will also help reduce trade barriers and result in productivity improvements for American businesses that regularly handle, store, and use hazardous chemicals while providing cost savings for American businesses that periodically update safety data sheets and labels for chemicals covered under the hazard communication standard.

Rationale
In order to ensure chemical safety in the workplace, information about the identities and hazards of the chemicals must be available and understandable to workers. OSHA's Hazard Communication Standard (HCS) requires the development and dissemination of such information:

- Chemical manufacturers and importers are required to evaluate the hazards of the chemicals they produce or import, and prepare labels and safety data sheets to convey the hazard information to their downstream customers;
- All employers with hazardous chemicals in their workplaces must have labels and safety data sheets for their exposed workers, and train them to handle the chemicals appropriately.

Major changes to the Hazard Communication Standard

Hazard classification: Provides specific criteria for classification of health and physical hazards, as well as classification of mixtures.

Labels: Chemical manufacturers and importers will be required to provide a label that includes a harmonized signal word, pictogram, and hazard statement for each hazard class and category. Precautionary statements must also be provided.

Safety Data Sheets: Will now have a specified 16-section format.

Information and training: Employers are required to train workers by December 1, 2013 on the new labels elements and safety data sheets format to facilitate recognition and understanding.

Container means any bag, barrel, bottle, box, can, cylinder, drum, reaction vessel, storage tank, or the like that contains a hazardous chemical. For purposes of this section, pipes or piping systems, and engines, fuel tanks, or other operating systems in a vehicle, are not considered to be containers.

All of this text is credited to OSHA.

What is the Globally Harmonized System?

The Globally Harmonized System (GHS) is an international approach to hazard communication, providing agreed criteria for classification of chemical hazards, and a standardized approach to label elements and safety data sheets. The GHS was negotiated in a multi-year process by hazard communication experts from many different countries, international organizations, and stakeholder groups. It is based on major existing systems around the world, including OSHA's Hazard Communication Standard and the chemical classification and labeling systems of other US agencies.

The result of this negotiation process is the United Nations' document entitled "Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labeling of Chemicals," commonly referred to as The Purple Book. This document provides harmonized classification criteria for health, physical, and environmental hazards of chemicals. It also includes standardized label elements that are assigned to these hazard classes and categories, and provide the appropriate signal words, pictograms, and hazard and precautionary statements to convey the hazards to users. A standardized order of information for safety data sheets is also provided. These recommendations can be used by regulatory authorities such as OSHA to establish mandatory requirements for hazard communication, but do not constitute a model regulation.

Why did OSHA decide to modify the Hazard Communication Standard to adopt the GHS?

OSHA has modified the Hazard Communication Standard (HCS) to adopt the GHS to improve safety and health of workers through more effective communications on chemical hazards. Since it was first promulgated in 1983, the HCS has provided employers and employees extensive information about the chemicals in their workplaces.

The original standard is performance-oriented, allowing chemical manufacturers and importers to convey information on labels and material safety data sheets in whatever format they choose. While the available information has been helpful in improving employee safety and health, a more standardized approach to classifying the hazards and conveying the information will be more effective, and provide further improvements in American workplaces. The GHS provides such a standardized approach, including detailed criteria for determining what hazardous effects a chemical poses, as well as standardized label elements assigned by hazard class and category.

This will enhance both employer and worker comprehension of the hazards, which will help to ensure appropriate handling and safe use of workplace chemicals. In addition, the safety data sheet requirements establish an order of information that is standardized. The harmonized format of the safety data sheets will enable employers, workers, health professionals, and emergency responders to access the information more efficiently and effectively, thus increasing their utility.

Adoption of the GHS in the US and around the world will also help to improve information received from other countries—since the US is both a major importer and exporter of chemicals, American workers often see labels and safety data sheets from other countries. The diverse and sometimes conflicting national and international requirements can create confusion among those who seek to use hazard information effectively.

For example, labels and safety data sheets may include symbols and hazard statements that are unfamiliar to readers or not well understood. Containers may be labeled with such a large volume of information that important statements are not easily recognized. Given the differences in hazard classification criteria, labels may also be incorrect when used in other countries. If countries around the world adopt the GHS, these problems will be minimized, and chemicals crossing borders will have consistent information, thus improving communication globally.

Exposure or exposed means that an employee is subjected in the course of employment to a chemical that is a physical or health hazard, and includes potential (e.g. accidental or possible) exposure. "Subjected" in terms of health hazards includes any route of entry (e.g. inhalation, ingestion, skin contact or absorption.)

What is the phase-in period in the revised Hazard Communication Standard?
The table below summarizes the phase-in dates required under the revised Hazard Communication Standard (HCS):

Effective Completion Date	Requirement(s)	Who
December 1, 2013	Train employees on the new label elements and safety data sheet (SDS) format.	Employers
June 1, 2015* December 1, 2015	Compliance with all modified provisions of this final rule, except: The Distributor shall not ship containers labeled by the chemical manufacturer or importer unless it is a GHS label	Chemical manufacturers, importers, distributors and employers
June 1, 2016	Update alternative workplace labeling and hazard communication program as necessary, and provide additional employee training for newly identified physical or health hazards.	Employers
Transition Period to the effective completion dates noted above	May comply with either 29 CFR 1910.1200 (the final standard), or the current standard, or both	Chemical manufacturers, importers, distributors, and employers

*This date coincides with the EU implementation date for classification of mixtures.

During the phase-in period, employers would be required to be in compliance with either the existing HCS or the revised HCS, or both. OSHA recognizes that hazard communication programs will go through a period of time where labels and SDSs under both standards will be present in the workplace. This will be considered acceptable, and employers are not required to maintain two sets of labels and SDSs for compliance purposes.

Why must training be conducted prior to the compliance effective date?
OSHA is requiring that employees are trained on the new label elements (e.g., pictograms and signal words) and SDS format by December 2013, while full compliance with the final rule will begin in 2015.

While many countries are in various stages of implementing the GHS, OSHA believes that it is possible that American workplaces may begin to receive labels and SDSs that are consistent with the GHS shortly after publication. Thus, making it important to ensure that when employees begin to see the new labels and SDSs in their workplaces, they will be familiar with them, understand how to use them, and access the information effectively.

What are the major changes to the Hazard Communication Standard?
The three major areas of change are in hazard classification, labels, and safety data sheets.

Hazard classification: The definitions of hazard have been changed to provide specific criteria for classification of health and physical hazards, as well as classification of mixtures. These specific criteria will help to ensure that evaluations of hazardous effects are consistent across manufacturers, and that labels and safety data sheets are more accurate as a result.

Labels: Chemical manufacturers and importers will be required to provide a label that includes a harmonized signal word, pictogram, and hazard statement for each hazard class and category. Precautionary statements must also be provided.

Safety Data Sheets: Will now have a specified 16-section format.
The GHS does not include harmonized training provisions, but recognizes that training is essential to an effective hazard communication approach. The revised Hazard Communication Standard (HCS) requires that workers be re- trained within two years of the publication of the final rule to facilitate recognition and understanding of the new labels and safety data sheets.

For a side-by-side comparison of the current HCS and the final revised HCS please see OSHA's hazard communication safety and health topics webpage at: http://www.osha.gov/dsg/hazcom/index.html

What Hazard Communication Standard provisions are unchanged in the revised HCS?
The revised Hazard Communication Standard (HCS) is a modification to the existing standard. The parts of the standard that did not relate to the GHS (such as the basic framework, scope, and exemptions) remained largely unchanged. There have been some modifications to terminology in order to align the revised HCS with language used in the GHS.

For example, the term "hazard determination" has been changed to "hazard classification" and "material safety data sheet" was changed to "safety data sheet." OSHA stakeholders commented on this approach and found it to be appropriate.

How will chemical hazard evaluation change under the revised Hazard Communication Standard?
Under both the current Hazard Communication Standard (HCS) and the revised HCS, an evaluation of chemical hazards must be performed considering the available scientific evidence concerning such hazards. Under the current HCS, the hazard determination provisions have definitions of hazard and the evaluator determines whether or not the data on a chemical meet those definitions. It is a performance-oriented approach that provides parameters for the evaluation, but not specific, detailed criteria.

The hazard classification approach in the revised HCS is quite different. The revised HCS has specific criteria for each health and physical hazard, along with detailed instructions for hazard evaluation and determinations as to whether mixtures or substances are covered. It also establishes both hazard classes and hazard categories—for most of the effects; the classes are divided into categories that reflect the relative severity of the effect.

All of this text is credited to OSHA.

United Nations Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labeling of Chemicals (GHS)

1.0 Background

The purpose of this document is to describe the United Nations Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labeling of Chemicals (GHS), why it was developed, and how it relates to the sound management of chemicals.

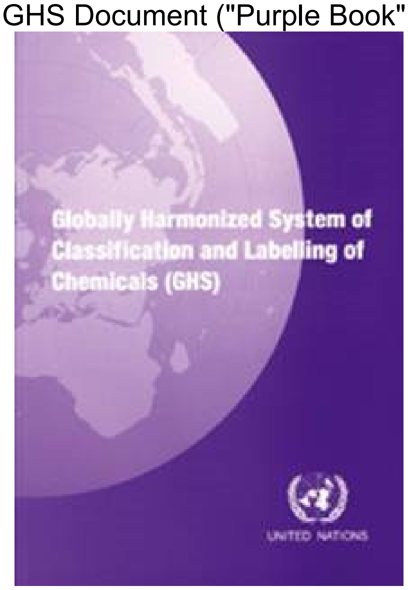
1.1 What is the GHS?

The GHS is an acronym for The Globally Harmonized System of Classification and Labeling of Chemicals. The GHS is a system for standardizing and harmonizing the classification and labeling of chemicals. It is a logical and comprehensive approach to:

Defining health, physical and environmental hazards of chemicals;

Creating classification processes that use available data on chemicals for comparison with the defined hazard criteria; and Communicating hazard information, as well as protective measures, on labels and Safety Data Sheets (SDS).

Figure 1.1
GHS Document ("Purple Book")



Many countries already have regulatory systems in place for these types of requirements. These systems may be similar in content and approach, but their differences are significant enough to require multiple classifications, labels and safety data sheets for the same product when marketed in different countries or even in the same country when parts of the life cycle are covered by different regulatory authorities. This leads to inconsistent protection for those potentially exposed to the chemicals, as well as creating extensive regulatory burdens on companies producing chemicals.

For example, in the United States (U.S.) there are requirements for classification and labeling of chemicals for the Consumer Product Safety Commission, the Department of Transportation, the Environmental Protection Agency, and the Occupational Safety and Health Administration.

The GHS itself is not a regulation or a standard. The GHS Document (referred to as "The Purple Book", shown in Figure 1.1) establishes agreed hazard classification and communication provisions with explanatory information on how to apply the system. The elements in the GHS supply a mechanism to meet the basic requirement of any hazard communication system, which is to decide if the chemical product produced and/or supplied is hazardous and to prepare a label and/or Safety Data Sheet as appropriate. Regulatory authorities in countries adopting the GHS will thus take the agreed criteria and provisions, and implement them through their own regulatory process and procedures rather than simply incorporating the text of the GHS into their national requirements.

The GHS Document thus provides countries with the regulatory building blocks to develop or modify existing national programs that address classification of hazards and transmittal of information about those hazards and associated protective measures. This helps to ensure the safe use of chemicals as they move through the product life cycle from "cradle to grave."

1.2 Why was the GHS developed?

The production and use of chemicals is fundamental to all economies. The global chemical business is more than a $1.7 trillion per year enterprise. In the U.S., chemicals are more than a $450 billion business and exports are greater than $80 billion per year.

Chemicals directly or indirectly affect our lives and are essential to our food, our health, and our lifestyle. The widespread use of chemicals has resulted in the development of sector-specific regulations (transport, production, workplace, agriculture, trade, and consumer products).

Having readily available information on the hazardous properties of chemicals, and recommended control measures, allows the production, transport, use and disposal of chemicals to be managed safely. Thus, human health and the environment are protected.

The sound management of chemicals should include systems through which chemical hazards are identified and communicated to all who are potentially exposed. These groups include workers, consumers, emergency responders and the public. It is important to know what chemicals are present and/or used, their hazards to human health and the environment, and the means to control them.

A number of classification and labeling systems, each addressing specific use patterns and groups of chemicals, exist at the national, regional and international levels. The existing hazard classification and labeling systems address potential exposure to chemicals in all the types of use settings listed above.

Acute oral toxicity LD50 (mg/kg)					
Organization/Country/ Regulation or Standard	High		Hazard		Low
	0		< 50	< 500	< 5000 ....
ANSI/US/A 129.1	< 50 Highly Toxic		> 50 < 500 Toxic	> 500 < 2000 Harmful	
OSHA/US/HCS	< 50 Highly Toxic		> 50 < 500 Toxic		
EPA/US/FIFRA	0 ≤ 50 Toxicity Category I		> 50 ≤ 500 Toxicity Category II	> 500 < 5000 Toxic Category III	> 5000 Toxicity Category IV
CPSC/US/FHSA	< 50 Highly Toxic		> 50 ≤ 500 Toxic		
GHS	≤ 5	> 5 ≤ 50	> 50 ≤ 300	> 300 ≤ 2000	> 2000 ≤ 5000
DOT/US	< 5 Picking Group 1	> 5 < 50 Picking Group II	> 50 < 200 (solid) > 50 > 500 (liquid) Picking Group III		
NFPA/US	≤ 5 Hazard Category 4	> 5 ≤ 50 Hazard Category 3	> 50 ≤ 500 Hazard Category 2	> 500 ≤ 2000 Hazard Category 1	> 2000 Hazard Category 0
NPCA/US/HMIS	≤ 1 Toxicity Rating 4	> 1 ≤ 50 Toxicity Rating 3	> 50 ≤ 500 Toxicity Rating 2	> 500 ≤ 5000 Toxicity Rating 1	> 5000 Toxicity Rating 0
EU	< 25 Very Toxic	> 25 > 200 Toxic	> 200 < 2000 Harmful		
WHMIS/Canada	≤ 50 Very Toxic WHMIS Class D, Division 1, Subdivision A		> 50 ≤ 500 Toxic WHMIS Class D, Division 1, Subdivision B		
Australia/NOHSC	< 25 Very Toxic	> 25 < 200 Toxic	> 200 < 2000 Harmful		
Mexico	<1 Extremely Toxic	>20 < 50 Highly Toxic	> 50 < 500 Moderately Toxic	> 500 < 5000 Mildly Toxic	
Malaysia	< 25 Very Toxic		200 to 500 Harmful		

Japan	< 30 Poisonous		300 to 3000 Powerful	
Korea	< 25 Very Toxic	> 50 < 200 Toxic	> 200 < 2000 Harmful	

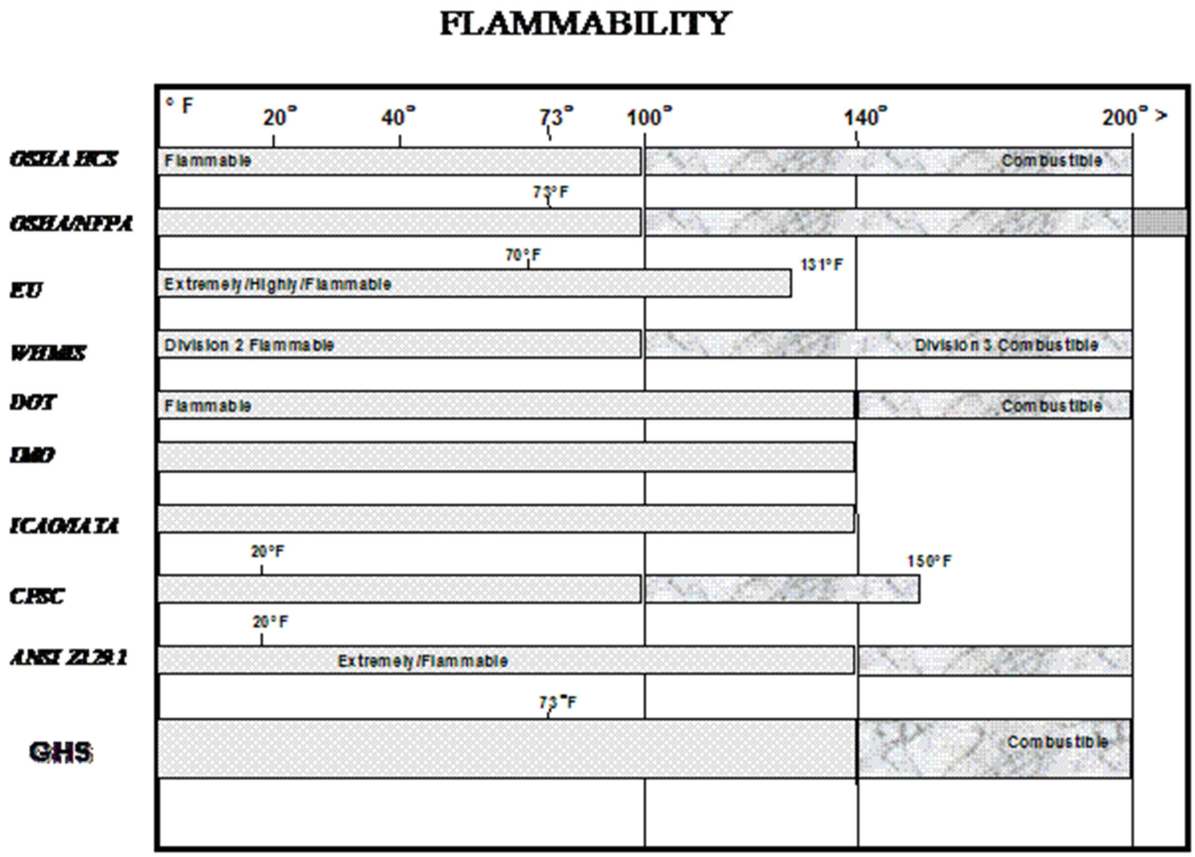
Figure 1.2
The numerical values on the hazard index scale in the table are not to scale.

For example, a product may be considered flammable or toxic by one agency or country, but not by another.

We can see by comparing a few hazards how complex it is to comply with all domestic and global regulations. Acute oral toxicity (LD50) is a good example (Figure 1.2). Although most existing systems cover acute toxicity, we can see in the figure that what is considered hazardous varies considerably. These differences allow the same product to be hazardous in one country/system and not in another. At the very least, the same product has different labels and SDSs.

While the existing laws and regulations are similar, they are different enough to require multiple labels for the same product both within the U.S. and in international trade and to require multiple safety data sheets for the same product in international trade. Several U.S. regulatory agencies and various countries have different requirements for hazard definitions as well as for information to be included on labels or material safety data sheets.

Figure 1.3



The numerical values on the hazard index scale in the table are not to scale.

Text Version of Chart:

Title: FLAMMABILITY
Type: Bar line graph by Fahrenheit degree from 0 degrees to 200 degrees with ten chart segments.

Chart data:
OSHA HCS
Flammable = 0-100 Degrees
Combustible = 100-200 degrees
OSHA/NFPA
Flammable = 0-100 Degrees
Combustible = 100-200+ degrees
EU
Extremely/Highly/Flammable = 0-131 Degrees
WHMIS
Division 2 Flammable = 0-100 Degrees
Division 3 Combustible = 100-200 degrees
DOT
Flammable = 0-140 Degrees
Combustible = 140-200 degrees
IMO

Flammable = 0-140 Degrees
ICAO/IATA
Flammable = 0-140 Degrees
CPSC
Flammable = 0-100 Degrees
Combustible = 100-150 degrees
ANSI Z129.1
Extremely Flammable = 0-140 Degrees
Combustible = 140-200 degrees
GHS
Flammable = 0-140 Degrees
Combustible = 140-200 degrees

Flammable liquid is another hazard that is covered by most existing systems. As shown in Figure 1.3, the coverage varies between existing systems within the U.S. and globally. This means that the same product can be non-hazardous or hazardous with different labels/SDSs. In Section 4, Figures 4.1 through 4.7 show the diverse domestic and international labels for a fictitious product (ToxiFlam) which has both oral toxicity and flammability hazards.

These differences in hazards and SDS/labels impact both protection and trade. In the area of protection, users may see different label warnings or safety data sheet information for the same chemical. In the area of trade, the need to comply with multiple regulations regarding hazard classification and labeling is costly and time-consuming. Some multinational companies have estimated that there are over 100 diverse hazard communication regulations for their products globally. For small and medium size enterprises (SMEs) regulatory compliance is complex and costly, and it can act as a barrier to international trade in chemicals.

1.3 What was the International Mandate?

Figure 1.4

International mandate from UNCED Agenda 21, Chapter 19

"A globally harmonized hazard classification and compatible labeling system, including material safety data sheets and easily understandable symbols, should be available, if feasible, by the year 2000."

The single most important force that drove the creation of the GHS was the international mandate (Figure 1.4) adopted in the 1992 United Nations Conference on Environment and Development (UNCED), often called the "Earth Summit".

1.4 How was the GHS developed?

In conjunction with its Convention and Recommendation on Safety in the Use of Chemicals at Work, the International Labor Organization (ILO) studied the tasks required to achieve harmonization. The ILO concluded that there were four major existing systems that needed to be harmonized to achieve a global approach.

No international organization covers all aspects of chemical classification and labeling. A broad scope and extensive expertise and resources were required to develop a system. In order to proceed, several decisions were needed:

(a) what systems would be considered "major" and thus the basis for harmonization, and (b) how could the work be divided to get the best expertise for different aspects. Four existing systems (Figure #1.5) were deemed to be major and the primary basis for the GHS. While not considered major, requirements of other systems were examined as appropriate, and taken into account as proposals were developed.

Figure 1.5
Existing Systems Included in the Harmonization Process

UN Transport Recommendations
U.S. Requirements for Workplace, Consumer and Pesticides
European Union Dangerous Substance and Preparations Directives
Canadian Requirements for Workplace, Consumers and Pesticides

A Coordinating Group for the Harmonization of Chemical Classification Systems (CG/HCCS) was created under the Inter-Organization Program for the Sound Management of Chemicals (IOMC) and they were charged with coordinating and managing development of the system.

The GC/HCCS worked on a consensus basis and included representatives from major stakeholders, including national governments, industry and workers. They created a set of guiding principles (Figure 1.6). The scope and guiding principles created a common framework for the organizations that were charged with developing the different elements of the system.

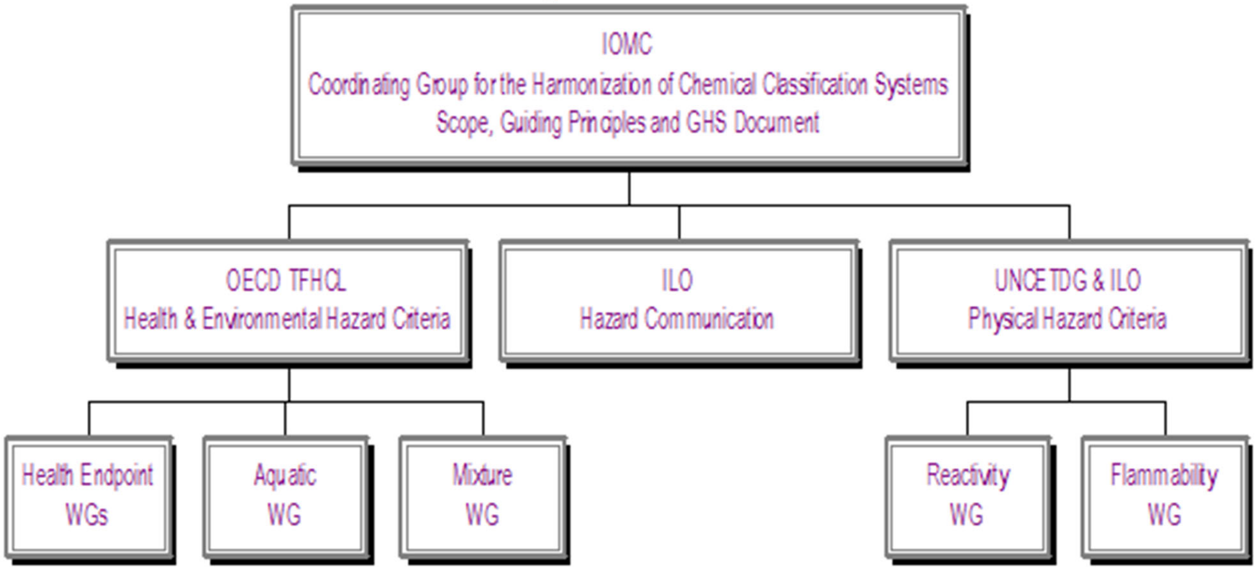
Figure 1.6
Key Guiding Principles of the Harmonization Process

- ✓ Protection will not be reduced
- ✓ Will be based on intrinsic properties (hazards) of chemicals
- ✓ All types of chemicals will be covered
- ✓ All systems will have to be changed
- ✓ Involvement of all stakeholders should be ensured
- ✓ Comprehensibility must be addressed

In order to get the best expertise and resources, the work was divided among three technical focal points. Figure 1.7 shows how the work was assigned to the three technical focal points and the overall responsibilities of the Coordinating Group itself.

The UN Committee of Experts on Transport of Dangerous Goods was selected as the lead for work on physical hazards, in cooperation with the ILO. Based on their work in the testing guidelines and other chemical issues, the Organization for Economic Cooperation and Development (OECD) was selected for health/environmental hazards and mixtures. ILO has a long history in MSDS/labels, and was selected to be the lead in hazard communication. The OECD and ILO groups also included representatives from governments, industry and workers.

Figure 1.7



Text Version of Flowchart:

IOMC
Coordinating Group for the Harmonization of Chemical Classification Systems
Scope, Guiding Principles and GHS Document

OECD TFHCL Health & Environmental Hazard Criteria	ILO Hazard Communication	UNCE TDG & ILO Physical Hazard Criteria

Health Endpoint WGs	Aquatic WGs	Mixture WGs	Reactivity WGs	Flammability WGs

1.5 How will the GHS be maintained and updated?
In October 1999, the United Nations Economic and Social Council decided (resolution 1999/65) to enlarge the mandate of the Committee of Experts on the Transport of Dangerous Goods by reconfiguring it into a Committee of Experts on the Transport of Dangerous Goods and on the Globally Harmonized System of Classification and labeling of Chemicals (UNCETDG/GHS). At the same time, a new Sub-Committee of Experts on the Globally Harmonized System of Classification and labeling of Chemicals (GHS Sub-Committee) was also created.

When the IOMC completed developing the GHS, the system was presented to the UN GHS Sub-Committee, which formally adopted the system at its first session in December 2002. It was subsequently endorsed by the UNCETDG/GHS. The UN Economic and Social Council endorsed the GHS in July 2003.

The Sub-Committee of Experts on the Globally Harmonized System of Classification will:

- ✓ Act as custodian of the system, managing and giving direction to the harmonization process,
- ✓ Keep the system up-to-date, as necessary, considering the need to introduce changes or updates to ensure its continued relevance,
- ✓ Promote understanding and use of the system and encourage feedback,
- ✓ Make the system available for worldwide use,
- ✓ Make guidance available on the application of the system, and on the interpretation and use of technical criteria to support consistency of application,
- ✓ Prepare work programs and submit recommendations to the UNCETDG/GHS.

1.6 When will the GHS be implemented?
There is no international implementation schedule for the GHS. It is likely that different national systems/sectors will require different timeframes for GHS implementation. Existing systems will need to consider phase-in strategies for transition from their current requirements to the new GHS requirements.

Several international bodies have proposed implementation goals. The World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD) and the Intergovernmental Forum for Chemical Safety (IFCS) have encouraged countries to implement the new GHS as soon as possible with a view to having the system fully operational by 2008.

The Ministers of the Asia-Pacific Economic Cooperation (APEC) have also said that as many APEC economies as possible should implement, on a voluntary basis, the GHS by 2006. Under the North American Free Trade Agreement (NAFTA), the Tri-national Occupational Safety and Health Group and the NAFTA Pesticides Technical Working Group are discussing the GHS.

Some of the major existing systems have begun discussions about GHS implementation and situational analyses comparing existing requirements to GHS requirements. Some countries are considering harmonization to the greatest extent possible between their national sectors.

1.7 What are the benefits?
The basic goal of hazard communication is to ensure that employers, employees and the public are provided with adequate, practical, reliable and comprehensible information on the hazards of chemicals, so that they can take effective preventive and protective measure for their health and safety. Thus, implementation of effective hazard communication provides benefits for governments, companies, workers, and members of the public.

The GHS has maximum value if it is accepted in all major regulatory systems for chemical hazard communication. The diversity of hazard definitions is shown in Figures 1.2 and 1.3. The array of domestic and global labels for one product is shown in Figures 4.1 to 4.7. In the USA implementation of the GHS would harmonize hazard definitions and label information among U.S. regulatory agencies (CPSC, DOT, EPA, OSHA, etc.). If the GHS is implemented globally, consistent information will be communicated on labels and SDSs.

It is anticipated that application of the GHS will:
- ✓ Enhance the protection of human health and the environment by providing an internationally comprehensible system,
- ✓ Provide a recognized framework to develop regulations for those countries without existing systems,
- ✓ Facilitate international trade in chemicals whose hazards have been identified on an international basis,
- ✓ Reduce the need for testing and evaluation against multiple classification systems.

The tangible benefits to governments are:
- ✓ Fewer chemical accidents and incidents,
- ✓ Lower health care costs,
- ✓ Improved protection of workers and the public from chemical hazards,
- ✓ Avoiding duplication of effort in creating national systems,
- ✓ Reduction in the costs of enforcement,
- ✓ Improved reputation on chemical issues, both domestically and internationally.

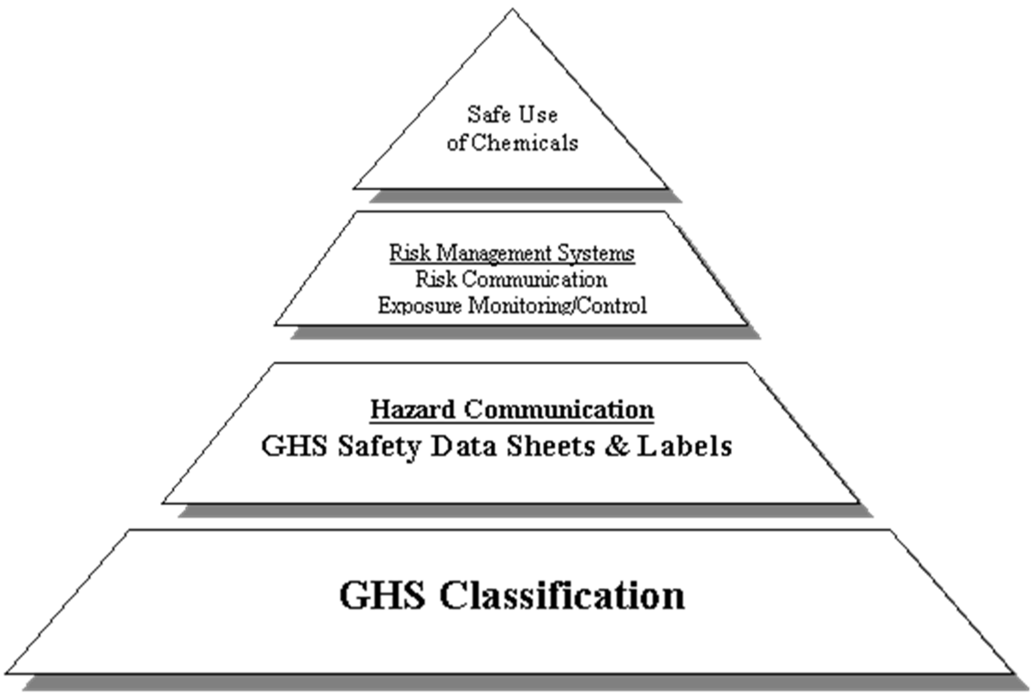
Benefits to companies include:
- ✓ A safer work environment and improved relations with employees,
- ✓ An increase in efficiency and reduced costs from compliance with hazard communication regulations,
- ✓ Application of expert systems resulting in maximizing expert resources and minimizing labor and costs,
- ✓ Facilitation of electronic transmission systems with international scope,
- ✓ Expanded use of training programs on health and safety,
- ✓ Reduced costs due to fewer accidents and illnesses,
- ✓ Improved corporate image and credibility.

Benefits to workers and members of the public include:
- ✓ Improved safety for workers and others through consistent and simplified communications on chemical hazards and practices to follow for safe handling and use,
- ✓ Greater awareness of hazards, resulting in safer use of chemicals in the workplace and in the home.

2.0 How is the GHS to be applied?
The GHS Classification and Communication elements are the foundation of programs to ensure the safe use of chemicals, as shown in Figure 2.1. The first two steps in any program to ensure the safe use of chemicals are to identify intrinsic hazard(s) (i.e., classification) and then to communicate that information. The design of the GHS communication elements reflect the different needs of various target audiences, such as workers and consumers.

To proceed further up the pyramid, some existing national programs also include risk management systems as part of an overall program on the sound management of chemicals. The general goal of these systems is to minimize exposure, resulting in reduced risk. The systems vary in focus and include activities such as establishing exposure limits, recommending exposure monitoring methods and creating engineering controls. However, the target audiences of such systems are generally limited to workplace settings. With or without formal risk management systems, the GHS is designed to promote the safe use of chemicals.

Figure 2.1



2.1 Are all chemicals covered by the GHS?
The GHS covers all hazardous chemicals. There are no complete exemptions from the scope of the GHS for a particular type of chemical or product. The term "chemical" is used broadly to include substances, products, mixtures, preparations, or any other terms that may be used by existing systems. The goal of the GHS is to identify the intrinsic hazards of chemical substances and mixtures and to convey hazard information about these hazards. The GHS is not intended to harmonize risk assessment procedures or risk management decisions, as described above.

"Articles" as defined in the OSHA Hazard Communication Standard (HCS) (29 CFR 1910.1200), or by similar definitions, are outside the scope of the GHS. Chemical inventory (e.g., TSCA, EINECS, etc.) and chemical control requirements in various countries are not harmonized by the GHS. Classification in the GHS is criteria-based, not limiting coverage to a list that can become outdated. It is not anticipated that the GHS will develop or maintain an international classification authority or international classification list. Several countries currently maintain regulatory lists. GHS classification criteria can be used to reclassify chemicals on lists, if desired. Existing lists, such as those provide by organizations that evaluate cancer hazards, could be used in conjunction with the GHS to promote harmonization.

The harmonization of classification and labeling of chemicals was one of six program areas that were endorsed by the United Nations General Assembly to strengthen international efforts concerning the environmentally sound management of chemicals. It was recognized that an internationally harmonized approach to classification and labeling would provide the foundation for all countries to develop comprehensive national programs to ensure the safe use of chemicals.

2.2 Will all hazardous chemicals require a GHS label and Safety Data Sheet?

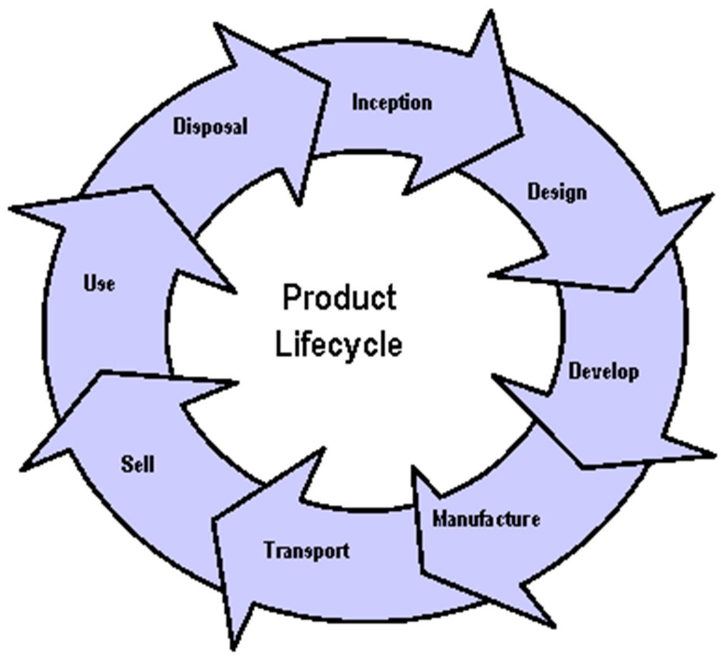


Figure 2.2

The need for GHS labels and/or Safety Data Sheets is expected to vary by product category or stage in the chemical's lifecycle from research/production to end use. The sequence of lifecycle events is shown in Figure 2.2. For example, pharmaceuticals, food additives, cosmetics and pesticide residues in food will not be covered by the GHS at the point of consumption, but will be covered where workers may be exposed (workplaces), and in transport. Also, the medical use of human or veterinary pharmaceuticals is generally addressed in package inserts and is not part of existing hazard communication systems. Similarly, foods are generally not labeled under existing hazard communication systems. The exact requirements for labels and Safety Data Sheets will continue to be defined in national regulations. However, national requirements are expected to be consistent with the detailed discussion of scope provided in Chapter 1.1 of the GHS document.

2.3 How will the GHS impact existing regulations?

The GHS is a voluntary international system that imposes no binding treaty obligations on countries. To the extent that countries adopt the GHS into their systems, the regulatory changes would be binding for covered industries. For countries with existing systems, it is expected that the GHS components will be applied within the framework/infrastructure of existing hazard communication regulatory schemes. For example, exceptions and exemptions found in existing regulations would not be expected to change (e.g., transportation of limited quantities).

However, the specific hazard criteria, classification processes, label elements and SDS requirements within an existing regulation will need to be modified to be consistent with the harmonized elements of the GHS.

It is anticipated that ALL existing hazard communication systems will need to be changed in order to apply the GHS. For example, in the U.S. EPA and OSHA would be expected to require hazard pictograms/symbols on labels. Canada and the EU would be expected to adopt the GHS pictograms/symbols instead of those currently in use. The transport sector is expected to adopt the changed criteria (LD50/LC50) for the GHS Acute Toxicity Categories 1 - 3. OSHA HCS, WHMIS and the EU would all need to change their acute toxicity criteria.

Test data already generated for the classification of chemicals under existing systems should be accepted when classifying these chemicals under the GHS, thereby avoiding duplicative testing and the unnecessary use of test animals.

2.4 What is meant by GHS Building Blocks?

The GHS classification and communication requirements can be thought of as a collection of building blocks. In regulatory schemes, coverage and communication of hazards vary by the needs of target audiences/sectors. Accordingly, the GHS was designed to contain the hazard endpoints and communication tools necessary for application to known regulatory schemes. The GHS is structured so that the appropriate elements for classification and communication, which address the target audiences, can be selected.

The full range of harmonized elements is available to everyone, and should be used if a country or organization chooses to cover a certain effect when it adopts the GHS. The full range of these elements does not have to be adopted. Countries can determine which of the building blocks will be applied in different parts of their systems (consumer, workplace, transport, pesticides, etc.). For example, some options for implementing the GHS include:

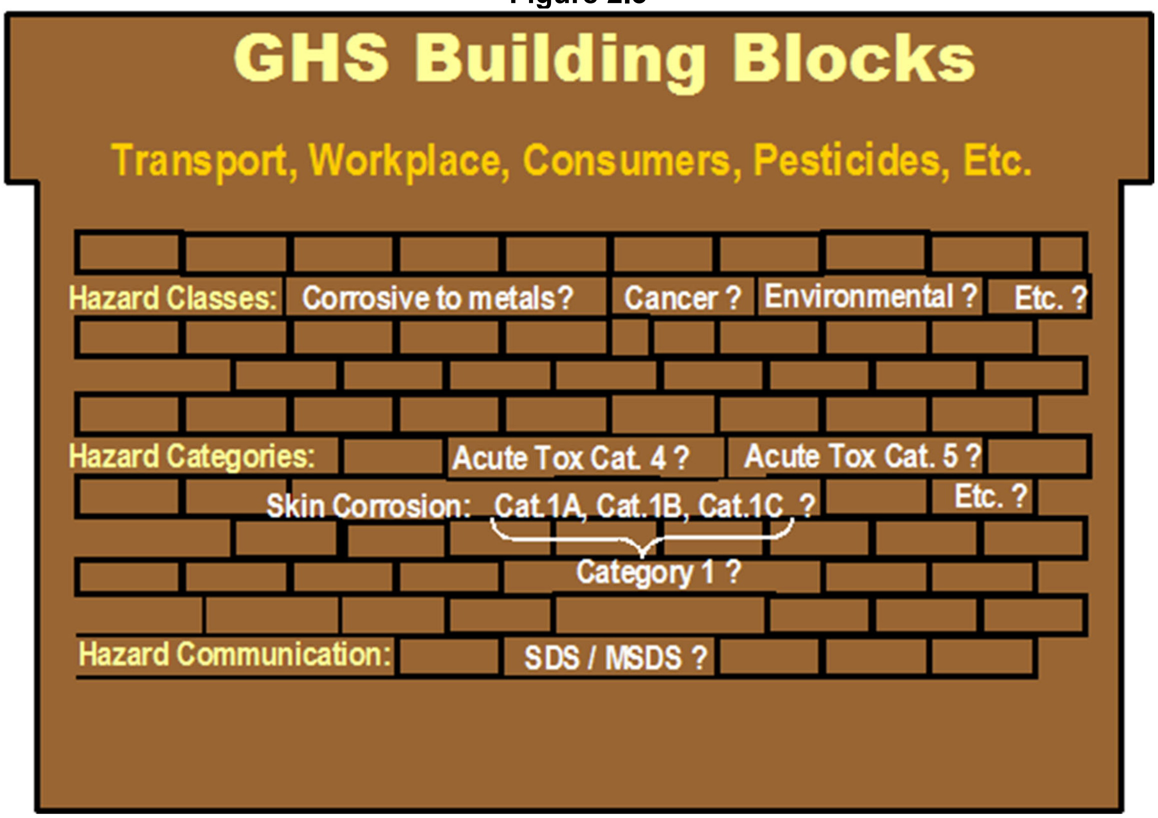
- ✓ Not using a GHS class (e.g., cancer, hazardous to the aquatic environment, etc.);
- ✓ Not using a GHS category (normally at the beginning or end of a class, e.g., Acute Toxicity Cat. 5);
- ✓ Combining categories (e.g., Acute Toxicity Cat.# 1 and Cat.# 2; Skin Corrosion Cat.1A, 1B and 1C).

2.5 How should the GHS Building Blocks by applied?

Appropriate implementation of the GHS means that the hazards covered by a Competent Authority (CA) are covered consistently with the GHS criteria and requirements. The EPA, Health Canada and OSHA are examples of Competent Authorities. Competent Authorities will decide how to apply the various elements of the GHS based on the CA needs and the needs of target audiences.

When a regulatory scheme covers something that is in the GHS, and implements the GHS, that coverage should be consistent. Once an endpoint and subclasses are selected, as needed, the GHS classification criteria, assigned label elements and SDS provisions should be followed as specified in the GHS. If a regulatory system covers carcinogenicity, for example, it should follow the harmonized classification scheme, the harmonized label elements and, where appropriate, the SDS. Figure 2.3 shows some of the hazard endpoint/subcategory and hazard communication building block choices for the transport, workplace, consumer and pesticide sectors.

Figure 2.3



To gain a better understanding of the building block approach, it is helpful to look at the specific sectors/target audiences. The needs and regulations of the various sectors vary depending on the type of chemical and use pattern. Different target audiences or sectors receive and use hazard information in different ways.

The primary sectors/target audiences are transport, workplace, consumers and agriculture (pesticides). These sectors are described in more detail below.

2.5.1 Transport

For transport, it is expected that application of the GHS will be similar to application of current transport requirements.

GHS physical, acute and environmental hazard criteria are expected to be adopted in the transport sector.

Containers of dangerous goods will have pictograms that address acute toxicity, physical hazards, and environmental hazards.

GHS hazard communication elements such as signal words, hazard statements and SDS are not expected to be adopted in the transport sector.

2.5.2 Workplace

In the workplace, it is expected that most of the GHS elements will be adopted, including; ·

- ✓ GHS physical and health hazard criteria, as appropriate;
- ✓ Labels that have the harmonized core information under the GHS (signal words, hazard statements and symbols, etc.);
- ✓ Safety Data Sheets;
- ✓ Employee training to help ensure effective communication is also anticipated;
- ✓ All workplace systems may not have the jurisdiction to adopt environmental hazards.

2.5.3 Consumer

For the consumer sector, it is expected that labels will be the primary focus of GHS application.

The appropriate GHS hazard criteria are expected to be adopted;

These labels will include the core elements of the GHS (signal words, hazard statements and symbols, etc.), subject to some sector-specific considerations in certain systems (e.g., risk-based labeling).

2.5.4 Pesticides

For pesticides, it is expected that the GHS will be adopted.

The appropriate GHS hazard criteria are expected to be adopted;

Pesticide labels will include the core elements of the GHS (signal words, hazard statements and symbols, etc.), subject to some sector-specific considerations in certain systems.

2.6 How will the GHS impact countries without existing regulations?

Developing and maintaining a classification and labeling system is not a simple task. The GHS can be used as a tool for developing national regulations. It is expected that countries that do not have systems will adopt GHS as their basic scheme. The GHS provides the building blocks from which countries can construct chemical safety programs. Although the GHS will facilitate the process, many challenges exist in creating new regulations.

For example:
What is the appropriate legal framework for adopting/implementing the GHS?

What government agencies should be involved? Are there ministries/agencies ready to implement and maintain the GHS?

How will stakeholder cooperation and support for implementing the GHS be managed?
Work has begun in international organizations (e.g., UNITAR and ILO) under the guidance of the UN GHS Sub-Committee, to develop technical assistance for developing countries to write new regulations using the GHS elements. Guidance has been developed on how to implement a national GHS action plan.

Additionally, pilot implementations have begun in a few countries. The opportunities and challenges learned from the pilot programs will be documented and are expected to facilitate future implementations.

3.0 What is Classification?
Classification is the starting point for hazard communication. It involves the identification of the hazard(s) of a chemical or mixture by assigning a category of hazard/danger using defined criteria. The GHS is designed to be consistent and transparent. It draws a clear distinction between classes and categories in order to allow for "self-classification". For many hazards a decision tree approach (e.g., eye irritation) is provided in the GHS Document. For several hazards the GHS criteria are semi-quantitative or qualitative. Expert judgment may be required to interpret these data.

Figure 3.1

Hazard Classification

The term "hazard classification is used to indicate that only the intrinsic hazardous properties of substances and mixtures are considered and involves the following 3 steps:
a) Identification of relevant data regarding the hazards of a substance or mixture;
b) Subsequent review of those data to ascertain the hazards associated with the substance or mixture; and
c) A decision on whether the substance or mixture will be classified as a hazardous substance or mixture and the degree of hazard, where appropriate, by comparison of the data with agreed hazard classification criteria.

Figure 3.1 shows the harmonized definition for hazard classification, which can be applied to all hazard categories in the system.

The data used for classification may be obtained from tests, literature, and practical experience. The GHS health and environmental hazard criteria/definitions are test method neutral. Accordingly, tests that determine hazardous properties conducted according to internationally recognized scientific principles can be used for purposes of hazard classification.

The GHS endpoints that cover physical, health and environmental hazards are listed in Figures 3.2 and 3.3, respectively. As mentioned earlier, the GHS hazard definitions are criteria-based. The following information provides an overview of the GHS definitions and classification criteria. It is recommended that the person responsible for GHS implementation consult the GHS Document or "Purple Book" for more complete information.

3.1 What are the GHS Physical Hazards?

The GHS physical hazards criteria, developed by the ILO and UNCETDG, were largely based on the existing criteria used by the UN Model Regulation on the Transport of Dangerous Goods. Therefore, many of the criteria are already being used on a worldwide basis. However, some additions and changes were necessary since the scope of the GHS includes all target audiences. The physical hazards classification process provides specific references to approved test methods and criteria for classification. The GHS physical hazard criteria apply to mixtures. It is assumed that mixtures will be tested for physical hazards.

In general, the GHS criteria for physical hazards are quantitative or semi-quantitative with multiple hazard levels within an endpoint. This is different from several of the existing systems that currently have qualitative criteria for various physical hazards (e.g., organic peroxide criteria under WHMIS and OSHA HCS). This could make classification under the GHS more consistent.

In developing GHS criteria for physical hazards it was necessary to define physical states. In the GHS, a gas is a substance or mixture which at 50°C has a vapor pressure greater than 300 kPa; or is completely gaseous at 20°C and a standard pressure of 101.3 kPa. a liquid is a substance or mixture that is not a gas and which has a melting point or initial melting point of 20°C or less at standard pressure of 101.3 kPa. a solid is a substance or mixture that does not meet the definitions of a liquid or a gas.

The GHS physical hazards are briefly described below. For many of the physical hazards the GHS Document contains Guidance Sections with practical information to assist in applying the criteria.

Figure 3.2
Physical Hazard
Explosives
Flammable Gases
Flammable Aerosols
Oxidizing Gases
Gases Under Pressure
Flammable Liquids
Flammable Solids
Self-Reactive Substances
Pyrophoric Liquids
Pyrophoric Solids
Self-Heating Substances
Substances which, in contact
with water emit flammable gases
Oxidizing Liquids
Oxidizing Solids
Organic Peroxides
Corrosive to Metals

3.1.1 Explosives

An explosive substance (or mixture) is a solid or liquid which is in itself capable by chemical reaction of producing gas at such a temperature and pressure and at such a speed as to cause damage to the surroundings. Pyrotechnic substances are included even when they do not evolve gases. A pyrotechnic substance (or mixture) is designed to produce an effect by heat, light, sound, gas or smoke or a combination of these as the result of non-detonative, self-sustaining, exothermic chemical reactions.

Classification as an explosive and allocation to a division is a three-step process:
Ascertain if the material has explosive effects (Test Series 1);
Acceptance procedure (Test Series 2 to 4);
Assignment to one of six hazard divisions (Test Series 5 to 7).

Table 3.1 Explosives

Division	Characteristics
1.1	Mass explosion hazard
1.2	Projection hazard
1.3	Fire hazard or minor projection hazard
1.4	No significant hazard
1.5	Very insensitive substances with mass explosion hazard
1.6	Extremely insensitive articles with no mass explosion hazard

Explosive properties are associated with certain chemical groups that can react to give very rapid increases in temperature or pressure. The GHS provides a screening procedure that is aimed at identifying the presence of such reactive groups and the potential for rapid energy release.

If the screening procedure identifies the substance or mixture to be a potential explosive, the acceptance procedure has to be performed.

Substances, mixtures and articles are assigned to one of six divisions, 1.1 to 1.6, depending on the type of hazard they present. See, UN Manual of Tests and Criteria Part I Test Series 2 to 7. Currently, only the transport sector uses six categories for explosives.

3.1.2 Flammable Gases
Flammable gas means a gas having a flammable range in air at 20°C and a standard pressure of 101.3 kPa. Substances and mixtures of this hazard class are assigned to one of two hazard categories on the basis of the outcome of the test or calculation method (ISO 10156:1996).

All of this text is credited to OSHA.

3.1.3 Flammable Aerosols

Aerosols are any gas compressed, liquefied or dissolved under pressure within a non-refillable container made of metal, glass or plastic, with or without a liquid, paste or powder. The container is fitted with a release device allowing the contents to be ejected as solid or liquid particles in suspension in a gas, as a foam, paste or powder or in a liquid or gaseous state.

Aerosols should be considered for classification as either a Category 1 or Category 2 Flammable Aerosol if they contain any component classified as flammable according to the GHS criteria for flammable liquids, flammable gases, or flammable solids.

Classification is based on:

- ✓ Concentration of flammable components;
- ✓ Chemical heat of combustion (mainly for transport/storage);
- ✓ Results from the foam test (foam aerosols) (mainly for worker/consumer);
- ✓ Ignition distance test (spray aerosols) (mainly for worker/consumer);
- ✓ Enclosed space test (spray aerosols) (mainly for worker/consumer).

Aerosols are considered:

Nonflammable, if the concentration of the flammable components < 1% and the heat of combustion is < 20 kJ/g.

Extremely flammable, if the concentration of the flammable components >85% and the heat of combustion is > 30 kJ/g to avoid excessive testing.

See the UN Manual of Tests and Criteria for the test method.

3.1.4 Oxidizing Gases

Oxidizing gas means any gas which may, generally by providing oxygen, cause or contribute to the combustion of other material more than air does.

Substances and mixtures of this hazard class are assigned to a single hazard category on the basis that, generally by providing oxygen, they cause or contribute to the combustion of other material more than air does. The test method is ISO 10156:1996. Currently, several workplace hazard communication systems cover oxidizers (solids, liquids, gases) as a class of chemicals.

3.1.5 Gases under Pressure

Gases under pressure are gases that are contained in a receptacle at a pressure not less than 280 Pa at 20°C or as a refrigerated liquid. This endpoint covers four types of gases or gaseous mixtures to address the effects of sudden release of pressure or freezing which may lead to serious damage to people, property, or the environment independent of other hazards the gases may pose.

For this group of gases, the following information is required:

- ✓ vapor pressure at 50°C;
- ✓ physical state at 20°C at standard ambient pressure;
- ✓ critical temperature.

Criteria that use the physical state or compressed gases will be a different classification basis for some workplace systems.

Table 3.2 Gases under Pressure

Group	Criteria
Compressed gas	Entirely gaseous at -50°C
Liquefied gas	Partially liquid at temperatures > -50°C
Refrigerated liquefied gas	Partially liquid because of its low temperature
Dissolved gas	Dissolved in a liquid phase solvent

Data can be found in the literature, and calculated or determined by testing. Most pure gases are already classified in the UN Model Regulations. Gases are classified, according to their physical state when packaged, into one of four groups as shown in Table 3.2.

3.1.6 Flammable Liquids

Flammable liquid means a liquid having a flash point of not more than 93°C. Substances and mixtures of this hazard class are assigned to one of four hazard categories on the basis of the flash point and boiling point (See Table 3.3). Flash Point is determined by closed cup methods as provided in the GHS document, Chapter 2.5, paragraph 11.

Table 3.3 Flammable Liquids

Category	Criteria
1	Flash point < 23°C and initial boiling point ≤ 35°C (95°F)
2	Flash point < 23°C and initial boiling point > 35°C (95°F)
3	Flash point ≥ 23°C and ≤ 60°C (140°F)
4	Flash point ≥ 60°C (140°F) and ≤ 93°C (200°F)

3.1.7 Flammable Solids

Flammable solids are solids that are readily combustible, or may cause or contribute to fire through friction. Readily combustible solids are powdered, granular, or pasty substances which are dangerous if they can be easily ignited by brief contact with an ignition source, such as a burning match, and if the flame spreads rapidly.

Substances and mixtures of this hazard class are assigned to one of two hazard categories (Table 3.4) on the basis of the outcome of the UN Test N.1 (UN Manual of Tests and Criteria). The tests include burning time, burning rate and behavior of fire in a wetted zone of the test sample.

Table 3.4 Flammable Solids

Category	Criteria
1	Metal Powders: burning time ≤ 5 minutes Others: wetted zone does not stop fire & burning time < 45 seconds or burning > 2.2 mm/second
2	Metal Powders: burning time > 5 and ≤ 10 minutes Others: wetted zone stop fire for at least 4 minutes & burning time < 45 seconds or burning rat > 2.2mm/second

3.1.8 Self-Reactive Substances

Self-reactive substances are thermally unstable liquids or solids liable to undergo a strongly exothermic thermal decomposition even without participation of oxygen (air). This definition excludes materials classified under the GHS as explosive, organic peroxides or as oxidizing.

These materials may have similar properties, but such hazards are addressed in their specific endpoints. There are exceptions to the self-reactive classification for material: (i) with heat of decomposition <300 J/g or (ii) with self-accelerating decomposition temperature (SADT) > 75°C for a 50 kg package.

Substances and mixtures of this hazard class are assigned to one of the seven 'Types', A to G, on the basis of the outcome of the UN Test Series A to H (UN Manual of Tests and Criteria). Currently, only the transport sector uses seven categories for self-reactive substances (Table 3.5).

Table 3.5 Self-Reactive Substances

Type	Criteria
A	Can detonate or deflagrate rapidly, as packaged.
B	Possess explosive properties and which, as packaged, neither detonates nor deflagrates, but is liable to undergo a thermal explosion in that package.
C	Possess explosive properties when the substance or mixture as package cannot detonate or deflagrate rapidly or undergo a thermal explosion.
D	Detonates partially, does not deflagrate rapidly and shows no violent effect when heated under confinement; or Does not detonate at all, deflagrates slowly and shows no violent effect when heated under confinement; or Does not detonate or deflagrate at all and shows a medium effect when heated under confinement.
E	Neither detonates nor deflagrates at all and shows low or no effect when heated under confinement.
F	Neither detonates in the cavitated bubble state nor deflagrates at all and shows only a low or no effect when heated under confinement as well as low or no explosive power.
G	Neither detonates in the cavitated state nor deflagrates at all and shows non-effect when heated under confinement nor any explosive power, provided that it is thermally stable (self-accelerating decomposition temperature is 60°C to 75°C for a 50 kg package), and, for liquid mixtures, a diluent having a boiling point not less than 150°C is used for desensitization.

Pyrophorics

3.1.9 Pyrophoric Liquids
A pyrophoric liquid is a liquid which, even in small quantities, is liable to ignite within five minutes after coming into contact with air. Substances and mixtures of this hazard class are assigned to a single hazard category on the basis of the outcome of the UN Test N.3 (UN Manual of Tests and Criteria).

3.1.10 Pyrophoric Solids
A pyrophoric solid is a solid which, even in small quantities, is liable to ignite within five minutes after coming into contact with air. Substances and mixtures of this hazard class are assigned to a single hazard category on the basis of the outcome of the UN Test N.2 (UN Manual of Tests and Criteria).

3.1.11 Self-Heating Substances
A self-heating substance is a solid or liquid, other than a pyrophoric substance, which, by reaction with air and without energy supply, is liable to self-heat. This endpoint differs from a pyrophoric substance in that it will ignite only when in large amounts (kilograms) and after long periods of time (hours or days). Substances and mixtures of this hazard class are assigned to one of two hazard categories on the basis of the outcome of the UN Test N.4 (UN Manual of Tests and Criteria).

3.1.12 Substances which on Contact with Water Emit Flammable Gases
Substances that, in contact with water, emit flammable gases are solids or liquids which, by interaction with water, are liable to become spontaneously flammable or to give off flammable gases in dangerous quantities. Substances and mixtures of this hazard class are assigned to one of three hazard categories on the basis of test results (UN Test N.5 UN Manual of Tests and Criteria) which measure gas evolution and speed of evolution.

Table 3.6 Substances which on Contact with Water Emit Flammable Gases

Category	Criteria
1	≥10 L/kg/1 minute
2	≥20 L/kg/ 1 hour + < 10 L/kg/1 min
3	≥1 L/kg/1 hour + < 20 L/kg/1 hour
Not classified	< 1 L/kg/1 hour

3.1.13 Oxidizing Liquids
An oxidizing liquid is a liquid which, while in itself not necessarily combustible, may, generally by yielding oxygen, cause or contribute to the combustion of other material. Substances and mixtures of this hazard class are assigned to one of three hazard categories on the basis of test results (UN Test O.2 UN Manual of Tests and Criteria) which measure ignition or pressure rise time compared to defined mixtures.

3.1.14 Oxidizing Solids

An oxidizing solid is a solid which, while in itself not necessarily combustible, may, generally by yielding oxygen, cause or contribute to the combustion of other material.

Substances and mixtures of this hazard class are assigned to one of three hazard categories on the basis of test results (UN Test O.1 UN Manual of Tests and Criteria) which measure mean burning time and re compared to defined mixtures. Currently, several workplace hazard communication systems cover oxidizers (solids, liquids, gases) as a class of chemicals.

3.1.15 Organic Peroxides

An organic peroxide is an organic liquid or solid which contains the bivalent -0-0- structure and may be considered a derivative of hydrogen peroxide, where one or both of the hydrogen atoms have been replaced by organic radicals. The term also includes organic peroxide formulations (mixtures). Such substances and mixtures may:

- ✓ be liable to explosive decomposition;
- ✓ burn rapidly;
- ✓ be sensitive to impact or friction;
- ✓ react dangerously with other substances.

Substances and mixtures of this hazard class are assigned to one of seven 'Types', A to G, on the basis of the outcome of the UN Test Series A to H (UN Manual of Tests and Criteria). Currently, only the transport sector uses seven categories for organic peroxides.

Table 3.7 Organic Peroxides

Type	Criteria
A	Can detonate or deflagrate rapidly, as packaged.
B	Possess explosive properties and which, as packaged, neither detonates nor deflagrates rapidly, but is liable to undergo a thermal explosion in that package.
C	Possess explosive properties when the substance or mixture as packaged cannot detonate or deflagrate rapidly or undergo a thermal explosion.
D	Detonates partially, does not deflagrate rapidly and shows no violent effect when heated under confinement; or Does not detonate at all, deflagrates slowly and shows no violent effect when heated under confinement; or Does not detonate or deflagrate at all and shows a medium effect when heated under confinement.
E	Neither detonates nor deflagrates at all and shows low or no effect when heated under confinement.
F	Neither detonates in the caviated bubble state nor deflagrates at all and shows only a low or no effect when heated under confinements as well as low or non-explosive power.
G	Neither detonates in the caviated state nor deflagrates at all and shows no effect when heated under confinement nor any explosive power, provided that it is thermally stable (self-accelerating decomposition temperature is 60°C to 75°C for a 50 kg package), and, for liquid mixtures, a diluent having a boiling point not less than 150°C is used for desensitization.

3.1.16 Substances Corrosive to Metal

A substance or a mixture that by chemical action will materially damage, or even destroy, metals is termed 'corrosive to metal'. These substances or mixtures are classified in a single hazard category on the basis of tests (Steel: ISO 9328 (II): 1991 - Steel type P235; Aluminum: ASTM G31-72 (1990) - non-clad types 7075-T6 or AZ5GU-T66). The GHS criteria are a corrosion rate on steel or aluminum surfaces exceeding 6.25 mm per year at a test temperature of 55°C.

The concern in this case is the protection of metal equipment or installations in case of leakage (e.g., plane, ship, tank), not material compatibility between the container/tank and the product. This hazard is not currently covered in all systems.

3.2 What are the GHS Health and Environmental Hazards?
The GHS health and environmental hazard criteria represent a harmonized approach for existing classification systems (see Figure 3.3). The work at the OECD to develop the GHS criteria included:

- ✓ A thorough analysis of existing classification systems, including the scientific basis for a system and its criteria, its rationale and an explanation of the mode of use;
- ✓ A proposal for harmonized criteria for each category. For some categories the harmonized approach was easy to develop because the existing systems had similar approaches. In cases where the approach was different, a compromise consensus proposal was developed.

Health and environmental criteria were established for substances and mixtures.
Figure 3.3
Health Hazard
Acute Toxicity
Skin Corrosion/Irritation
Serious Eye Damage/Eye Irritation
Respiratory or Skin Sensitization
Germ Cell Mutagenicity
Carcinogenicity
Reproductive Toxicology
Target Organ Systemic Toxicity - Single Exposure
Target Organ Systemic Toxicity - Repeated Exposure
Aspiration Toxicity
Environmental Hazard
Hazardous to the Aquatic Environment
Acute aquatic toxicity
Chronic aquatic toxicity
Bioaccumulation potential
Rapid degradability

The GHS Health and Environmental Endpoints
The following paragraphs briefly describe the GHS health and environmental endpoints. The criteria for classifying substances are presented first. Then the GHS approach to classifying mixtures is briefly discussed. It is recommended that the person responsible for GHS implementation consult the GHS Document or "Purple Book" for more complete information.

3.2.1 Acute Toxicity

Five GHS categories have been included in the GHS Acute Toxicity scheme from which the appropriate elements relevant to transport, consumer, worker and environment protection can be selected. Substances are assigned to one of the five toxicity categories on the basis of LD50 (oral, dermal) or LC50 (inhalation). The LC50 values are based on 4-hour tests in animals. The GHS provides guidance on converting 1-hour inhalation test results to a 4-hour equivalent. The five categories are shown in the Table 3.8 Acute Toxicity.

Table 3.8 Acute Toxicity

Acute toxicity	Cat. 1	Cat. 2	Cat. 3	Cat. 4	Category 5
Oral (mg/kg)	≤ 5	> 5 ≤ 50	> 50 ≤ 300	> 300 ≤ 2000	Criteria: Anticipated oral LD50 between 2000 and 5000 mg/kg; Indication of significant effect in humans;* Any mortality at class 4;* Significant clinical signs at class 4;* Indications from other studies.* *If assignment to more hazardous class is not warranted.
Dermal (mg/kg)	≤ 50	> 50 ≤ 200	> 200 ≤ 1000	> 1000 ≤ 2000	
Gases (ppm)	≤ 100	> 100 ≤ 500	> 500 ≤ 2500	> 2500 ≤ 5000	
Vapors (mg/l)	≤ 0.5	> 0.5 ≤ 2.0	> 2.0 ≤ 10	> 10 ≤ 20	
Dust & mists (mg/l)	≤ 0.05	> 0.05 ≤ 0.5	> 0.5 ≤ 1.0	> 1.0 ≤ 5	

Category 1, the most severe toxicity category, has cut-off values currently used primarily by the transport sector for classification for packing groups.

Some Competent Authorities may consider combining Acute Categories 1 and 2. Category 5 is for chemicals which are of relatively low acute toxicity but which, under certain circumstances, may pose a hazard to vulnerable populations. Criteria other than LD50/LC50 data are provided to identify substances in Category 5 unless a more hazardous class is warranted.

3.2.2 Skin Corrosion

Skin corrosion means the production of irreversible damage to the skin following the application of a test substance for up to 4 hours. Substances and mixtures in this hazard class are assigned to a single harmonized corrosion category.

For Competent Authorities, such as transport packing groups, needing more than one designation for corrosivity, up to three subcategories are provided within the corrosive category.

See the Skin Corrosion/Irritation Table 3.9.

Several factors should be considered in determining the corrosion potential before testing is initiated:

- ✓ Human experience showing irreversible damage to the skin;
- ✓ Structure/activity or structure property relationship to a substance or mixture already classified as corrosive;
- ✓ pH extremes of less than 2 and more than 11.5 including acid/alkali reserve capacity.

Table 3.9 Skin Corrosion/Irritation

<table>
<tr><td colspan="3">Skin Corrosion
Category 1</td><td>Skin Irritation
Category 2</td><td>Mild Skin Irritation
Category 3</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Destruction of dermal tissue: visible necrosis in at least one animal</td><td rowspan="2">Reversible adverse effects in dermal tissue

Draize score: ≥ 2.3 < 4.0
or persistent inflammation</td><td rowspan="2">Reversible adverse effects in dermal tissue

Draize score: ≥ 1.5 < 2.3</td></tr>
<tr><td>Subcategory 1A
Exposure < 3 min.
Observation < 1hr,</td><td>Subcategory 1B
Exposure < 1hr.
Observation < 14 days</td><td>Subcategory 1C
Exposure < 4 hrs.
Observation < 14 days</td></tr>
</table>

3.2.3 Skin Irritation

Skin irritation means the production of reversible damage to the skin following the application of a test substance for up to 4 hours. Substances and mixtures in this hazard class are assigned to a single irritant category. For those authorities, such as pesticide regulators, wanting more than one designation for skin irritation, an additional mild irritant category is provided. See the Skin Corrosion/Irritation Table 3.9.

Several factors should be considered in determining the irritation potential before testing is initiated:

- ✓ Human experience or data showing reversible damage to the skin following exposure of up to 4 hours;
- ✓ Structure/activity or structure property relationship to a substance or mixture already classified as an irritant.

3.2.4 Eye Effects

Several factors should be considered in determining the serious eye damage or eye irritation potential before testing is initiated:

- ✓ Accumulated human and animal experience;
- ✓ Structure/activity or structure property relationship to a substance or mixture already classified;
- ✓ pH extremes like < 2 and > 11.5 that may produce serious eye damage.

Table 3.10 Eye Effects

<table>
<tr><td>Category 1
Serious eye damage</td><td colspan="2">Category 2
Eye Irritation</td></tr>
<tr><td rowspan="2">Irreversible damage 21 days after exposure

Draize score:
Corneal opacity ≥ 3
Iritis > 1.5</td><td colspan="2">Reversible adverse effects on cornea, iris, conjunctiva

Draize score:
Corneal opacity ≥ 1
Iritis > 1
Redness ≥ 2
Chemosis ≥ 2</td></tr>
<tr><td>Irritant
Subcategory 2A
Reversible in 21 days</td><td>Mild Irritant
Subcategory 2B
Reversible in 7 days</td></tr>
</table>

Serious eye damage means the production of tissue damage in the eye, or serious physical decay of vision, following application of a test substance to the front surface of the eye, which is not fully reversible within 21 days of application. Substances and mixtures in this hazard class are assigned to a single harmonized category.

Eye irritation means changes in the eye following the application of a test substance to the front surface of the eye, which are fully reversible within 21 days of application. Substances and mixtures in this hazard class are assigned to a single harmonized hazard category. For authorities, such as pesticide regulators, wanting more than one designation for eye irritation, one of two subcategories can be selected, depending on whether the effects are reversible in 21 or 7 days.

3.2.5 Sensitization

Respiratory sensitizer means a substance that induces hypersensitivity of the airways following inhalation of the substance. Substances and mixtures in this hazard class are assigned to one hazard category.

Skin sensitizer means a substance that will induce an allergic response following skin contact. The definition for "skin sensitizer" is equivalent to "contact sensitizer". Substances and mixtures in this hazard class are assigned to one hazard category. Consideration should be given to classifying substances which cause immunological contact urticaria (an allergic disorder) as contact sensitizers.

3.2.6 Germ Cell Mutagenicity

Mutagen means an agent giving rise to an increased occurrence of mutations in populations of cells and/or organisms. Substances and mixtures in this hazard class are assigned to one of two hazard categories. Category 1 has two subcategories. See the Germ Cell Mutagenicity (Table 3.11) below.

Table 3.11 Germ Cell Mutagenicity

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">Category 1
Known/Presumed</td><td>Category 2
Suspected/Possible</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Known to produce heritable mutations in human germ cells</td><td rowspan="2">May include heritable mutations in human germ cells
Positive evidence from tests in mammals and somatic cell tests
In vivo somatic genotoxicity supported by in vitro mutagenicity</td></tr>
<tr><td>Subcategory 1A
Positive evidence from epidemiological studies</td><td>Subcategory 1B
Positive results in:
In vivo heritable germ cell tests in mammals
Human germ cell tests
In vivo somatic mutagenicity tests, combined with some evidence of germ cell mutagenicity</td></tr>
</table>

3.2.7 Carcinogenicity

Carcinogen means a chemical substance or a mixture of chemical substances which induce cancer or increase its incidence. Substances and mixtures in this hazard class are assigned to one of two hazard categories. Category 1 has two subcategories. The Carcinogenicity Guidance Section in the GHS Document includes comments about IARC.

Table 3.12 Carcinogenicity

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">Category 1
Known or Presumed Carcinogen</td><td>Category 2
Suspected Carcinogen</td></tr>
<tr><td>Subcategory 1A
Known Human Carcinogen Based on human evidence</td><td>Subcategory 1B
Presumed Human Carcinogen
Based on demonstrated animal carcinogenicity</td><td>Limited evidence of human or animal carcinogenicity</td></tr>
</table>

3.2.8 Reproductive Toxicity

Reproductive toxicity includes adverse effects on sexual function and fertility in adult males and females, as well as developmental toxicity in offspring. Substances and mixtures with reproductive and/or developmental effects are assigned to one of two hazard categories, 'known or presumed' and 'suspected'. Category 1 has two subcategories for reproductive and developmental effects. Materials which cause concern for the health of breastfed children have a separate category, Effects on or Via Lactation.

Table 3.13 Reproductive Toxicity

<table>
<tr><td colspan="2">Category 1</td><td>Category 2
Suspected</td><td>Additional
Category</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="2">Known or presumed to cause effects on human reproduction or on development</td><td rowspan="2">Human or animal evidence possibly with other information</td><td rowspan="2">Effects on or via lactation</td></tr>
<tr><td>Category 1A
Known
Based on human evidence</td><td>Category 1B
Presumed
Based on experimental animals</td></tr>
</table>

3.2.9 Target Organ Systemic Toxicity (TOST): Single Exposure & Repeated Exposure
The GHS distinguishes between single and repeat exposure for Target Organ Effects. Some existing systems distinguish between single and repeat exposure for these effects and some do not.

All significant health effects, not otherwise specifically included in the GHS, that can impair function, both reversible and irreversible, immediate and/or delayed are included in the non-lethal target organ/systemic toxicity class (TOST). Narcotic effects and respiratory tract irritation are considered to be target organ systemic effects following a single exposure.

Substances and mixtures of the single exposure target organ toxicity hazard class are assigned to one of three hazard categories in Table 3.14.

Table 3.14 TOST: Single Exposure

Category 1 Significant toxicity in humans - Reliable, good quality human case studies or epidemiological studies Presumed significant toxicity in humans - Animal studies with significant and/or severe toxic effects relevant to humans at generally low exposure (guidance)	Category 2 Presumed to be harmful to human health - Animal studies with significant toxic effects relevant to humans at generally moderate exposure (guidance) - Human evidence in exceptional cases	Category 3 Transient target organ effects - Narcotic effects - Respiratory tract irritation

Substances and mixtures of the repeated exposure target organ toxicity hazard class are assigned to one of two hazard categories in Table 3.15.

Table 3.15 TOST: Repeated Exposure

Category 1 Significant toxicity in humans - Reliable, good quality human case studies or epidemiological studies Presumed significant toxicity in humans - Animal studies with significant and/or severe toxic effects relevant to humans at generally low exposure (guidance)	Category 2 Presumed to be harmful to human health - Animal studies with significant toxic effects relevant to humans at generally moderate exposure (guidance) - Human evidence in exceptional cases

In order to help reach a decision about whether a substance should be classified or not, and to what degree it would be classified (Category 1 vs. Category 2), dose/concentration 'guidance values' are provided in the GHS. The guidance values and ranges for single and repeated doses are intended only for guidance purposes.

3.2.10 Aspiration Hazard

Aspiration toxicity includes severe acute effects such as chemical pneumonia, varying degrees of pulmonary injury or death following aspiration. Aspiration is the entry of a liquid or solid directly through the oral or nasal cavity, or indirectly from vomiting, into the trachea and lower respiratory system. Some hydrocarbons (petroleum distillates) and certain chlorinated hydrocarbons have been shown to pose an aspiration hazard in humans. Primary alcohols, and ketones have been shown to pose an aspiration hazard only in animal studies.

Table 3.16 Aspiration Toxicity

Category 1: Known (regarded) human - human evidence - hydrocarbons with kinematic viscosity ? 20.5 mm2/s at 40° C.	Category 2: Presumed human - Based on animal studies - surface tension, water solubility, boiling point - kinematic viscosity ? 14 mm2/s at 40°C & not Category 1

Substances and mixtures of this hazard class are assigned to one of two hazard categories this hazard class on the basis of viscosity.

3.3 Environmental Hazards

3.3.1 Hazardous to the Aquatic Environment

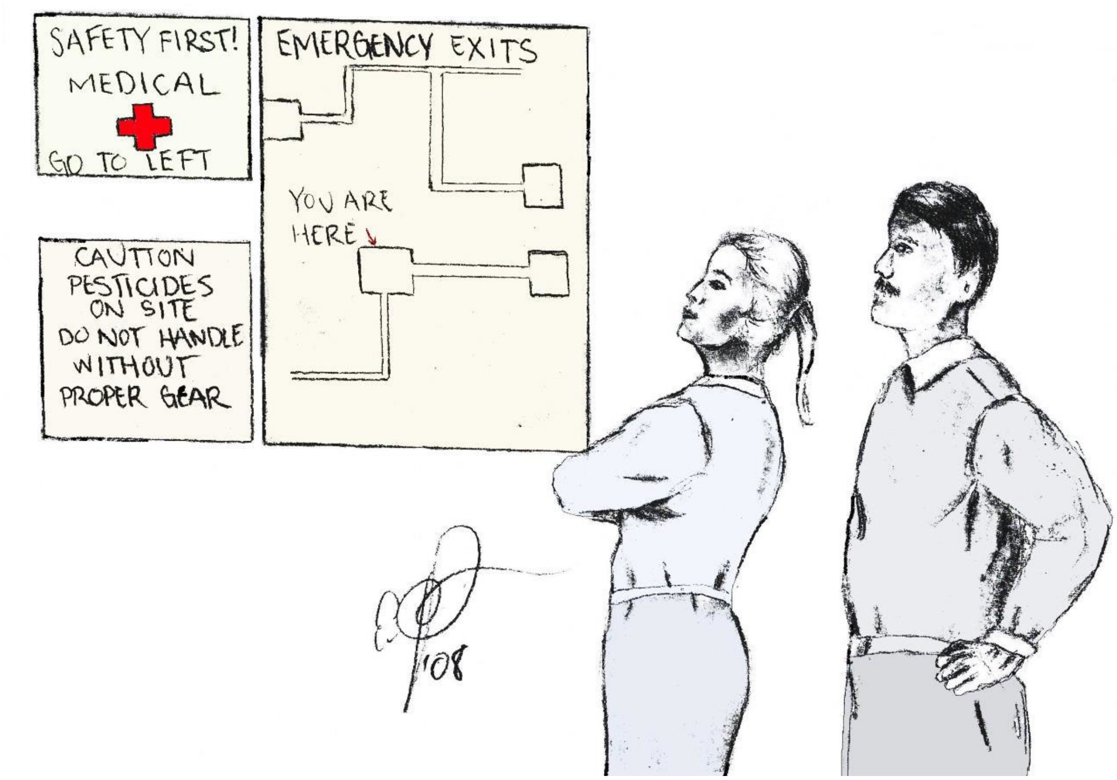
The harmonized criteria are considered suitable for packaged goods in both supply and use in multi-modal transport schemes. Elements of it may be used for bulk land transport and bulk marine transport under MARPOL (International Convention for the Prevention of Pollution from Ships) insofar as this uses aquatic toxicity.

Two Guidance Documents (Annexes 8 and 9 of the GHS Document) cover issues such as data interpretation and the application of the criteria to special substances. Considering the complexity of this endpoint and the breadth of the application, the Guidance Annexes are important in the application of the harmonized criteria.

3.3.1.1 Acute Aquatic Toxicity

Acute aquatic toxicity means the intrinsic property of a material to cause injury to an aquatic organism in a short-term exposure. Substances and mixtures of this hazard class are assigned to one of three toxicity categories on the basis of acute toxicity data: LC50 (fish) or EC50 (crustacea) or ErC50 (for algae or other aquatic plants). In some regulatory systems these acute toxicity categories may be subdivided or extended for certain sectors
.

This means that they are to be used as part of the weight of evidence approach, and to assist with decisions about classification. They are not intended as strict demarcation values. The guidance value for repeated dose effects refer to effects seen in a standard 90-day toxicity study conducted in rats. They can be used as a basis to extrapolate equivalent guidance values for toxicity studies of greater or lesser duration.



3.3.1.2 Chronic Aquatic Toxicity

Chronic aquatic toxicity means the potential or actual properties of a material to cause adverse effects to aquatic organisms during exposures that are determined in relation to the lifecycle of the organism. Substances and mixtures in this hazard class are assigned to one of four toxicity categories on the basis of acute data and environmental fate data: LC50 (fish) or EC50 (crustacea) or ErC50 (for algae or other aquatic plants) and degradation/bioaccumulation.

While experimentally derived test data are preferred, where no experimental data are available, validated Quantitative Structure Activity Relationships (QSARs) for aquatic toxicity and log KOW may be used in the classification process. The log KOW is a surrogate for a measured Bioconcentration Factor (BCF), where such a measured BCF value would always take precedence.

Chronic Category IV is considered a "safety net" classification for use when the available data do not allow classification under the formal criteria, but there are some grounds for concern.

Table 3.17 Acute & Chronic Aquatic Toxicity

<table>
<tr><td colspan="4">Acute Cat. I
Acute toxicity ≤ 1.00 mg/l</td><td colspan="4">Acute Cat. II
Acute toxicity > 1.00 but ≤ 10.0 mg/l</td><td colspan="4">Acute Cat. III
Acute toxicity ≤ 10.0 but < 100 mg/l</td></tr>
<tr><td colspan="3">Chronic Cat. I
Acute toxicity
≤ 1.00 mg/l and lack of rapid degradability and log Kow ≥ 4 unless BCF < 500</td><td colspan="3">Chronic Cat. II
Acute toxicity
> 1.00 but ≤ 10.0 mg/l and lack of rapid degradability and log Kow ≥ 4 unless BCF < 500 and unless chronic toxicity > 1 mg/l</td><td colspan="3">Chronic Cat. III
Acute toxicity
> 10.0 but ≤ 100.0 mg/l and lack of rapid degradability and log Kow ≥ 4 unless BCF < 500 and unless chronic toxicity > 1 mg/l</td><td colspan="3">Chronic Cat. IV
Acute toxicity
> 100 mg/l and lack of rapid degradability and log Kow ≥ 4 unless BCF < 500 and unless chronic toxicity > 1 mg/l</td></tr>
</table>

3.4 What is the GHS approach to classifying mixtures?
For consistency and understanding the provisions for classifying mixtures, the GHS defines certain terms. These working definitions are for the purpose of evaluating or determining the hazards of a product for classification and labeling.

Substance: Chemical elements and their compounds in the natural state or obtained by any production process, including any additive necessary to preserve the stability of the product and any impurities deriving from the process used, but excluding any solvent which may be separated without affecting the stability of the substance or changing its composition.

Mixture: Mixtures or solutions composed of two or more substances in which they do not react.

Alloy: An alloy is a metallic material, homogeneous on a macroscopic scale, consisting of two or more elements so combined that they cannot be readily separated by mechanical means. Alloys are considered to be mixtures for the purpose of classification under the GHS.

Where impurities, additives or individual constituents of a substance or mixture have been identified and are themselves classified, they should be taken into account during classification if they exceed the cutoff value/concentration limit for a given hazard class.

Figure 3.4
Tier Approach to Classification of Mixtures

Generally, use test data for the mixture, if available,
↓
Compared to substance hazard criteria
Use bridging principles, if applicable
↓
Estimate hazard(s) based on the known component information

As mentioned previously, the GHS physical hazard criteria apply to mixtures. It is assumed that mixtures will be tested for physical hazards. Each health and environmental endpoint chapter in the GHS contains specific criteria for classifying mixtures as well as substances. The GHS Document or "Purple Book" should be consulted for complete information on classifying mixtures.

The process established for classifying a mixture allows the use of (a) available data for the mixture itself and/or
(b) similar mixtures and/or
(c) data for ingredients of the mixture. The GHS approach to the classification of mixtures for health and environmental hazards is tiered, and is dependent upon the amount of information available for the mixture itself and for its components. The process for the classification of mixtures is based on the following steps:

(1) Where test data are available for the mixture itself, the classification of the mixture will be based on that data (See exception for carcinogens, mutagens & reproductive toxins in the GHS Document);

(2) Where test data are not available for the mixture itself, then the appropriate bridging principles (as described below) in the specific chapter should be used;

(3) If (i) test data are not available for the mixture itself, and (ii) the bridging principles cannot be applied, then use the calculation or cutoff values described in the specific endpoint to classify the mixture.

All of this text is credited to OSHA.

3.5 What are Bridging Principles?

Bridging principles are an important concept in the GHS for classifying untested mixtures. When a mixture has not been tested, but there are sufficient data on the components and/or similar tested mixtures, these data can be used in accordance with the following bridging principles:

Dilution: If a mixture is diluted with a diluent that has an equivalent or lower toxicity, then the hazards of the new mixture are assumed to be equivalent to the original.

Batching: If a batch of a complex substance is produced under a controlled process, then the hazards of the new batch are assumed to be equivalent to the previous batches.

Concentration of Highly Toxic Mixtures: If a mixture is severely hazardous, then a concentrated mixture is also assumed to be severely hazardous
Interpolation within One Toxic Category: Mixtures having component concentrations within a range where the hazards are known are assumed to have those known hazards.

Substantially Similar Mixtures: Slight changes in the concentrations of components are not expected to change the hazards of a mixture and substitutions involving toxicologically similar components are not expected to change the hazards of a mixture

Aerosols: An aerosol form of a mixture is assumed to have the same hazards as the tested, non-aerosolized form of the mixture unless the propellant affects the hazards upon spraying.

All bridging principles do not apply to every health and environmental endpoint. Consult each endpoint to determine which bridging principles apply.

When the bridging principles do not apply or cannot be used, the health and environmental hazards of mixtures are estimated based on component information. In the GHS, the methodology used to estimate these hazards varies by endpoint. The GHS Document or "Purple Book" should be consulted for more complete information on classifying mixtures. Figure 3.5 summarizes the GHS mixtures approach for the various health and environmental endpoints.

3.6 What testing is required?

The GHS itself does not include requirements for testing substances or mixtures. Therefore, there is no requirement under the GHS to generate test data for any hazard class. Some parts of regulatory systems may require data to be generated (e.g., for pesticides), but these requirements are not related specifically to the GHS.

The GHS criteria for determining health and environmental hazards are test method neutral, allowing different approaches as long as they are scientifically sound and validated according to international procedures and criteria already referred to in existing systems.

Test data already generated for the classification of chemicals under existing systems should be accepted when classifying these chemicals under the GHS, thereby avoiding duplicative testing and the unnecessary use of test animals.

The GHS physical hazard criteria are linked to specific test methods. It is assumed that mixtures will be tested for physical hazards.

Where employees must travel between workplaces during a work shift, i.e., their work is carried out at more than one geographical location, the material safety data sheets may be kept at the primary workplace facility. In this situation, the employer shall ensure that employees can immediately obtain the required information in an emergency

Figure 3.5 GHS Mixtures

Hazard Endpoint	Classification Approach	Bridging Principles Comments	
Acute toxicity	Acute Toxicity Estimate (ATE): 2 formulas	All	Conversion values, relevant components usually at ³ 1%
Serious Eye Damage & Eye Irritation	Mostly additivity approach, sometimes cutoffs	All	Relevant components usually at ³ 1%, exceptions for certain chemical classes
Skin corrosion & Skin Irritation	Mostly additivity approach, sometimes cutoffs	All	Relevant components usually at ³ 1%, exceptions for certain chemical classes
Skin Sensitization	Cutoffs with CA options	Dilution, Batching, Substantially similar mixtures, Aerosols	
Respiratory Sensitization	Cutoffs with CA options	Dilution, Batching, Substantially similar mixtures, Aerosols	
Germ Cell Mutagenicity	Cutoffs	Dilution, Batching, Substantially similar mixtures	Mixture test data only case-by case
Carcinogenicity	Cutoffs with CA options	Dilution, Batching, Substantially similar mixtures	Mixture test data only case-by-case
Reproductive Toxicity	Cutoffs with CA options	Dilution, Batching, Substantially similar mixtures	Mixture test data only case-by-case
Target Organ Systemic Toxicity	Cutoffs with CA options	All	
Aspiration Toxicity	Cutoffs	Dilution, Batching, Concentration of highly toxic mixtures, Interpolation within one toxicity category, Substantially similar mixtures	
Hazardous to the Aquatic Environment	Additivity Formula (Acute only); Summation Method (Acute or Chronic); Combination of Additivity Formula & Summation Method	Dilution, Batching, Concentration of highly toxic mixtures, Interpolation within one toxicity category, Substantially similar mixtures	Relevant components usually at ³ 1%, Mixture test data only case-by-case for chronic

These chemical containers where cited in a recent unannounced OSHA inspection. The flammable chemicals were not “grounded and bonded” and notice that the Inspector is asking several related and unrelated questions to this employee.

4.0 More about Hazard Communication

Section 3, explained that classification is the starting point for the GHS. Once a chemical has been classified, the hazard(s) must be communicated to target audiences. As in existing systems, labels and Safety Data Sheets are the main tools for chemical hazard communication.

They identify the hazardous properties of chemicals that may pose a health, physical or environmental hazard during normal handling or use. The goal of the GHS is to identify the intrinsic hazards found in chemical substances and mixtures, and to convey information about these hazards.

The international mandate for the GHS included the development of a harmonized hazard communication system, including labeling, Safety Data Sheets and easily understandable symbols, based on the classification criteria developed for the GHS.

4.1 What factors influenced development of the GHS communication tools?
Early in the process of developing the GHS communication tools, several significant issues were recognized. One of the most important was comprehensibility of the information provided. After all, the aim of the system is to present hazard information in a manner that the intended audience can easily understand and that will thus minimize the possibility of adverse effects resulting from exposure. The GHS identifies some guiding principles to assist in this process:
Information should be conveyed in more than one way, e.g., text and symbols;

The comprehensibility of the components of the system should take account of existing studies and literature as well as any evidence gained from testing;

The phrases used to indicate degree (severity) of hazard should be consistent across the health, physical and environmental hazards.

Comprehensibility is challenging for a single culture and language. Global harmonization has numerous complexities. Some factors that affected the work include:

- ✓ Different philosophies in existing systems on how and what should be communicated;
- ✓ Language differences around the world;
- ✓ Ability to translate phrases meaningfully;
- ✓ Ability to understand and appropriately respond to symbols/pictograms.

These factors were considered in developing the GHS communication tools. The GHS Purple Book includes a comprehensibility-testing instrument in Annex 6.

This photograph shows a delivery of Sulfuric Acid. The delivery driver is wearing only work gloves. He is clearly in violation of the proper PPE. The Hazard Communication Standard requires employees to understand chemical hazards, labels, and SDSs and to use them on the job. Before starting jobs involving possible exposure to hazardous substances, employees must read SDSs to know what they're working with and procedures for safe handling.

4.2 Labels

4.2.1 What does a label look like?

Existing systems have labels that look different for the same product. We know that this leads to worker confusion, consumer uncertainty and the need for additional resources to maintain different systems. In the U.S. as well as in other countries, chemical products are regulated by sector/target audience. Different agencies regulate the workplace, consumers, agricultural chemicals and transport. Labels for these sectors/target audiences vary both in the U.S. and globally.

In order to understand the value of the GHS and its benefits to all stakeholders, it is instructive to look at the different labels for one fictional product. In the U.S. the product, ToxiFlam, which has a flash point of 120°F and has an oral LD50 of 275 mg/kg, has different labels for different sectors/target audiences. Label examples as seen in the U.S.A. are shown first, followed by international examples.

4.2.2 USA Examples:

Workplace and Workers

In the U.S., regulatory requirements for workplace labels are 'performance oriented'. This results at a minimum in a straightforward label that has a product identity, hazard statement and supplier identification (Figure 4.1). Some products can also have additional labeling requirements depending on their end use.

Figure 4.1

ToxiFlam
TOXIC
COMBUSTIBLE LIQUID AND
VAPOR

My Company, My Street, MyTown NJ
00000
Tel. 444 999 9999

However, many companies follow the voluntary ANSI Z129.1 Precautionary Labeling Standard for workplace labeling and often use it also for labeling consumer products. The American National Standards Institute (ANSI) standard includes several label elements that are core to the GHS as well as other helpful elements to assist users in safe handling (Figure 4.2).

Figure 4.2

ToxiFlam (Contains XYZ)

WARNING! HARMFUL IF SWALLOWED, FLAMMABLE LIQUID AND VAPOR

Do not taste or swallow. Do not take internally. Wash thoroughly after handling. Keep away from heat, sparks and flame. Keep container closed. Use only with adequate ventilation.

FIRST AID: If swallowed, do NOT induce vomiting unless directed to do so by medical personnel. Never give anything by mouth to an unconscious person.

In case of Fire, use water fog, dry chemical, CO_2, or alcohol foam. Water may be ineffective.

Flash Point = 120°F. Residue vapor may explode or ignite on ignition; do not cut, drill, grind, or weld on or near the container.

See Material Safety Data Sheet for further details regarding safe use of this product.

My Company, My Street, MyTown NJ 00000 Tel. 444 999 9999

Consumer Products and Consumers

Figure 4.3
ToxiFlam
(Contains XYZ)

WARNING! HARMFUL IF SWALLOWED, FLAMMABLE LIQUID AND VAPOR
Do not taste or swallow. Do not take internally. Wash thoroughly after handling. Keep away from heat, sparks and flame. Keep container closed. Use only with adequate ventilation.

FIRST AID
If swallowed, do NOT induce vomiting unless directed to do so by medical personnel. Never give anything by mouth to an unconscious person.
Keep out of reach of children

My Company, My Street, MyTown NJ 00000 Tel. 444 999 9999

In several countries consumer products are regulated separately from workplace chemicals. In the U.S. the CPSC regulates consumer products. Consumer products have required label elements, but only the signal words are specified. The ANSI labeling standard is often used in developing consumer labels.

Transport and Emergency Responders

For hazardous products being transported, outer containers have required label elements, product identifier and hazard symbols. Transportation requirements are in addition to workplace or end use label requirements.

Figure 4.4
Flammable liquids, toxic, n.o.s. (contains XYZ)
UN 1992

My Company, My Street NJ 00000

Agricultural Chemicals and Pesticides
In many systems, agricultural chemicals often have special label requirements. In the U.S. the EPA is the agency covering these chemicals. A pesticide product with the same hazards as ToxiFlam would have a label developed using FIFRA requirements. FIFRA has requirements for product identity, chemical identity, signal word, hazard statements, and precautionary measures including first aid.
Figure 4.5
ToxiFlam
Active/ Inerts: Contains XYZ %

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN
PRECAUTIONARY STATEMENTS - HAZARDS TO HUMANS AND DOMESTIC ANIMALS:
WARNING: May be fatal if swallowed. Wash thoroughly with soap and water after handling and before eating, drinking or using tobacco .
PHYSICAL AND CHEMICAL HAZARDS: Combustible. Do not use or store near heat or open flame.

FIRST AID:
If swallowed
- Call a poison control center or doctor immediately for treatment advice.
- Have person sip a glass of water if able to swallow.
- Do not induce vomiting unless told to do so by a poison control center or doctor.
- Do not give anything by mouth to an unconscious person.

My Company, My Street, My Town AZ 00000, Tel: 444 999 9999

EPA Est . No. 5840-AZ-1 EPA Reg. No. 3120-280

4.2.3 International Examples

All the previous examples are specific to the U.S. Many companies do business globally. So in addition to the U.S. regulations, these companies would need to comply with the corresponding regulations in the countries to which they export products. Canada and the EU are two existing systems that were considered in the development of the GHS. To illustrate the differences in labeling, it is interesting to examine an EU and Canadian label for ToxiFlam.

European Union Label

Labels in the EU have chemical identity, symbols, and R/S (Risk and Safety) phrases which are hazard statements, precautionary measures and first aid.

Figure 4.6

ToxiFlam (contains XYZ)

KEEP OUT OF THE REACH OF CHILDREN

Harmful If Swallowed. (R22)
Flammable. (R10)
Keep away from food, drink and animal feeding stuffs. (S13)
Wear suitable protective clothing. (S36)
If swallowed, seek medical advice immediately and show this
Container label. (S46)
In case of fire, use water, fog, CO2, or alcohol foam. (S43)

My Company, My Street, MyTown XX 00000, Tel: 44 22 999 9999

Canadian Workplace Hazardous Materials Identification System (WHMIS) Label

The WHMIS label requires product identifier, hazard symbol, hazard statement, precautionary measures, first aid, MSDS statement and supplier identification. In addition to these common label elements, WHMIS requires a hatched border.

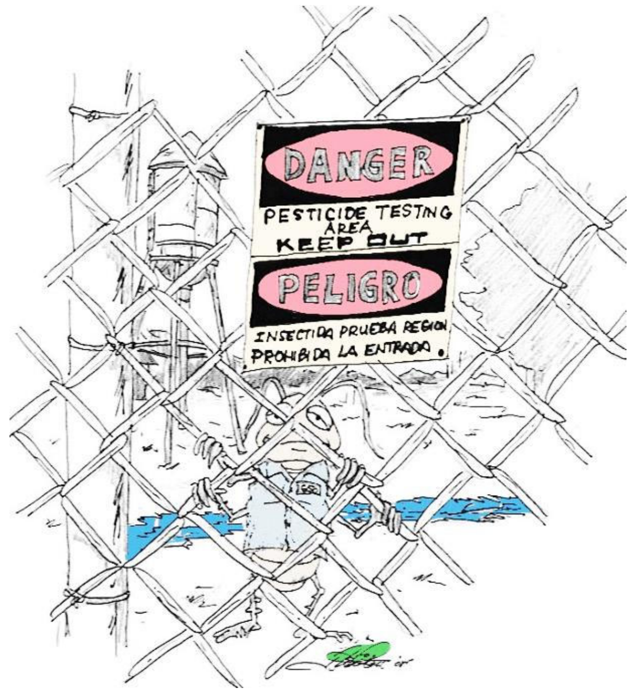
Figure 4.7
ToxiFlam

TOXIC
COMBUSTIBLE LIQUID AND VAPOR
Do not taste or swallow. Do not take internally. Wash thoroughly after handling. Keep away from heat, sparks and flame. Keep container closed. Use only with adequate ventilation.

4.3 What are the GHS Label Elements?

Some GHS label elements have been standardized (identical with no variation) and are directly related to the endpoints and hazard level. Other label elements are harmonized with common definitions and/or principles. See Figure 4.8 for an illustration of the GHS label elements.

The standardized label elements included in the GHS are:
Symbols (hazard pictograms): Convey health, physical and environmental hazard information, assigned to a GHS hazard class and category.



Signal Words: "Danger" or "Warning" are used to emphasize hazards and indicate the relative level of severity of the hazard, assigned to a GHS hazard class and category.

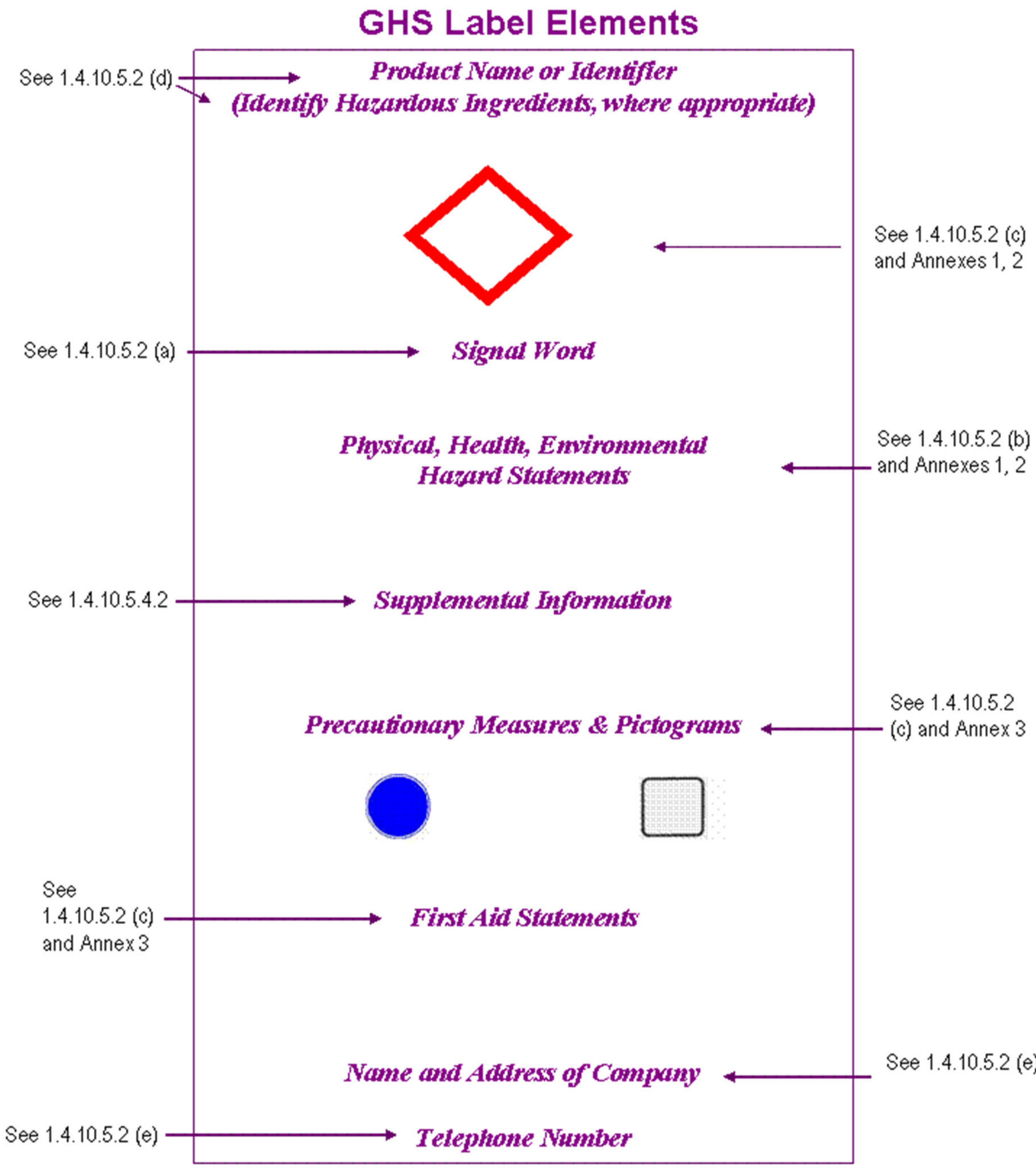
Hazard Statements: Standard phrases assigned to a hazard class and category that describe the nature of the hazard.

The symbols, signal words, and hazard statements have all been standardized and assigned to specific hazard categories and classes, as appropriate.

This approach makes it easier for countries to implement the system and should make it easier for companies to comply with regulations based on the GHS.

The prescribed symbols, signal words, and hazard statements can be readily selected from Annex 1 of the GHS Purple Book. These standardized elements are not subject to variation, and should appear on the GHS label as indicated in the GHS for each hazard category/class in the system. The use of symbols, signal words or hazard statements other than those that have been assigned to each of the GHS hazards would be contrary to harmonization.

Figure 4.8



The Section numbers refer to the sections in the GHS Document or "Purple Book".

4.3.1 Symbols/Pictograms

The GHS symbols have been incorporated into pictograms for use on the GHS label. Pictograms include the harmonized hazard symbols plus other graphic elements, such as borders, background patterns or colors which are intended to convey specific information.

For transport, pictograms (Table 4.10) will have the background, symbol and colors currently used in the UN Recommendations on the Transport of Dangerous Goods, Model Regulations. For other sectors, pictograms (Table 4.9) will have a black symbol on a white background with a red diamond frame.

A black frame may be used for shipments within one country. Where a transport pictogram appears, the GHS pictogram for the same hazard should not appear.

4.3.2 Signal Words

The signal word indicates the relative degree of severity a hazard. The signal words used in the GHS are

"**Danger**" for the more severe hazards, and
"**Warning**" for the less severe hazards.

Signal words are standardized and assigned to the hazard categories within endpoints. Some lower level hazard categories do not use signal words. Only one signal word corresponding to the class of the most severe hazard should be used on a label.

4.3.3 Hazard Statements

Hazard statements are standardized and assigned phrases that describe the hazard(s) as determined by hazard classification. An appropriate statement for each GHS hazard should be included on the label for products possessing more than one hazard. The assigned label elements are provided in each hazard chapter of the Purple Book as well as in Annexes 1 & 2. Figure 4-11 illustrates the assignment of standardized GHS label elements for the acute oral toxicity categories.

Figure 4.9

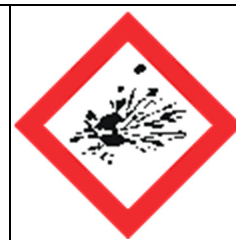
GHS Pictograms and Hazard Classes		
		
Oxidizers	Flammables Self Reactives Pyrophorics Self-Heating Emits Flammable Gas Organic Peroxides	Explosives Self Reactives Organic Peroxides
		
Acute toxicity (severe)	Corrosives	Gases Under Pressure
		
Carcinogen Respiratory Sensitizer Reproductive Toxicity Target Organ Toxicity Mutagenicity Aspiration Toxicity	Environmental Toxicity	Irritant Dermal Sensitizer Acute toxicity (harmful) Narcotic Effects Respiratory Tract Irritation

Figure 4.10

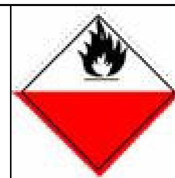
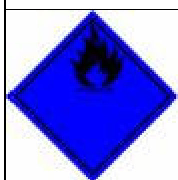
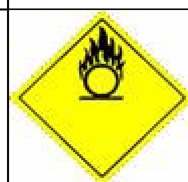
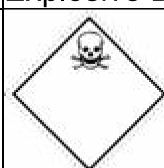
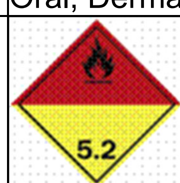
Transport "Pictograms"		
		
Flammable Liquid Flammable Gas Flammable Aerosol	Flammable solid Self-Reactive Substances	Pyrophorics (Spontaneously Combustible) Self-Heating Substances
		
Substances, which in contact with water, emit flammable gases (Dangerous When Wet)	Oxidizing Gases Oxidizing Liquids Oxidizing Solids	Explosive Divisions 1.1, 1.2, 1.3
		
Explosive Division 1.4	Explosive Division 1.5	Explosive Division 1.6
		
Compressed Gases	Acute Toxicity (Poison): Oral, Dermal, Inhalation	Corrosive
		
Marine Pollutant	Organic Peroxides	

Figure 4.11

ACUTE ORAL TOXICITY - Annex 1					
	Category 1	Category 2	Category 3	Category 4	Category 5
LD50	Less 5 mg/kg	> 5 < 50 mg/kg	³ 50 < 300 mg/kg	³ 300 < 2000 mg/kg	³ 2000 < 5000 mg/kg
Pictogram					No symbol
Signal word	Danger	Danger	Danger	Warning	Warning
Hazard statement	Fatal if swallowed	Fatal if swallowed	Toxic if swallowed	Harmful if swallowed	May be harmful if swallowed

Other GHS label elements include:

- ✓ Precautionary Statements and Pictograms: Measures to minimize or prevent adverse effects.
- ✓ Product Identifier (ingredient disclosure): Name or number used for a hazardous product on a label or in the SDS.
- ✓ Supplier identification: The name, address and telephone number should be provided on the label.
- ✓ Supplemental information: non-harmonized information.

4.3.4 Precautionary Statements and Pictograms
Precautionary information supplements the hazard information by briefly providing measures to be taken to minimize or prevent adverse effects from physical, health or environmental hazards.

First aid is included in precautionary information. The GHS label should include appropriate precautionary information. Annex 3 of the GHS Purple Book includes precautionary statements and pictograms that can be used on labels.

Annex 3 includes four types of precautionary statements covering: prevention, response in cases of accidental spillage or exposure, storage, and disposal. The precautionary statements have been linked to each GHS hazard statement and type of hazard. The goal is to promote consistent use of precautionary statements. Annex 3 is guidance and is expected to be further refined and developed over time.

4.3.5 Product Identifier (Ingredient Disclosure)
A product identifier should be used on a GHS label and it should match the product identifier used on the SDS. Where a substance or mixture is covered by the UN Model Regulations on the Transport of Dangerous Goods, the UN proper shipping name should also be used on the package.

The GHS label for a substance should include the chemical identity of the substance (name as determined by IUPAC, ISO, CAS or technical name). For mixtures/alloys, the label should include the chemical identities of all ingredients that contribute to acute toxicity, skin corrosion or serious eye damage, germ cell mutagenicity, carcinogenicity, reproductive toxicity, skin or respiratory sensitization, or Target Organ Systemic Toxicity (TOST), when these hazards appear on the label. Where a product is supplied exclusively for workplace use, the Competent Authority may give suppliers discretion to include chemical identities on the SDS, in lieu of including them on labels. The Competent Authority rules for confidential business information (CBI) take priority over the rules for product identification.

4.3.6 Supplier Identification
The name, address and telephone number of the manufacturer or supplier of the product should be provided on the label.

4.3.7 Supplemental Information
Supplemental label information is non-harmonized information on the container of a hazardous product that is not required or specified under the GHS. In some cases, this information may be required by a Competent Authority or it may be additional information provided at the discretion of the manufacturer/distributor. The GHS provides guidance to ensure that supplemental information does not lead to wide variation in information or undermine the GHS information.

Supplemental information may be used to provide further detail that does not contradict or cast doubt on the validity of the standardized hazard information. It also may be used to provide information about hazards not yet incorporated into the GHS. The labeler should have the option of providing supplementary information related to the hazard, such as physical state or route of exposure, with the hazard statement.

4.4 How are multiple hazards handled on labels?
Where a substance or mixture presents more than one GHS hazard, there is a GHS precedence scheme for pictograms and signal words. For substances and mixtures covered by the UN Recommendations on the Transport of Dangerous Goods, Model Regulations, the precedence of symbols for physical hazards should follow the rules of the UN Model Regulations. For health hazards the following principles of precedence apply for symbols:

(a) if the skull and crossbones applies, the exclamation mark should not appear;
(b) if the corrosive symbol applies, the exclamation mark should not appear where it is used for skin or eye irritation;

(c) if the health hazard symbol appears for respiratory sensitization, the exclamation mark should not appear where it is used for skin sensitization or for skin or eye irritation.

If the signal word 'Danger' applies, the signal word 'Warning' should not appear. All assigned hazard statements should appear on the label. The Competent Authority may choose to specify the order in which they appear.

4.5 Is there a specific GHS label format / layout?
The GHS hazard pictograms, signal word and hazard statements should be located together on the label. The actual label format or layout is not specified in the GHS. National authorities may choose to specify where information should appear on the label or allow supplier discretion.

Figure 4.12 shows an example of a GHS label for the fictional product 'ToxiFlam'. The core GHS label elements are expected to replace the need for the array of different labels shown earlier for ToxiFlam. (Figure 4.8 also illustrates the GHS label elements.)

The written program should provide enough details about the employer's plans in this area to assess whether or not a good faith effort is being made to train employees. OSHA does not expect that every worker will be able to recite all of the information about each chemical in the workplace.

In general, the most important aspects of training under the HCS are to ensure that employees are aware that they are exposed to hazardous chemicals, that they know how to read and use labels and material safety data sheets, and that, as a consequence of learning this information, they are following the appropriate protective measures established by the employer.

OSHA compliance officers will be talking to employees to determine if they have received training, if they know they are exposed to hazardous chemicals, and if they know where to obtain substance-specific information on labels and SDSs.

Figure 4.12 Example GHS Inner Container Label (e.g., bottle inside a shipping box)

ToxiFlam (Contains: XYZ)

Danger! Toxic If Swallowed, Flammable Liquid and Vapor

Do not eat, drink or use tobacco when using this product. Wash hands thoroughly after handling.
Keep container tightly closed. Keep away from heat/sparks/open flame. - No smoking. Wear protective gloves and eye/face protection. Ground container and receiving equipment. Use explosion-proof electrical equipment. Take precautionary measures against static discharge.
Use only non-sparking tools. Store in cool/well-ventilated place.
IF SWALLOWED: Immediately call a POISON CONTROL CENTER or doctor/physician. Rinse mouth.

In case of fire, use water fog, dry chemical, CO2, or "alcohol" foam.
See Material Safety Data Sheet for further details regarding safe use of this product.

MyCompany, MyStreet, MyTown NJ 00000, Tel: 444 999 9999

There has been discussion about the size of GHS pictograms and that a GHS pictogram might be confused with a transport pictogram or "diamond". Transport pictograms (Table 4.10) are different in appearance than the GHS pictograms (Table 4.9). Annex 7 of the Purple Book explains how the GHS pictograms are expected to be proportional to the size of the label text. So that generally the GHS pictograms would be smaller than the transport pictograms.

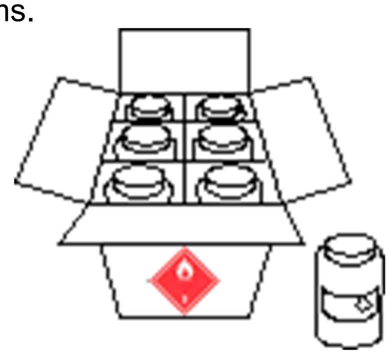


Figure 4.13 Combination Packaging (Outer box with inner bottles)

Several arrangements for GHS labels are also provided in Annex 7 of the Purple Book. Figure 4.13 shows an arrangement for a combination packaging with an outer shipping box and inner bottles. The shipping box has a transportation pictogram. The inner bottles have a GHS label with a GHS pictogram.

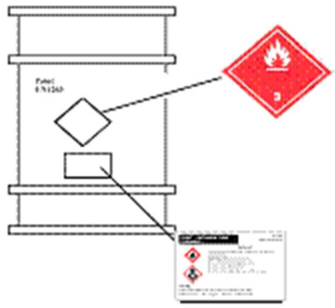


Figure 4.14 Combination Packaging (Outer box with inner bottles)

For a container such as a 55-gallon drum, the transport required markings and pictograms may be combined with the GHS label elements or presented separately. In Figure 4.14 a label arrangement for a single packaging such as a 55-gallon drum is shown. Pictograms and markings required by the transport regulations as well as GHS label and non-duplicative GHS pictogram are shown on the drum.

A label merging the transportation requirements and the GHS requirements into one label for the fictional product "ToxiFlam" is shown in Figure 4.15. This combined type label could also be used on a 55-gallon drum.

Figure 4.15 Example GHS Outer Container Label (55 gallon/200-liter drum)

ToxiFlam	Flammable liquids, toxic, n.o.s.
Danger! Toxic If Swallowed	(contains XYZ)
Flammable Liquid and Vapor	UN 1992

Do not eat, drink or use tobacco when using this product. Wash hands thoroughly after handling. Keep container tightly closed. Keep away from heat/sparks/open flame. - No smoking. Wear protective gloves and eye/face protection. Ground container and receiving equipment. Use explosion-proof electrical equipment. Take precautionary measures against static discharge. Use only non-sparking tools. Store in cool/well-ventilated place

IF SWALLOWED: Immediately call a POISON CONTROL CENTER or doctor/physician. Rinse mouth.

In case of fire, use water fog, dry chemical, CO2, or "alcohol" foam.

See Material Safety Data Sheet for further details regarding safe use of this product.

MyCompany, MyStreet, MyTown NJ 00000, Tel: 444 999 9999

Figure 4.14

Minimum information for an SDS

1.	Identification of the substance or mixture and of the supplier	GHS product identifier. Other means of identification. Recommended use of the chemical and restrictions on use. Supplier's details (including name, address, phone number, etc.). Emergency phone number.
2.	Hazards identification	GHS classification of the substance/mixture and any national or regional information. GHS label elements, including precautionary statements. (Hazard symbols may be provided as a graphical reproduction of the symbols in black and white or the name of the symbol, e.g., flame, skull and crossbones.) Other hazards which do not result in classification (e.g., dust explosion hazard) or are not covered by the GHS.
3.	Composition/information on ingredients	Substance Chemical identity. Common name, synonyms, etc. CAS number, EC number, etc. Impurities and stabilizing additives which are themselves classified and which contribute to the classification of the substance. Mixture The chemical identity and concentration or concentration ranges of all ingredients which are hazardous within the meaning of the GHS and are present above their cutoff levels. NOTE: For information on ingredients, the competent authority rules for CBI take priority over the rules for product identification.

4.	First aid measures	Description of necessary measures, subdivided according to the different routes of exposure, i.e., inhalation, skin and eye contact, and ingestion. Most important symptoms/effects, acute and delayed. Indication of immediate medical attention and special treatment needed, if necessary.
5.	Firefighting measures	Suitable (and unsuitable) extinguishing media. Specific hazards arising from the chemical (e.g., nature of any hazardous combustion products). Special protective equipment and precautions for firefighters.
6.	Accidental release measures	Personal precautions, protective equipment and emergency procedures. Environmental precautions. Methods and materials for containment and cleaning up.
7.	Handling and storage	Precautions for safe handling. Conditions for safe storage, including any incompatibilities.
8.	Exposure controls/personal protection.	Control parameters, e.g., occupational exposure limit values or biological limit values. Appropriate engineering controls. Individual protection measures, such as personal protective equipment.
9.	Physical and chemical properties	Appearance (physical state, color, etc.). Odor. Odor threshold. pH. melting point/freezing point. initial boiling point and boiling range. flash point. evaporation rate. flammability (solid, gas). upper/lower flammability or explosive limits. vapor pressure. vapor density. relative density. solubility(ies). partition coefficient: n-octanol/water. autoignition temperature. decomposition temperature.

10.	Stability and reactivity	Chemical stability. Possibility of hazardous reactions. Conditions to avoid (e.g., static discharge, shock or vibration). Incompatible materials. Hazardous decomposition products.
11.	Toxicological information	Concise but complete and comprehensible description of the various toxicological (health) effects and the available data used to identify those effects, including: information on the likely routes of exposure (inhalation, ingestion, skin and eye contact); Symptoms related to the physical, chemical and toxicological characteristics; Delayed and immediate effects and also chronic effects from short- and long-term exposure; Numerical measures of toxicity (such as acute toxicity estimates).
12.	Ecological information	Ecotoxicity (aquatic and terrestrial, where available). Persistence and degradability. Bioaccumulative potential. Mobility in soil. Other adverse effects.
13.	Disposal considerations	Description of waste residues and information on their safe handling and methods of disposal, including the disposal of any contaminated packaging.
14.	Transport information	UN Number. UN Proper shipping name. Transport Hazard class(es). Packing group, if applicable. Marine pollutant (Yes/No). Special precautions which a user needs to be aware of or needs to comply with in connection with transport or conveyance either within or outside their premises.
15.	Regulatory information	Safety, health and environmental regulations specific for the product in question.
16.	Other information including information on preparation and revision of the SDS	

4.9 What is the difference between the GHS SDS and existing MSDSs/SDSs?
SDSs are in use globally. So it is useful to have an understanding of the similarities and differences in the existing MSDS/SDS content and format and the GHS SDS content and format. A table comparing MSDS/SDS content/format is provided in Appendix A of this guidance document.

4.10 When should SDSs and labels be updated?
All hazard communication systems should specify a means of responding in an appropriate and timely manner to new information and updating labels and SDS information accordingly. Updating should be carried out promptly on receipt of the information that necessitates the revision. The Competent Authority may choose to specify a time limit within which the information should be revised.

Suppliers should respond to "new and significant" information they receive about a chemical hazard by updating the label and safety data sheet for that chemical. New and significant information is any information that changes the GHS classification and leads to a change in the label information or information that may affect the SDS.

4.11 How does the GHS address Confidential Business Information (CBI)?
Confidential business information (CBI) will not be harmonized under the GHS. National authorities should establish appropriate mechanisms for CBI protection. The GHS established CBI principles which include:
CBI provisions should not compromise the health and safety of users;

CBI claims should be limited to the names of chemicals and their concentrations in mixtures; Mechanisms should be established for disclosure in emergency and non-emergency situations.

4.12 Does the GHS address training?
The GHS states in Chapter 1.4, Section1.4.9, the importance of training all target audiences to recognize and interpret label and/or SDS information, and to take appropriate action in response to chemical hazards. Training requirements should be appropriate for and commensurate with the nature of the work or exposure. Key target audiences include workers, emergency responders and also those responsible for developing labels and SDSs.

To varying degrees, the training needs of additional target audiences have to be addressed. These should include training for persons involved in transport and strategies required for educating consumers in interpreting label information on products that they use.

How will labels change under the revised Hazard Communication Standard?
Under the current Hazard Communication Standard (HCS), the label preparer must provide the identity of the chemical, and the appropriate hazard warnings. This may be done in a variety of ways, and the method to convey the information is left to the preparer. Under the revised HCS, once the hazard classification is completed, the standard specifies what information is to be provided for each hazard class and category.

Labels will require the following elements:
Pictogram: a symbol plus other graphic elements, such as a border, background pattern, or color that is intended to convey specific information about the hazards of a chemical. Each pictogram consists of a different symbol on a white background within a red square frame set on a point (i.e. a red diamond). There are nine pictograms under the GHS. However, only eight pictograms are required under the HCS.

Signal words: a single word used to indicate the relative level of severity of hazard and alert the reader to a potential hazard on the label. The signal words used are "danger" and "warning." "Danger" is used for the more severe hazards, while "warning" is used for less severe hazards.

Hazard Statement: a statement assigned to a hazard class and category that describes the nature of the hazard(s) of a chemical, including, where appropriate, the degree of hazard.

Precautionary Statement: a phrase that describes recommended measures to be taken to minimize or prevent adverse effects resulting from exposure to a hazardous chemical, or improper storage or handling of a hazardous chemical.

What pictograms are required in the revised Hazard Communication Standard? What hazard does each identify?
There are nine pictograms under the GHS to convey the health, physical and environmental hazards. The final Hazard Communication Standard (HCS) requires eight of these pictograms, the exception being the environmental pictogram, as environmental hazards are not within OSHA's jurisdiction.

Can I use a black border on pictograms for domestic shipment?
Under the revised Hazard Communication Standard (HCS), pictograms must have red borders. OSHA believes that the use of the red frame will increase recognition and comprehensibility. Therefore, the red frame is required regardless of whether the shipment is domestic or international.

Will OSHA allow blank red borders?
The revised Hazard Communication Standard (HCS) requires that all red borders printed on the label have a symbol printed inside it. If OSHA were to allow blank red borders, workers may be confused about what they mean and concerned that some information is missing.

OSHA has determined that prohibiting the use of blank red borders on labels is necessary to provide the maximum recognition and impact of warning labels and to ensure that users do not get desensitized to the warnings placed on labels.

When must label information be updated?
In the revised Hazard Communication Standard (HCS), OSHA is lifting the stay on enforcement regarding the provision to update labels when new information on hazards becomes available. Chemical manufacturers, importers, distributors, or employers who become newly aware of any significant information regarding the hazards of a chemical shall revise the labels for the chemical within six months of becoming aware of the new information, and shall ensure that labels on containers of hazardous chemicals shipped after that time contain the new information.

If the chemical is not currently produced or imported, the chemical manufacturer, importer, distributor, or employer shall add the information to the label before the chemical is shipped or introduced into the workplace again.

How will workplace labeling provisions be changing under the revised Hazard Communication Standard?
The current standard provides employers with flexibility regarding the type of system to be used in their workplaces and OSHA has retained that flexibility in the revised Hazard Communication Standard (HCS). Employers may choose to label workplace containers either with the same label that would be on shipped containers for the chemical under the revised rule, or with label alternatives that meet the requirements for the standard.

Alternative labeling systems such as the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) 704 Hazard Rating and the Hazardous Material Information System (HMIS) are permitted for workplace containers. However, the information supplied on these labels must be consistent with the revised HCS, e.g., no conflicting hazard warnings or pictograms.

How is the Safety Data Sheet (SDS) changing under the revised Hazard Communication Standard?
The information required on the safety data sheet (SDS) will remain essentially the same as that in the current standard. The current Hazard Communication Standard (HCS) indicates what information has to be included on an SDS but does not specify a format for presentation or order of information.

The revised HCS requires that the information on the SDS is presented using consistent headings in a specified sequence. Paragraph (g) of the final rule indicates the headings of information to be included on the SDS and the order in which they are to be provided. In addition, Appendix D indicates what information is to be included under each heading. The SDS format is the same as the ANSI standard format which is widely used in the U.S. and is already familiar to many employees.

HCS Pictograms and Hazards

Health Hazard 	Flame 	Exclamation Mark 
• Carcinogen • Mutagenicity • Reproductive Toxicity • Respiratory Sensitizer • Target Organ Toxicity • Aspiration Toxicity	• Flammables • Pyrophorics • Self-Heating • Emits Flammable Gas • Self-Reactives • Organic Peroxides	• Irritant (skin and eye) • Skin Sensitizer • Acute Toxicity (harmful) • Narcotic Effects • Respiratory Tract Irritant • Hazardous to Ozone Layer (Non Mandatory)
Gas Cylinder 	Corrosion 	Exploding Bomb 
• Gases under Pressure	• Skin Corrosion/ burns • Eye Damage • Corrosive to Metals	• Explosives • Self-Reactives • Organic Peroxides
Flame over Circle 	Environment (Non Mandatory) 	Skull and Crossbones 
• Oxidizers	• Aquatic Toxicity	• Acute Toxicity (fatal or toxic)

UNSTABLE EXPLOSIVES

FLAMMABLE

OXIDIZER

COMPRESSED GAS

CORROSIVE

ACUTE TOXICITY

ACUTE TOXICITY
(skin & eye irritant)

HUMAN HEALTH HAZARD

ACUTE/CHRONIC HAZARDS

GLOBALLY HARMONIZED SYSTEM CLASSIFCATION LABELS

The format of the 16-section SDS should include the following sections:

Section 1. Identification
Section 2. Hazard(s) identification
Section 3. Composition/information on ingredients
Section 4. First-Aid measures
Section 5. Fire-fighting measures
Section 6. Accidental release measures
Section 7. Handling and storage
Section 8. Exposure controls/personal protection
Section 9. Physical and chemical properties
Section 10. Stability and reactivity
Section 11. Toxicological information
Section 12. Ecological information
Section 13. Disposal considerations
Section 14. Transport information
Section 15. Regulatory information
Section 16. Other information, including date of preparation or last revision
Sections 12-15 may be included in the SDS, but are not required by OSHA.

Will TLVs be required on the Safety Data Sheet (SDS)?
OSHA is retaining the requirement to include the American Conference of Government Industrial Hygienists (ACGIH) Threshold Limit Values (TLVs) on the safety data sheet (SDS) in the revised Standard. OSHA finds that requiring TLVs on the SDS will provide employers and employees with useful information to help them assess the hazards presented by their workplaces. In addition to TLVs, OSHA permissible exposure limits (PELs), and any other exposure limit used or recommended by the chemical manufacturer, importer, or employer preparing the safety data sheet are also required.

May the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) and the National Toxicology Program (NTP) lists be used to make carcinogen classifications?
In the revised Hazard Communication Standard (HCS), OSHA has provided classifiers with the option of relying on the classification listings of IARC and NTP to make classification decisions regarding carcinogenicity, rather than applying the criteria themselves. OSHA believes that this will make classification easier for classifiers, as well as lead to greater consistency.

In addition, OSHA has provided in non-mandatory Appendix F of the revised rule, guidance on hazard classification for carcinogenicity. Part A of Appendix F includes background guidance provided by GHS based on the Preamble of the IARC "Monographs on the Evaluation of Carcinogenic Risks to Humans" (2006).

Will the International Agency for Research on Cancer (IARC) and the National Toxicology Program (NTP) classifications be required on the Safety Data Sheet (SDS)?
OSHA has retained the requirement to include IARC and NTP classifications on safety data sheets (SDSs). Therefore, if a chemical is listed as a carcinogen by either IARC or NTP, it must be noted on the SDS. Additionally, if OSHA finds a chemical to be a carcinogen, it must be noted on the SDS as well.

How has OSHA addressed hazards covered under the current Hazard Communication Standard that have not been addressed by the GHS?
In the Notice of Proposed Rulemaking (NPRM), OSHA proposed to include hazards currently covered under the Hazard Communication Standard (HCS) that have yet to be addressed by the GHS (OSHA provided several examples: simple asphyxiants, and combustible dust) in a separate category called "Unclassified Hazards". In response to comments from the regulated community, OSHA has renamed the category to "Hazards Not Otherwise Classified (HNOC)" to minimize confusion. In the final HCS, HNOC hazards will not be required to be disclosed on the label but will be required to be disclosed in section 2 of the Safety Data Sheet (SDS).

This reflects how GHS recommends these hazards should be disclosed. Chemical manufacturers and importers are expected to assess these hazards when they are conducting their hazard evaluation of physical and health hazards. A new or separate evaluation is not required. Also in the final standard, in response to comments, OSHA has removed pyrophoric gases, simple asphyxiants, and combustible dust from the HNOC hazard category and has addressed these chemicals individually (see question below for more information on each hazard).

How has OSHA addressed pyrophoric gases, simple asphyxiants, and combustible dust?
In the revised Hazard Communication Standard (HCS), OSHA has added pyrophoric gases, simple asphyxiants and combustible dust to the definition of "hazardous chemical". OSHA has also added definitions to the revised HCS for pyrophoric gases and simple asphyxiants, and provided guidance on how to define combustible dust for the purposes of complying with the HCS.

Pyrophoric gases:
OSHA has retained the definition for pyrophoric gases from the current HCS. Pyrophoric gases must be addressed both on container labels and SDSs. OSHA has provided label elements for pyrophoric gases which include the signal word "danger" and the hazard statement "catches fire spontaneously if exposed to air".

Simple asphyxiants:
OSHA has revised the definition of simple asphyxiants that was proposed in the Notice of Proposed Rulemaking (NPRM) as a result of comments from the regulated community. In the final HCS, simple asphyxiants must be labeled where appropriate, and be addressed on SDSs.

OSHA has provided label elements for simple asphyxiants which include the signal word "warning" and the hazard statement "may displace oxygen and cause rapid suffocation".

Combustible dust:
OSHA has not provided a definition for combustible dust to the final HCS given ongoing activities in the specific rulemaking, as well as in the United Nations Sub-Committee of Experts on the GHS (UN/SCEGHS). However, guidance is being provided through existing documents, including the Combustible Dust National Emphasis Program Directive CPL 03-00-008, which includes an operative definition, as well as provides information about current responsibilities in this area. In addition, there are a number of voluntary industry consensus standards (particularly those of the NFPA) that address combustible dust.

In the final HCS, combustible dust hazards must be addressed on labels and SDSs. Label elements are provided for combustible dust in the final HCS and include the signal word "warning" and the hazard statement "May form combustible dust concentrations in the air".

For chemicals in a solid form that do not present a combustible dust hazard, but may form combustible dusts while being processed in normal downstream uses, paragraph (f)(4) of the HCS allows the chemical manufacturer some flexibility in labeling requirements. The manufacturer or importer to may transmit the label to the customer at the time of the initial shipment, but the label does not need to be included with subsequent shipments unless it changes. This provides the needed information to the downstream users on the potential hazards in the workplace, while acknowledging that the solid metal or other materials do not present the same hazards that are produced when these materials are processed under normal conditions of use.

How many businesses and workers would be affected by the revised Hazard Communication Standard?
OSHA estimates that over 5 million workplaces in the United States would be affected by the revised Hazard Communication Standard (HCS). These are all those workplaces where employees—a total of approximately 43 million of them—could be exposed to hazardous chemicals. Included among these 5 million workplaces are an estimated 90,000 establishments that create hazardous chemicals; these chemical producers employ almost 3 million workers.

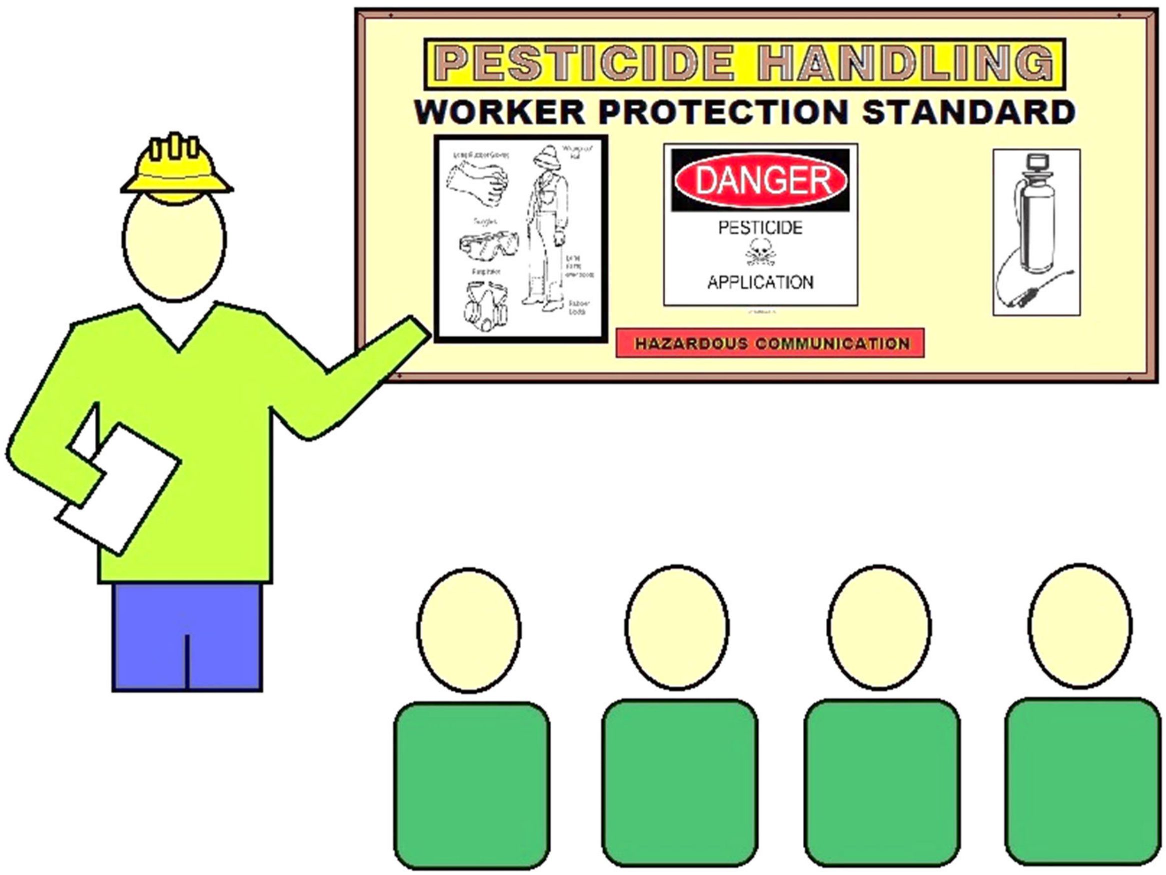
What are the estimated overall costs for industry to comply with the revised Hazard Communication Standard?
The revised Hazard Communications Standard's (HCS) total cost, an estimated $201 million a year on an annualized basis for the entire United States, is the sum of four major cost elements. (1) OSHA estimates that the cost of classifying chemical hazards in accordance with the GHS criteria and revising safety data sheets and labels to meet new format and content requirements would be $22.5 million a year on an annualized basis. (2) OSHA estimates that training for employees to become familiar with new warning symbols and the revised safety data sheet format under GHS would cost $95.4 million a year on an annualized basis. (3) OSHA estimated annualized costs of $59 million a year for management to become familiar with the new GHS system and to engage in other management-related activities as may be necessary for industry's adoption of GHS. (4) OSHA estimated annualized costs of $24.1 million for printing packaging and labels for hazardous chemicals in color.

What are the estimated benefits attributable to the revised Hazard Communication Standard?
OSHA expects that the modifications to the Hazard Communication Standard (HCS) will result in increased safety and health for the affected employees and reduce the numbers of accidents, fatalities, injuries, and illnesses associated with exposures to hazardous chemicals. The GHS revisions to the HCS standard for labeling and safety data sheets would enable employees exposed to workplace chemicals to more quickly obtain and to more easily understand information about the hazards associated with those chemicals.

In addition, the revisions to HCS are expected to improve the use of appropriate exposure controls and work practices that can reduce the safety and health risks associated with exposure to hazardous chemicals.

OSHA estimates that the revised HCS will result in the prevention of 43 fatalities and 585 injuries and illnesses (318 non-lost-workday injuries and illnesses, 203 lost-workday injuries and illnesses, and 64 chronic illnesses) annually. The monetized value of this reduction in occupational risks is an estimated $250 million a year on an annualized basis.

OSHA estimates that the revised HCS will result in savings of $475.2 million from productivity improvements for health and safety managers and logistics personnel, $32.2 million during periodic updating of SDSs and labels, and $285.3 million from simplified hazard communication training.



All of this text is credited to OSHA.

Different Types of Chemical Hazards

Chemicals cause health hazards if they are:
Target organ chemicals—they injure specific organs in your body.
Toxic—cause illness or death. Toxic chemicals are determined on the basis of tests on laboratory animals that are exposed to a given chemical through either inhalation, ingestion, or skin absorption.
Corrosive—can destroy your skin or eyes.
Irritants—cause reversible inflammation when they make contact with living tissue.
Carcinogens—have been known to cause cancer or have the potential of causing cancer in humans.
Sensitizers—can cause an allergic reaction on subsequent repeated exposures.
Neurotoxins—produce toxic effects primarily on the central nervous system.
Nephrotoxins—Produce toxic effects on kidneys.
Reproductive toxins—have the potential to adversely affect the reproductive system.
Hepatotoxins—can adversely affect the liver.
Lung hazards—can irritate or damage pulmonary tissue.
Skin hazards—can affect the dermal layer of the body, resulting in rashes and irritation.
Eye hazards—can adversely affect the eye or diminish the visual capacity of a human.
Blood system hazards—caused by chemicals that decrease the hemoglobin function; depriving of oxygen. Chemicals that present physical hazards and are covered by the Hazard Communication Standard include combustible liquids, flammable materials, all compressed gases, explosives, organic peroxides, oxidizers, pyrophoric materials, unstable materials, and water-reactive materials.
Fire hazards—chemicals that have the potential for creating a fire or aiding an ongoing fire. These materials are flammables, combustibles, oxidizers, pyrophoric materials, and organic peroxides.
Flammables—catch fire quickly.
Oxidizers—capable of initiating or promoting a fire in other compounds by the release of oxygen or other gases.
Pyrophoric materials—can be ignited as a result of contact with oxygen in the absence of an ignition source at temperature below 130°F.
Organic peroxides—contain both fuel, in the form of carbon, and excess oxygen, and thus can pose a severe fire hazard.
Compressed gases—all compressed gases pose a physical hazard.
Explosive materials—can be decomposed in a violent chemical reaction with the production of heat, pressure, and large quantities of gas.
Unstable materials—certain compounds in their pure form can undergo vigorous decomposition or polymerization under moderate conditions of shock, pressure, or temperature.
Water-reactive compounds—can react vigorously with water to produce a toxic or flammable gas.

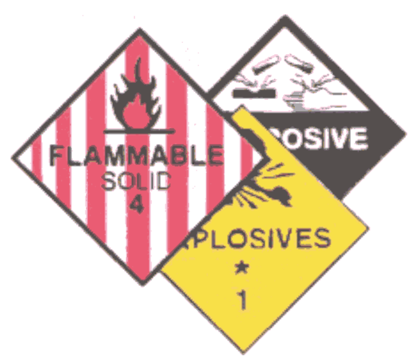
Identifying Hazardous Chemicals

Chemical manufacturers have to let users know about hazards. They do this by providing, for each product, a container label which gives a quick overview of the chemical, and an MSDS which offers more complete information.

Label Information
Hazardous chemical containers are labeled by the manufacturer. The label format may differ from company to company, but all labels must contain the same information. This makes it easy to determine at a glance a chemical's possible hazards and the basic steps that employees must take to protect themselves.

The label may use words or symbols to tell you:
The chemical's identity and its components (unless they're part of the manufacturer's trade secrets, which do not have to be revealed)
The name and address of the company that made or imported the chemical

Specific hazard warnings, such as physical or health hazards. Labels may also include:
Precautionary measures, such as basic protective clothing, equipment, and procedures to work safely
Proper handling and storage instructions
First-aid instructions
Special instructions concerning children



SDS Information
Each company should have on file an SDS for every chemical and hazardous product in the workplace. SDSs describe everything an employee needs to know about the chemical.

Employees must read the SDS before starting a job to know what they're working with and how to handle it safely. Though individual SDSs may give a different amount of information, they all contain similar types of information.

Common SDS Definitions

Health Hazards

acute: resulting from a single exposure to a toxic or hazardous chemical.

allergen: a substance capable of causing an allergic response. An allergic response is an abnormal response of a hypersensitive person to chemical and physical stimuli.

biohazardous: describes an agent that is biological in nature and capable of self-replication and that has the capacity to produce deleterious effects on other biological organisms, particularly humans.

carcinogenic: describes a material capable of producing cancer in test animals and/or humans.

chronic: resulting from repeated exposure to sub-lethal doses of toxic or hazardous chemicals over a period of time.

cytotoxic: describes chemicals toxic to cells because of DNA disruption.

hazardous chemical: any chemical that is a physical or health hazard. The degree of hazard is generally based upon the extent of exposure or usage.

irritant: a non-corrosive material that causes a reversible inflammatory effect on living tissue by chemical action at the site of contact as a function of concentration or duration of exposure.

mutagenic: capable of producing genetic changes in animals and/or humans that are passed on to future generations of offspring.

reproductive toxin: any agent that has a harmful effect on the adult male or female reproductive system or a developing fetus or child. Such hazards have a variety of effects on people, including loss of sexual drive, mental disorders, impotence, infertility, sterility, mutagenic effects on germ cells, teratogenic effects on a fetus, and transplacental carcinogenesis.

sensitizer: a material that on first exposure causes little or no reaction in humans or test animals but that after repeated exposure may cause a marked response not necessarily limited to the contact site. Skin sensitization is the most common form. Respiratory sensitization to a few chemicals is also known to occur.

target organ effect: effects on specifically listed organs and systems, such as the liver, kidneys, nervous system, lungs, skin, and eyes, caused by exposure to a material.

teratogenic: describes a material capable of producing birth defects in animals and humans.

toxicity: the ability of a chemical to do harm to the human organism.

Physical Hazards

asphyxiant: a vapor or gas that can cause unconsciousness or death due to lack of oxygen. Most simple asphyxiants are harmful to the body only when they become so concentrated that they reduce the available oxygen to 18 percent of air.

boiling point: temperature at which a liquid boils or changes to a vapor.

combustible liquid: combustible liquids have a flash point of 100°F (38°C) or higher. Non-liquid materials, such as wood or paper, are classified as ordinary combustibles.

corrosive: a chemical that causes visible destruction of or irreversible alterations in living tissue by chemical action at the site of contact; a liquid that causes a severe corrosion rate in steel.

explosive: a chemical that causes sudden or instantaneous release of pressure, gas, and heat when subjected to sudden shock, pressure, or high temperature.

flammable liquid: defined as a liquid with a flash point below 100°F (38°C), a liquid that gives off vapors readily ignitable at room temperature.

oxidizer: a substance that yields oxygen readily to stimulate the combustion of other materials.

polymerization: a condition that occurs when a substance reacts with itself and releases heat that can lead to an explosion.

pyrophoric: capable of spontaneous ignition when exposed to air at temperatures of 130°F or below.

radioactive material: material that emits energy as alpha, beta, or gamma radiation from the nucleus of an atom. Always involves changes of one kind of atom into a different kind.

reactive material: a chemical substance or mixture that vigorously polymerizes, decomposes, condenses, or becomes self-reactive due to shock, pressure, or temperature. Includes materials or mixtures that fall within any of these categories: (1) organic peroxide, (2) pressure-generating material, and (3) water reactive material.

specific gravity: a mass-to-volume comparison relative to water (1). A specific gravity below 1 will float in water, above 1 will sink.

unstable reactive: a chemical that in its pure state, or as produced or transported, will vigorously polymerize, decompose, condense, or become self-reactive under conditions of shock, pressure, or temperature.

vapor density: compares a chemical's vapor density to air density (1). A vapor below 1 will rise in air, above 1 will sink.

vapor pressure: the higher the number, the faster a chemical evaporates, increasing inhalation risk.

water reactive agent: a chemical that reacts with water to release a gas that is either flammable or presents a health hazard.

Hazardous Limits

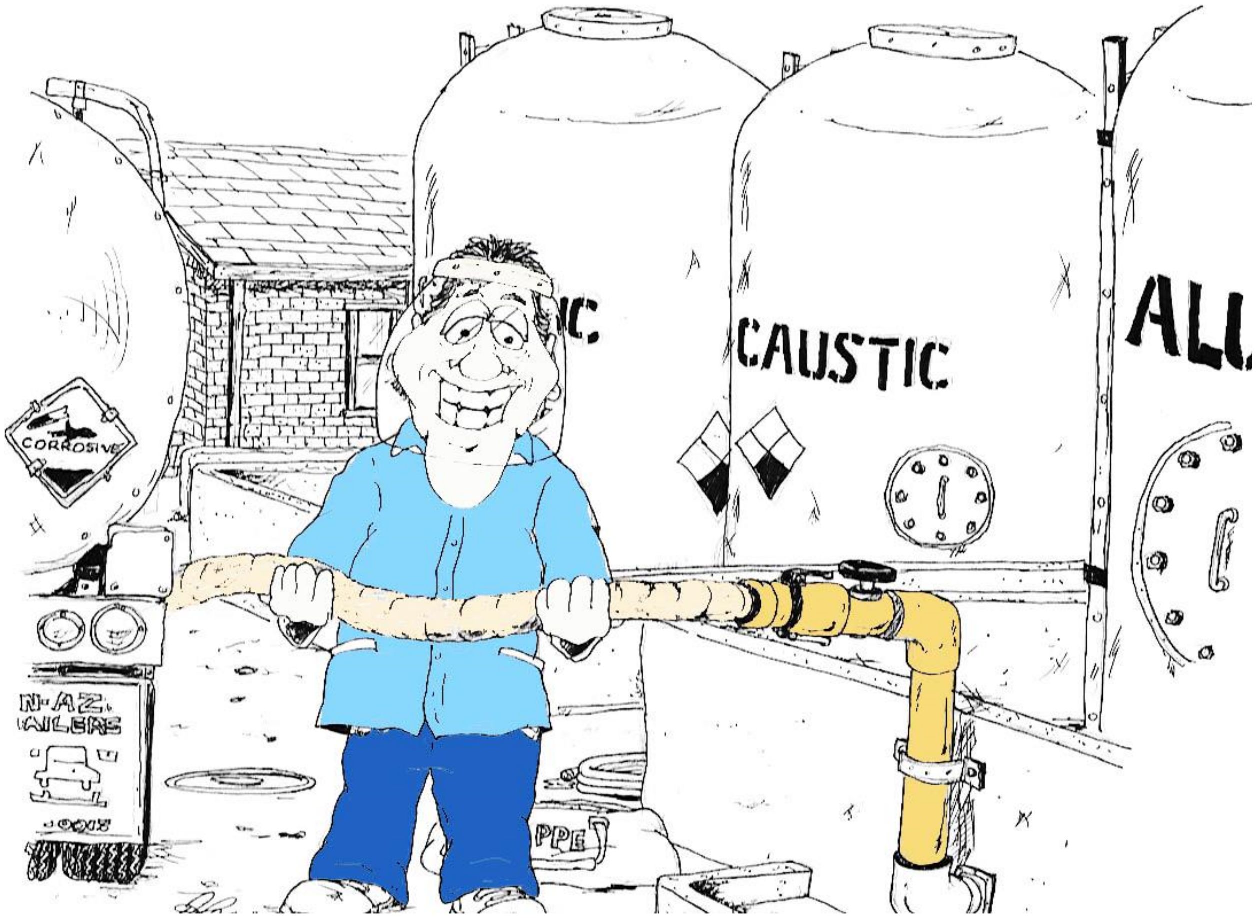
flash point: the lowest temperature at which a liquid gives off enough vapors to allow ignition

lower explosive limit (LEL): the lowest end of the range at which the gas or vapor level is sufficient to burn or explode if exposed to an ignition source. Below that level the mixture is too lean to burn.

permissible exposure limit (PEL): the averaged maximum concentration of a chemical in the air that a person can be exposed to repeatedly without developing health problems. Generally expressed in parts per million (ppm). Concentrations at or above the PEL make respiratory protection mandatory.

threshold limit value (TLV): the quantity of chemical exposure that an individual can tolerate on a daily or routine basis during his or her working life without incurring adverse effects from the exposure.

upper explosive limit (UEL): the upper end of the range at which the gas or vapor level is sufficient to burn or explode if exposed to an ignition source. Above that level the mixture is too rich to burn.



Many of us need to work inside confined spaces for the delivery of chemicals. Chemical reactivity is the ability of a material to undergo a chemical change. A chemical reaction may occur under conditions such as heating, burning, contact with other chemicals, or exposure to light.

Undesirable effects such as pressure buildup; temperature increase or formation of other hazardous chemicals may result. (See also Dangerously Reactive Material and Reactive Flammable Material.)

Hazard Communication Post Quiz

1. The Hazard Communication Standard in 1983 gave the workers the________________ but the new Globally Harmonized System gives workers the 'right to understand.'

2. Which of the following terms - allowed chemical manufacturers and importers to convey hazard information on labels and material safety data sheets in whatever format they chose?

3. _________________________ provides a single set of harmonized criteria for classifying chemicals according to their health and physical hazards and specifies hazard communication elements for labelling and safety data sheets?

4. The Safety Data Sheet is at the heart of federal OSHA's?

5. ______________________ is a detailed, written description of a hazardous chemical that must be kept in the workplace where such chemicals are used?

6. Which of the following terms - will provide a common and coherent approach to classifying chemicals and communicating hazard information on labels and safety data sheets?

7. Once implemented, the revised standard will improve the quality and consistency of hazard information in the workplace, making it safer for workers by providing easily understandable information on appropriate handling and safe use of?

8. In order to ensure - this missing term - in the workplace, information about the identities and hazards of the chemicals must be available and understandable to workers.

9. All employers with ______________in their workplaces must have labels and safety data sheets for their exposed workers, and train them to handle the chemicals appropriately.

10. Labels: Chemical manufacturers and importers will be required to provide a label that includes a harmonized signal word, pictogram, and hazard statement for each?

11. Information and training: Employers are required to train workers by December 1, 2013 on the new labels elements and safety data sheets format to facilitate?

12. The Globally Harmonized System is________________ to hazard communication, providing agreed criteria for classification of chemical hazards, and a standardized approach to label elements and safety data sheets.

13. The revised Hazard Communication Standard is a modification to the existing standard. The parts of the standard that did not relate to the __________- remained largely unchanged.

14. __________________ has been changed to "hazard classification" and "material safety data sheet" was changed to "safety data sheet."

15. Under the current _______________, the hazard determination provisions have definitions of hazard and the evaluator determines whether or not the data on a chemical meet those definitions.

16. The GHS is a system for ______________ the classification and labeling of chemicals. It is a logical and comprehensive approach to: Defining health, physical and environmental hazards of chemicals.

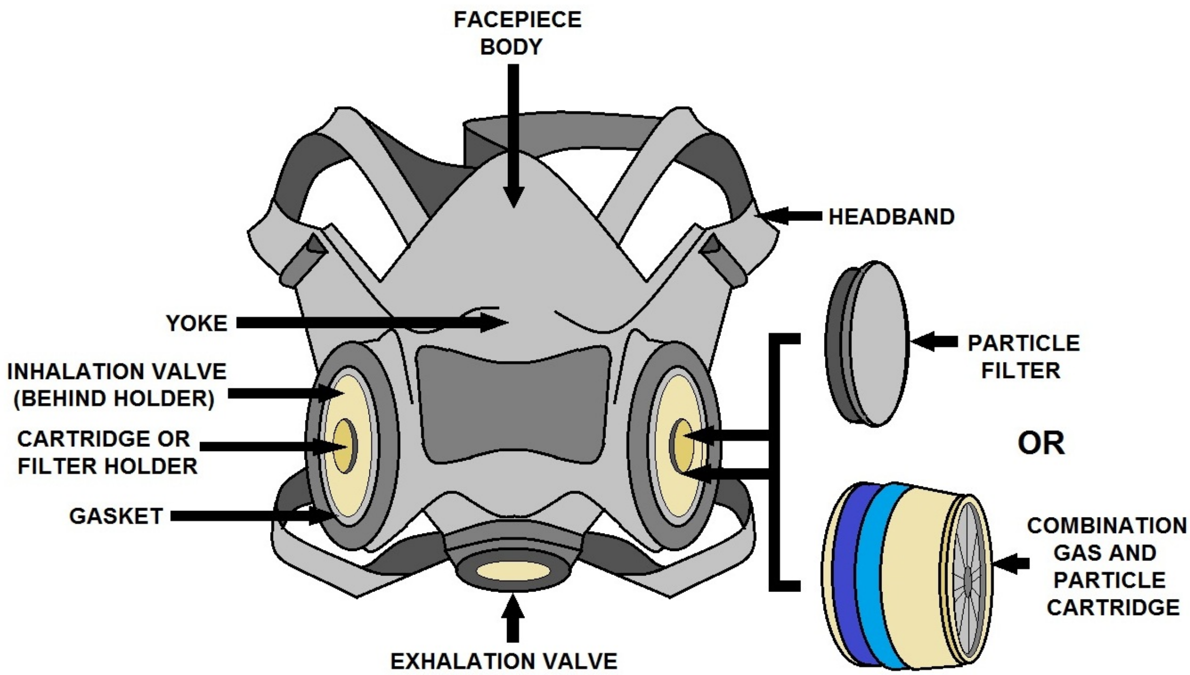
17. Creating classification processes that use available data on chemicals for comparison with the defined?

18. Having readily available information on the______________- and recommended control measures, allows the production, transport, use and disposal of chemicals to be managed safely. Thus, human health and the environment are protected.

Respiratory Protection Chapter

Section Focus: You will learn the basics of respiratory protection. At the end of this section, you the student will be able to understand and describe the need and rules regarding respiratory protection. There is a post quiz at the end of this section to review your comprehension and a final examination in the Assignment for your contact hours.

Scope/Background: OSHA 1910.134 – Respiratory Protection
(c) - Respiratory protection program. This paragraph requires the employer to develop and implement a written respiratory protection program with required worksite-specific procedures and elements for required respirator use. The program must be administered by a suitably trained program administrator.



BASIC PARTS OF A HALF-FACEPIECE RESPIRATOR

The primary means to control occupational diseases caused by breathing contaminated air is through the use of feasible engineering controls, such as enclosures, confinement of operations, ventilation, or substitution of less toxic materials

- When effective engineering controls are not feasible, or while they are being instituted, appropriate respirators shall be used pursuant to this standard
- Employer shall provide respirators, when necessary, which are applicable and suitable for the purpose intended
- Employer shall be responsible for establishment and maintenance of a respirator program which includes the requirements of paragraph (c), Respiratory protection program

What Is a Respirator?

As you are aware, a respirator is a type of device that is worn by an employee when working in an air contaminated environment. There are two ways respirators can be worn:

- Respirators that **fit tightly** are ones that are a half mask, which covers only the mouth and nose. There are also full facepieces that must fit closely to the areas that they are designed to fit.
- Respirators in the form of helmets, hoods, or body-suits **fit loosely** when worn.

You also know that there are two significant categories of respirators. The **air-purifying respirator** is designed to remove contaminants, such as airborne particles, from the air. The **atmosphere-supplying respirator**, on the other hand, is used to provide clean air from an area that is not contaminated. This type of breathing apparatus includes airline respirators that pump in compressed air via a hose connected to an isolated air source. Another type of atmosphere-supplying respirator produces its own air supply and is known as a **self-contained breathing apparatus**.

Respiratory Protection Introduction

In the Respiratory Protection program, hazard assessment and selection of proper respiratory PPE is conducted in the same manner as for other types of PPE. In the control of those occupational diseases caused by breathing air contaminated with harmful dusts, fogs, fumes, mists, gases, smokes, sprays, or vapors, the primary objective shall be to prevent atmospheric contamination.

This shall be accomplished as far as feasible by accepted engineering control measures (for example, enclosure or confinement of the operation, general and local ventilation, and substitution of less toxic materials). When effective engineering controls are not feasible, or while they are being instituted, appropriate respirators shall be used.
References: OSHA Standards *Respiratory Protection* (**29 CFR 1910.134**)

Why Respirators Are Needed
Respirators protect against the inhalation of dangerous substances (vapors, fumes, dust, gases). They can also provide a separate air supply in a very hazardous situation.

Some of the health hazards that respirators prevent include
- *Lung damage*
- *Respiratory diseases*
- *Cancer and other illnesses.*

Respiratory Protection Responsibilities
The employer is responsible for:
- Providing training in the use and care of respirators.
- Ensuring that equipment is adequate, sanitary, and reliable.
- Allowing employees to leave area if ill, for breaks, and to obtain parts.
- Fit testing.
- Providing annual medical evaluations.
- Providing a powered air-purifying respirator (**PAPR**) if an employee cannot wear a tight-fitting respirator.

The employee is responsible for:
- Properly using respirators.
- Maintaining respirator properly.
- Reporting malfunctions.
- Reporting medical changes.

Selection of Respiratory Protection
When choosing the correct respiratory protection for your work environment, it is important to consider:
- Identification of the substance or substances for which respiratory protection is necessary
- A substance's material safety data sheet (**MSDS**) (it will state which type of respirator is most effective for the substance)
- Activities of the workers
- Hazards of each substance and its properties

• Maximum levels of air contamination expected
• Probability of oxygen deficiency
• Period of time workers will need to use the respiratory protection devices
• Capabilities and physical limitations of the device used

Types of Respirators The following is a description of different types of respirators.
Commonly Used Respirators (*Air Purifying*)

- **Disposable Dust** masks are worn over the nose and mouth to protect the respiratory system from certain nuisance dusts, mists, etc. They can only provide protection against particular contaminants as specified by the manufacturer (e.g., general dust, fiberglass, etc.). These dust masks cannot be fit tested, and are generally single use. They are not generally recognized as proper respiratory protection and may not be worn if a potential for overexposure exists. They are not included in most companies' Respiratory Protection Programs.
- **Half-Face Respirators** with interchangeable filter cartridges can protect the respiratory system from hazardous dusts, fumes, mists, etc. They can only provide protection against certain contaminants up to limited concentrations specified by the manufacturer for the particular cartridge type used (e.g., toluene, acetone). These generally operate under negative pressure within the respirator which is created by the wearer's breathing through the filter cartridges. As the protection is only gained if there is a proper seal of the respirator face piece, this type requires fit testing prior to respirator assignment and a fit check prior to each use.
- **Full-Face Respirators** operate under the same principle and requirements as the half-face type, however, they offer a better facepiece fit and also protect the wearer's eyes from particularly irritating gases or vapors.
- **Full-face, helmet or hood type powered air purifying respirators** (**PAPRs**) operate under positive pressure inside the facepiece using a battery operated motor blower assembly to force air through a filter cartridge into the wearer's breathing zone. Use of these respirators is also subject to the manufacturers' guidelines.

Less Commonly Used Types Respirators (Air Supplying)

- **Air-Line Respirators** supply clean air through a small diameter hose from a compressor or compressed air cylinders. The wearer must be attached to the hose at all times, which limits mobility. Use of these respirators is subject to the manufacturers' guidelines.
- **Self-Contained Breathing Apparatus** (**SCBA**) respirators supply clean air from a compressed air tank carried on the back of the wearer. These types of respirators are highly mobile and are used primarily for emergency response or rescue work, since only a limited amount of air can be supplied by a single tank, generally 20-60 minutes. Units must be thoroughly inspected on a monthly basis and written records must be kept of all inspections, operator training, etc. Use of these respirators is subject to the manufacturer's guidelines

Basic Types of Respirators
Air-purifying or filtering respirators. Such respirators are used when there is enough oxygen (at least 19.5 percent) and contaminants are present below IDLH level. The respirator filters out or chemically "**scrubs**" contaminants, usually with a replaceable filter. Use color-coded filter cartridges or canisters for different types of contaminants. It's important to select the right filter for the situation.

Air-supplying respirators. These respirators are required when air-purifying respirators aren't effective. Air-purifying respirators are not sufficient in the following settings:
- When there is not enough oxygen.
- Confined spaces.
- When contaminants cannot be filtered out.
- When contaminants are at or above IDLH level.

Different kinds of air-supplying respirators include
- Those connected by hose to stationary air supply (airline)
- Portable tank self-contained breathing apparatus (**SCBA**).

Respirators are an effective method of protection against designated hazards when properly selected and worn. Respirator use is encouraged, even when exposures are below the exposure limit, to provide an additional level of comfort and protection for workers.

However, if a respirator is used improperly or not kept clean, the respirator itself can become a hazard to the worker. Sometimes, workers may wear respirators to avoid exposures to hazards, even if the amount of hazardous substance does not exceed the limits set by OSHA standards. If your employer provides respirators for your voluntary use, or if you provide your own respirator, you need to take certain precautions to be sure that the respirator itself does not present a hazard.

The Importance of Correct Fit

Even a tiny gap between the respirator and the face can allow contaminants to enter.

Respirators should be comfortable and properly fitted. Proper fit includes:
- **Secure but not too tight**
- **No slipping or pinching**
- **Allowance for head movement and speech**

An OSHA-accepted qualitative fit test or quantitative fit test must be performed prior to an employee using any tight-fitting respirator.

Tight-fitting respirators must be seal checked before each use by using positive- or negative-pressure check procedures or the manufacturer's instructions.

Respirator Filters/Cartridges
For protection against gases and vapors, the cartridges used for air-purifying respirators must be either equipped with an end-of-service-life indicator (**ESLI**), certified by NIOSH for the contaminant, or a cartridge change schedule has to be established.

For protection against particulates, there are nine classes of filters (three levels of filter efficiency, each with three categories of resistance to filter efficiency degradation). Levels of filter efficiency are 95 percent, 99 percent, and 99.97 percent. Categories of resistance to filter efficiency degradation are labeled N, R, and P.

Protection Factors
The protection factor of a respirator is an expression of performance based on the ratio of two concentrations: The contaminant concentration outside the respirator to the contaminant concentration inside the respirator.

Each class of respirator is also given an assigned protection factor (**APF**). The APF is a measure of the minimum anticipated level of respiratory protection that a properly functioning respirator or class of respirators would provide to a percentage of properly fitted and trained users. When a contaminant concentration is known, the APF can be used to estimate the concentration inside a particular type of respirator worn by a user.

Who Cannot Wear a Respirator?

Respirator fit is essential. Employees must have a medical checkup to make sure they can wear respirators safely. Generally, respirators cannot be worn when a person:

- Wears glasses or personal protective equipment that interferes with the seal of the face piece to the face of the user.
- Has facial hair that comes between the sealing surface of the face piece and the face or interferes with valve function.
- Has a breathing problem, such as asthma.
- Has a heart condition.
- Is heat sensitive.

Sometimes a person's facial features will not permit a good fit. Check with the supervisor or medical department if the fit is a problem.

Checking for Damage
Before each use, make sure there are no holes, tears, etc., in the respirator. Rubber parts can wear out and should be checked very carefully every time a respirator is used. Replace worn and damaged parts when necessary. Make sure air and oxygen cylinders are fully charged.

Staying Prepared for Respirator Use
Respirators are bulky and awkward, so getting used to them takes practice. Possible problems with wearing respirators may include heat exhaustion or heat stroke. Be alert for symptoms, use the "**buddy system**," and wear a lifeline or harness when necessary. Drink plenty of fluids and take frequent breaks.

Poor maneuverability. Practice with respirators in narrow passages, on ladders, etc., if your use of respirators may be in these types of conditions.

Using up the air supply. When a SCBA is in use, keep checking the gauges and listening for alarms; be ready to leave the area immediately if there is a problem.

Panic. Remember the importance of staying calm in a hot, stressful, or awkward situation.

Cleaning Respirators
Respirators should be cleaned and disinfected after every use. Check the respirator for damage before putting it away; look for holes, cracks, deterioration, dented cartridges, etc. If any damage is found, it should be reported to a supervisor. Respirators stored for emergency use must be inspected monthly when not in use, as well as after each use.

Respirators should be stored away from light, heat, cold, chemicals, and dust.

Store respirators in a "***normal***" (natural, undistorted) position to hold their shape. Do not allow respirators to get crushed, folded, or twisted.

All of this text is credited to OSHA.

OSHA Overview

OSHA requires that supervisors consult with employees and encourage their participation in the process safety management plan. In fact, managers must have a written plan of action for employee participation in process safety management. Employee participation is critical because…

- **Employees know a lot about the process which they work upon**
- **They play key roles in making sure that process operation is conducted safely.**

Operating Procedures

Managers must furnish written operating procedures that clearly explain how to perform each covered process safely. The procedures must be accurate and must be written in language that people can understand. Avoid technical jargon and, if necessary, supply translations.

Operating procedures must include at least the following:

- Operating steps for initial startup, normal and temporary operations, emergency shutdown (including when it's called for and who does it), emergency operations, normal shutdown, and startup after a turnaround or an emergency shutdown
- Operating limits, including what happens if workers don't conform to operating limits and how to avoid or correct such problems
- Safety and health considerations, such as chemical or other hazards, precautions to prevent exposure, quality and inventory control for chemicals, and what to do if an employee is exposed to a hazardous substance
- Safety systems and their functions, including up-to-date operating procedures and safe work practices.

Contractor Employees

Process safety training and safety programs are also required for contractors who work on-site. Managers must check out the safety performance and programs of any contractors being considered for maintenance, repair, turnaround, major renovation, or specialty work on or around a process covered by the regulation.

When a contractor is hired, the manager must provide the contractor with information on the hazards of the process the contractor will work on. To further ensure contractor safety, managers must also

❖ provide the contractor with information on safe work practices for the process they're involved with and tell them what to do in an emergency
❖ keep a log of contractor employees' injuries or illnesses related to their work in process areas
❖ evaluate the contractor's performance to make sure they're living up to their safety obligations set by the standard.

The Contractor has Responsibilities, too

- Document that employees are trained to recognize hazards and to follow safe work practices on the job
- Make sure that the contractor's employees understand potential job-related hazards, are trained to work safely, and follow the safety rules of the facility in which they're working.

Written Respiratory Protection Program

This paragraph requires the employer to develop and implement a written respiratory protection program with required worksite-specific procedures and elements for required respirator use. The program must be administered by a suitably trained program administrator. In addition, certain program elements may be required for voluntary use to prevent potential hazards associated with the use of the respirator.

The Small Entity Compliance Guide contains criteria for the selection of a program administrator and a sample program that meets the requirements of this paragraph. Copies of the Small Entity Compliance Guide will be available on or about April 8, 1998 from the Occupational Safety and Health Administration's Office of Publications, Room N 3101, 200 Constitution Avenue, NW, Washington, DC, 20210 (202-219-4667).

(c)(1) In any workplace where respirators are necessary to protect the health of the employee or whenever respirators are required by the employer, the employer shall establish and implement a written respiratory protection program with worksite-specific procedures. The program shall be updated as necessary to reflect those changes in workplace conditions that affect respirator use. The employer shall include in the program the following provisions of this section, as applicable:

(c)(1)(i) Procedures for selecting respirators for use in the workplace;

(c)(1)(ii) Medical evaluations of employees required to use respirators;

(c)(1)(iii) Fit testing procedures for tight-fitting respirators;

(c)(1)(iv) Procedures for proper use of respirators in routine and reasonably foreseeable emergency situations;

(c)(1)(v) Procedures and schedules for cleaning, disinfecting, storing, inspecting, repairing, discarding, and otherwise maintaining respirators;

(c)(1)(vi) Procedures to ensure adequate air quality, quantity, and flow of breathing air for atmosphere-supplying respirators;

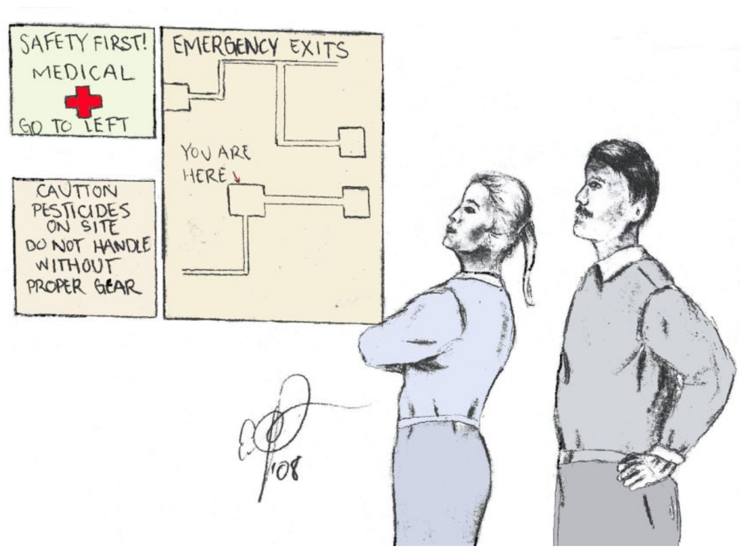
(c)(1)(vii) Training of employees in the respiratory hazards to which they are potentially exposed during routine and emergency situations;

Example of RP Employee Responsibilities

All Employees shall follow the requirements of the Respiratory Protection Program.

Management
- Implement the requirements of this program.
- Provide a selection of respirators as required.
- Enforce all provisions of this program.
- Appoint a ***Specific Designated*** individual to conduct the respiratory protection program.

Administrative Department
- Review sanitation/storage procedures.
- Ensure respirators are properly stored, inspected and maintained.
- Monitor compliance for this program.
- Provide training for affected Employees.
- Review compliance and ensure monthly inspection of all respirators.
- Provide respirator fit testing.



Designated-Occupational Health Care Provider
- Conducts medical aspects of program.

Program Administrator
Each Department will designate a program administrator who is qualified by appropriate training or experience that is commensurate with the complexity of the program to administer or oversee the respiratory protection program and conduct the required evaluations of program effectiveness.

Voluntary Use of Respirators is Prohibited
OSHA requires that voluntary use of respirators, when not required by the Employer, must be controlled as strictly as under required circumstances. To prevent violations of the Respiratory Protection Standard, Employees are not allowed voluntary use of their own or Employer supplied respirators of any type.

Exception: Employees whose only use of respirators involves the voluntary use of filtering (non-sealing) face pieces (dust masks).

Respiratory Protection Program Statement *Example*

Facility ___________________________________

Policy Statement

A respiratory protection program is hereby established so as to coordinate the use and maintenance or respiratory protective equipment as determined necessary to:

1. Reduce Personnel exposure to toxic chemical agents, harmful dusts, mist and fumes and
2. Allow trained personnel to work safely in hazardous environments, such as welding, oxygen deficient atmospheres, toxic atmospheres, etc.

Designation of Program Administrator

Management has designated ____
to be responsible for the respiratory protection program at this facility. He/she has been delegated authority by Management to make decisions and implement changes in the respirator program anywhere in this facility.

The following responsibilities apply:

1. Supervision of respirator selection process and procedures
2. Establishment of respiratory protection training sessions
3. Establishment of a continuing program of cleaning and inspections
4. Establishment of medical screening program
5. Establishment of issuing procedures
6. Establishment of periodic inspections
7. Continuing evaluation of all aspects of the respiratory protection program to assure continued effectiveness
8. Establishment of annual fit tests procedures

Any questions or problems concerning respirators or their use should be directed to the Program Administrator

____ ______________

Facility Manager Date

Program Evaluation

Evaluations of the workplace are necessary to ensure that the written respiratory protection program is being properly implemented; this includes consulting with employees to ensure that they are using the respirators properly. Evaluations shall be conducted as necessary to ensure that the provisions of the current written program are being effectively implemented and that it continues to be effective.

Program evaluation will include discussions with employees required to use respirators to assess the employees' views on program effectiveness and to identify any problems.

Any problems that are identified during this assessment shall be corrected. Factors to be assessed include, but are not limited to:

- Respirator fit (including the ability to use the respirator without interfering with effective workplace performance);
- Appropriate respirator selection for the hazards to which the employee is exposed;
- Proper respirator use under the workplace conditions the employee encounters; and
- Proper respirator maintenance.

RP Recordkeeping

The employer will retain written information regarding medical evaluations, fit testing, and the respiratory protection program.

This information will facilitate employee involvement in the respiratory protection program, assist the Employer in auditing the adequacy of the program, and provide a record for compliance determinations by OSHA.

Training and Information
Effective training for employees who are required to use respirators is essential. The training must be comprehensive, understandable, and recur annually and more often if necessary. Training will be provided prior to requiring the employee to use a respirator in the workplace.

The training shall ensure that each employee can demonstrate knowledge of at least the following:
- Why the respirator is necessary and how improper fit, usage, or maintenance can compromise the protective effect of the respirator
- Limitations and capabilities of the respirator
- How to use the respirator effectively in emergency situations, including situations in which the respirator malfunctions
- How to inspect, put on and remove, use, and check the seals of the respirator
- Procedures for maintenance and storage of the respirator
- How to recognize medical signs and symptoms that may limit or prevent the effective use of respirators
- The general requirements of this program

Retraining shall be conducted annually and when:
- changes in the workplace or the type of respirator render previous training obsolete
- inadequacies in the employee's knowledge or use of the respirator indicate that the employee has not retained the requisite understanding or skill
- other situation arises in which retraining appears necessary to ensure safe respirator use

Training is divided into the following sections:

Classroom Instruction
1. Overview of the Employer’s Respiratory Protection Program & OSHA Standard.
2. Respiratory Protection Safety Procedures.
3. Respirator Selection.
4. Respirator Operation and Use.
5. Why the respirator is necessary.
6. How improper fit, usage, or maintenance can compromise the protective effect.
7. Limitations and capabilities of the respirator.
8. How to use the respirator effectively in emergency situations, including respirator malfunctions.
9. How to inspect, put on and remove, use, and check the seals of the respirator.
10. Procedures for maintenance and storage of the respirator.
11. How to recognize medical signs and symptoms that may limit or prevent the effective use of respirators.
12. Change out schedule and procedure for air purifying respirators.

Respiratory Protection Program
Training Certificate *Example*

Name: ____
Department: _________________________ Date: ___________

I have received Training on the Respiratory Protection Program. The Training included the following:

Classroom Training

- ✓ Overview of the Company Respiratory Protection Program
- ✓ Respiratory Protection Safety Procedures
- ✓ Respirator Selection
- ✓ Respirator Operation and Use
- ✓ Why the respirator is necessary
- ✓ How improper fit, usage, or maintenance can compromise the protective effect.
- ✓ Limitations and capabilities of the respirator.
- ✓ How to use the respirator effectively in emergency situations, including respirator malfunctions.
- ✓ How to inspect, put on and remove, use, and check the seals of the respirator.
- ✓ Procedures for maintenance and storage of the respirator.
- ✓ How to recognize medical signs and symptoms that may limit or prevent the effective use of respirators.
- ✓ Respirator filter & cartridge changeout schedule
- ✓ The general requirements of this program

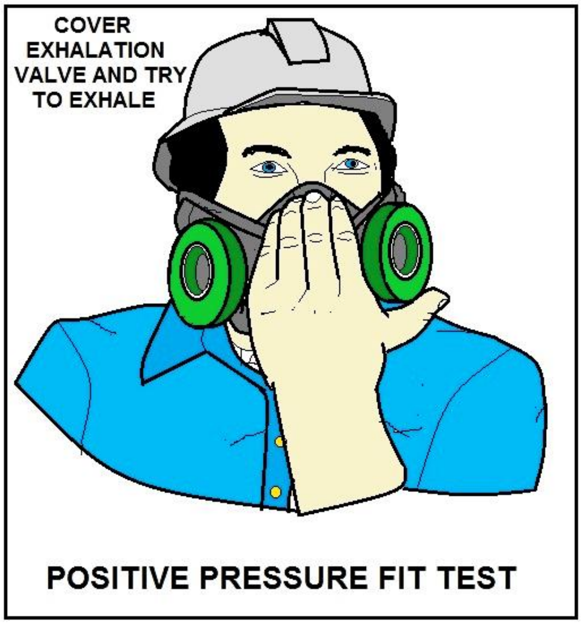
Hands-on Training

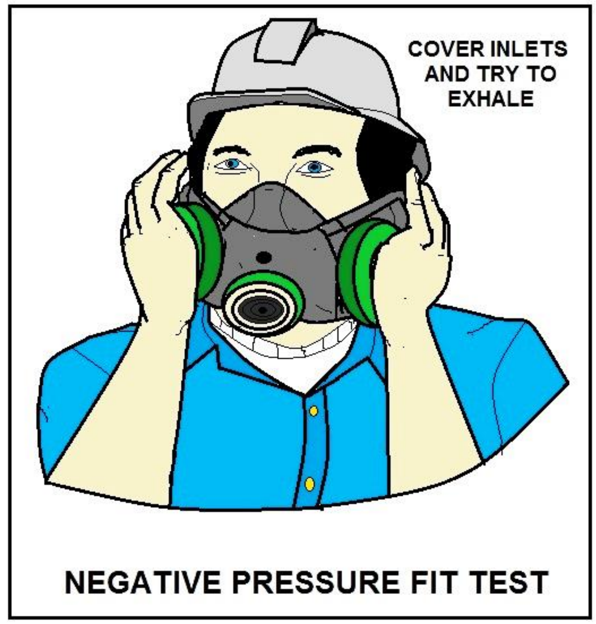
- ✓ Respirator Inspection
- ✓ Respirator cleaning and sanitizing
- ✓ Fit Check
- ✓ Record Keeping
- ✓ Respirator Storage
- ✓ Emergencies

____
Employee Signature

____
Trainer's Signature

Fit Testing   Hands-On Respirator Training





POSITIVE AND NEGATIVE PRESSURE FIT CHECKS

1. **Respirator Inspection**
2. **Respirator cleaning and sanitizing**
3. **Record Keeping**
4. **Respirator Storage**
5. **Respirator Fit Check**
6. **Emergencies**

Basic Respiratory Protection Safety Procedures

1. Only authorized and trained employees may use respirators. Those employees may use only the respirator that they have been trained on and properly fitted to use.
2. Only physically qualified employees may be trained and authorized to use respirators. A pre-authorization and annual certification by a qualified physician will be required and maintained. Any changes in an Employee's health or physical characteristics will be reported to the Occupational Health Department and will be evaluated by a qualified physician.
3. Only the proper prescribed respirator or SCBA may be used for the job or work environment. Air cleansing respirators may be worn in work environments when oxygen levels are between 19.5 percent to 23.5 percent and when the appropriate air cleansing canister, as determined by the Manufacturer and approved by NIOSH or MESA, for the known hazardous substance is used. SCBAs will be worn in oxygen deficient and oxygen rich environments (below 19.5 percent or above 23.5 percent oxygen).
4. Employees working in environments where a sudden release of a hazardous substance is likely will wear an appropriate respirator for that hazardous substance (example: employees working in an ammonia compressor room will have an ammonia APR respirator on their person.).
5. Only SCBAs will be used in oxygen deficient environments, environments with an unknown hazardous substance or unknown quantity of a known hazardous substance or any environment that is determined "***Immediately Dangerous to Life or Health***" (IDLH).

6. Employees with respirators loaned on "permanent check out" will be responsible for the sanitation, proper storage and security. Respirators damaged by normal wear will be repaired or replaced by the employer when returned.
7. The last employee using a respirator and/or SCBA that are available for general use will be responsible for proper storage and sanitation. Monthly and after each use, all respirators will be inspected with documentation to assure its availability for use.
8. All respirators will be located in a clean, convenient and sanitary location.
9. In the event that employees must enter a confined space, work in environments with hazardous substances that would be dangerous to life or health should an RPE fail (a SCBA is required in this environment), and/or conduct a HAZMAT entry, a "**buddy system**" detail will be used with a safety watchman with constant voice, visual or signal line communication. Employees will follow the established emergency response program and/or confined space entry program when applicable.
10. Management will establish and maintain surveillance of jobs and work place conditions and degree of employee exposure or stress to maintain the proper procedures and to provide the necessary RPE.
11. Management will establish and maintain safe operation procedures for the safe use of RPE with strict enforcement and disciplinary action for failure to follow all general and specific safety rules. Standard operation procedures for general RPE use will be maintained as an attachment to the respiratory protection program and standard operation procedures for RPE use under emergency response situations will be maintained as an attachment to the emergency response program.

Selection of Respirators
The employer is responsible for and needs to have evaluated the respiratory hazard(s) in each workplace, identified relevant workplace and user factors and have based respirator selection on these factors. Also included are estimates of employee exposures to respiratory hazard(s) and an identification of the contaminant's chemical state and physical form.

This selection has included appropriate protective respirators for use in IDLH atmospheres, and has limited the selection and use of air-purifying respirators. All selected respirators are NIOSH-certified.

Filter Classifications - These classifications are marked on the filter or filter package
N-Series: Not Oil Resistant
- Approved for non-oil particulate contaminants
- Examples: dust, fumes, mists not containing oil

R-Series: Oil Resistant
- Approved for all particulate contaminants, including those containing oil
- Examples: dusts, mists, fumes
- Time restriction of 8 hours when oils are present

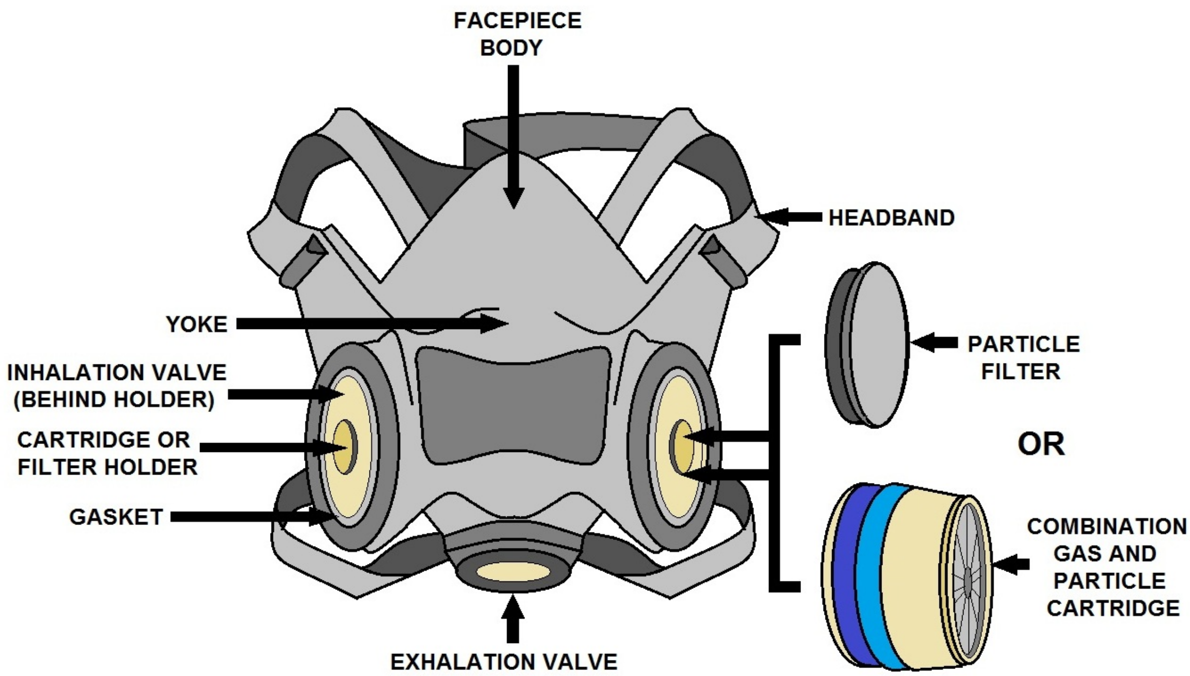
P-Series: Oil Proof
- Approved for all particulate contaminants including those containing oil
- Examples: dust, fumes, mists
- See Manufacturer's time use restrictions on packaging

Respirators for IDLH Atmospheres

- The following respirators will be used in IDLH atmospheres:
- A full face piece pressure demand SCBA certified by NIOSH for a minimum service life of thirty minutes, or
- A combination full face piece pressure demand supplied-air respirator (**SAR**) with auxiliary self-contained air supply.
- Respirators provided only for escape from IDLH atmospheres shall be NIOSH-certified for escape from the atmosphere in which they will be used.

Respirators for Atmospheres that are not for IDLH

The respirators selected shall be adequate to protect the health of the employee and ensure compliance with all other OSHA statutory and regulatory requirements, under routine and reasonably foreseeable emergency situations. The respirator selected shall be appropriate for the chemical state and physical form of the contaminant.

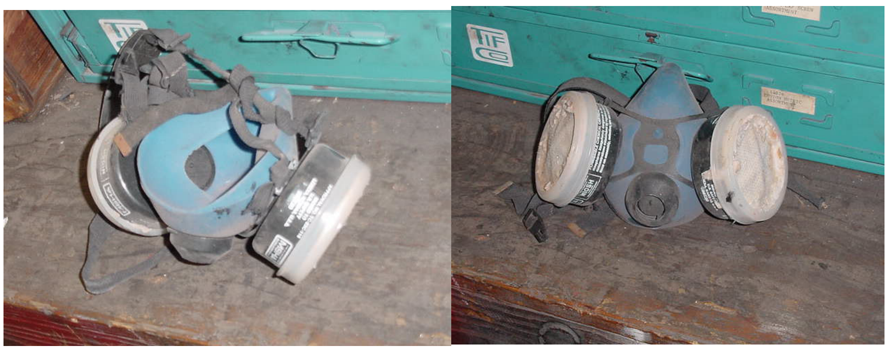


BASIC PARTS OF A HALF-FACEPIECE RESPIRATOR

Identification of Filters & Cartridges

All filters and cartridges shall be labeled and color coded with the NIOSH approval label; the label is not to be removed and must remain legible. A change out schedule for filters and canisters has been developed to ensure the elements of the respirators remain effective.

Respirator Filter & Canister Replacement
An important part of the Respiratory Protection Program includes identifying the useful life of canisters and filters used on air-purifying respirators. Each filter and canister shall be equipped with an end-of-service-life indicator (**ESLI**) certified by NIOSH for the contaminant; or If there is no ESLI appropriate for conditions a change schedule for canisters and cartridges that is based on objective information or data that will ensure that canisters and cartridges are changed before the end of their service life.



It is unacceptable maintenance and storage (OSHA Violation).

Filter & Cartridge Change Schedule
Stock of spare filters and cartridges shall be maintained to allow immediate change when required or desired by the employee.

Cartridges shall be changed based on the most limiting factor below:
- Prior to expiration date
- Manufacturer's recommendations for the specific use and environment
- After each use
- When requested by employee
- When contaminate odor is detected
- When restriction to air flow has occurred as evidenced by increased effort by user to breathe normally
- Cartridges shall remain in their original sealed packages until needed for immediate use

Filters shall be changed on the most limiting factor below:
- Prior to expiration date
- Manufacturer's recommendations for the specific use and environment
- When requested by employee
- When contaminate odor is detected
- When restriction to air flow has occurred as evidenced by increased effort by user to breathe normally
- When discoloring of the filter media is evident
- Filters shall remain in their original sealed package until needed for immediate use.

RESPIRATORY PROTECTION PROGRAM CHECKLIST				PAGE 1 OF 1 PAGES	
DIVISION:	**SECTION:**	**SUPERVISOR:**	**DATE:**		

		YES	NO	NA
1	Is respiratory protection (RP) being worn in the section?			
2	Has air sampling been accomplished that mandates using RP?			
3	Where air sampling results greater than Occupational Exposure Limits? (If NO, why are you using a respirator?)			
4	Has a Hazard Assessment been generated concerning the task or process that placed the section on the RP Program?			
5	Have all processes that may warrant the use of RP been evaluated? (If NO, request an assessment from the Department Safety Analyst /Personnel Safety, unless the operation is emergency response).			
6	Have workers received physicals and been found medically qualified to wear RP?			
7	Is there documentation that workers were formally briefed on air sampling results and why RP is required?			
8	Is respiratory protection training and fit-testing documentation available on everyone who wears a respirator?			
9	Are RP wearers being fit-tested at least annually?			
10	Are section employees wearing RP voluntarily when conditions have not mandated their use?			
11	Are employees wearing contacts in hazardous atmospheres or using eye-wear that negates face to face piece seal?			
12	Do RP users have facial hair that negates face to face piece seal?			
13	Has a respirator inventory been compiled that list the type of respirator(s) used in the workplace? (Use Respirator Inventory Worksheet attach to this checklist)			
14	Has the Section Supervisor received formal RP training on OSHA, City Personnel Safety and Respiratory Protection Program requirements and his or her responsibilities?			
15	Does the section have written standard operating instructions governing the selection, fit-testing, use, cleaning, storage and maintenance of respirators?			
16	Is the Fire Department the only source being used to charge SCBA's with compressed air?			
17	Are SCBA's being inspected at least every 30 days?			
18	Does the section have on hand, applicable OSHA, CITY, and Section Respiratory Protection Program guidance documents?			
19	Are periodic audits of the section's RP program conducted with discrepancies tracked until closed out?			
20	Have program deficiencies been elevated to the Director and Department Safety Analyst?			

SURVEYED BY:	REVIEWED BY:

Respiratory Protection Schedule by Job and Working Condition

The employer needs to maintain a Respiratory Protection Schedule by Job and working condition. This schedule is provided to each authorized and trained employee.

The Schedule provides the following information:
1. Job/Working conditions.
2. Work location.
3. Hazards present.
4. Type of respirator or SCBA required.
5. Type of filter/canister required.
6. Location of respirator or SCBA.
7. Filter/Cartridge change out schedule.

The schedule will be reviewed and updated at least annually and whenever any changes are made in the work environments, machinery, equipment, or processes or if respirator different respirator models are introduced or existing models are removed.

Permanent respirator Schedule Assignments are:
Each person who engages in welding will have their own employer provided dust-mist-fume filter APR. This respirator will be worn during all welding operations.

Physical and Medical Qualifications
Records of medical evaluations must be retained and made available in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.1020.

Medical Evaluation Required
Using a respirator may place a physiological burden on employees that varies with the type of respirator worn, the job and workplace conditions in which the respirator is used, and the medical status of the employee. The Employer is required to provide a medical evaluation to determine the employee's ability to use a respirator before the employee is fit tested or required to use the respirator in the workplace.

Medical Evaluation Procedures
The employee will be provided a medical questionnaire by the designated Occupational Health Care Provider.

Follow-up Medical Examination

The employer shall ensure that a follow-up medical examination is provided for an employee who gives a positive response to any question among questions in Part B of the questionnaire or whose initial medical examination demonstrates the need for a follow-up medical examination.

The follow-up medical examination shall include any medical tests, consultations, or diagnostic procedures that the physician deems necessary to make a final determination.

Administration of the Medical Questionnaire and Examinations.
The medical questionnaire and examinations shall be administered confidentially during the employee's normal working hours or at a time and place convenient to the employee.

The medical questionnaire shall be administered in a manner that ensures that the employee understands its content. The employer shall provide the employee with an opportunity to discuss the questionnaire and examination results with the Physician.

Supplemental Information for the Physician
The following information must be provided to the physician before the Physician makes a recommendation concerning an employee's ability to use a respirator.

- The type and weight of the respirator to be used by the employee
- The duration and frequency of respirator use (including use for rescue and escape)
- The expected physical work effort
- Additional protective clothing and equipment to be worn
- Temperature and humidity extremes that may be encountered
- Any supplemental information provided previously to the physician regarding an employee need not be provided for a subsequent medical evaluation if the information and the physician remain the same.

The employer has provided the physician with a copy of the written respiratory protection program and a copy of the OSHA Standard 1910.134

Acronyms
Qualitative fit test (QLFT) means a pass/fail fit test to assess the adequacy of respirator fit that relies on the individual's response to the test agent.

Quantitative fit test (QNFT) means an assessment of the adequacy of respirator fit by numerically measuring the amount of leakage into the respirator.

Medical Determination

In determining the employee's ability to use a respirator, the employer shall:

- Obtain a written recommendation regarding the employee's ability to use the respirator from the physician. The recommendation shall provide only the following information:
  - Any limitations on respirator use related to the medical condition of the employee, or relating to the workplace conditions in which the respirator will be used, including whether or not the employee is medically able to use the respirator.
  - The need, if any, for follow-up medical evaluations.
  - A statement that the Physician has provided the employee with a copy of the physician's written recommendation.
- If the respirator is a negative pressure respirator and the physician finds a medical condition that may place the employee's health at increased risk if the respirator is used, the employer shall provide an APR if the physician's medical evaluation finds that the employee can use such a respirator; if a subsequent medical evaluation finds that the employee is medically able to use a negative pressure respirator, then the employer is no longer required to provide an APR.

Additional Medical Evaluations
At a minimum, the employer shall provide additional medical evaluations that comply with the requirements of this section if:

- An employee reports medical signs or symptoms that are related to the ability to use a respirator
- A physician, supervisor, or the respirator program administrator informs the employer that an employee needs to be reevaluated
- Information from the respiratory protection program, including observations made during fit testing and program evaluation, indicates a need for employee reevaluation
- A change occurs in workplace conditions (e.g., physical work effort, protective clothing, and temperature) that may result in a substantial increase in the physiological burden placed on an employee.

Respirator Fit Testing (see Appendix A for more information)
Before an employee is required to use any respirator with a negative or positive pressure tight-fitting face piece, the employee must be fit tested with the same make, model, style, and size of respirator that will be used. The Employer shall ensure that an employee using a tight-fitting face piece respirator is fit tested prior to initial use of the respirator, whenever a different respirator face piece (size, style, model or make) is used, and at least annually thereafter.
The employer has established a record of the qualitative and quantitative fit tests administered to employees including:

- The name or identification of the employee tested
- Type of fit test performed
- Specific make, model, style, and size of respirator tested
- Date of test
- The pass/fail results for QLFTs or the fit factor and strip chart recording or other recording of the test results for QNFTs

Additional fit tests will be conducted whenever the employee reports, or the employer, physician, supervisor, or program administrator makes visual observations of, changes in the employee's physical condition that could affect respirator fit.
Such conditions include, but are not limited to, facial scarring, dental changes, cosmetic surgery, or an obvious change in body weight.

If after passing a QLFT or QNFT, the employee notifies the employer's program administrator, supervisor, or physician that the fit of the respirator is unacceptable, the employee shall be given a reasonable opportunity to select a different respirator face piece and to be retested.

Types of Fit Tests

The fit test shall be administered using an OSHA-accepted QLFT or QNFT protocol. The OSHA-accepted QLFT and QNFT protocols and procedures are contained in Appendix A of OSHA Standard 1910.134.

- QLFT may only be used to fit test negative pressure air-purifying respirators that must achieve a fit factor of 100 or less.
- If the fit factor, as determined through an OSHA-accepted QNFT protocol, is equal to or greater than 100 for tight-fitting half face pieces, or equal to or greater than 500 for tight-fitting full face pieces, the QNFT has been passed with that respirator.
- Fit testing of tight-fitting atmosphere-supplying respirators and tight-fitting powered air-purifying respirators shall be accomplished by performing quantitative or qualitative fit testing in the negative pressure mode, regardless of the mode of operation (negative or positive pressure) that is used for respiratory protection.
- Qualitative fit testing of these respirators shall be accomplished by temporarily converting the respirator user's actual face piece into a negative pressure respirator with appropriate filters, or by using an identical negative pressure air-purifying respirator face piece with the same sealing surfaces as a surrogate for the atmosphere-supplying or powered air-purifying respirator face piece.
- Quantitative fit testing of these respirators shall be accomplished by modifying the face piece to allow sampling inside the face piece in the breathing zone of the user, midway between the nose and mouth. This requirement shall be accomplished by installing a permanent sampling probe onto a surrogate face piece, or by using a sampling adapter designed to temporarily provide a means of sampling air from inside the face piece.
- Any modifications to the respirator face piece for fit testing shall be completely removed, and the face piece restored to NIOSH approved configuration, before that face piece can be used in the workplace.

Fit test records shall be retained for respirator users until the next fit test is administered. Written materials required to be retained shall be made available upon request to affected employees.

Respirator Operation and Use

Respirators will only be used following the respiratory protection safety procedures established in this program. The Operations and Use Manuals for each type of respirator will be maintained by the program administrator and be available to all qualified users.

Surveillance by the direct supervisor shall be maintained of work area conditions and degree of employee exposure or stress. When there is a change in work area conditions or degree of employee exposure or stress that may affect respirator effectiveness, the employer shall reevaluate the continued effectiveness of the respirator.

For continued protection of respirator users, the following general use rules apply:

- Users shall not remove respirators while in a hazardous environment
- Respirators are to be stored in sealed containers out of harmful atmospheres
- Store respirators away from heat and moisture
- Store respirators such that the sealing area does not become distorted or warped
- Store respirators such that the face piece is protected
- Face piece seal protection

The Employer does not permit respirators with tight-fitting face pieces to be worn by employees who have:

- Facial hair that comes between the sealing surface of the face piece and the face or that interferes with valve function; or
- Any condition that interferes with the face-to-face piece seal or valve function.

If an employee wears corrective glasses or goggles or other personal protective equipment, the employer shall ensure that such equipment is worn in a manner that does not interfere with the seal of the face piece to the face of the user.

Continuing Effectiveness of Respirators

The employer shall ensure that employees leave the respirator use area for the following:

- To wash their faces and respirator face pieces as necessary to prevent eye or skin irritation associated with respirator use
- If they detect vapor or gas breakthrough, changes in breathing resistance, or leakage of the face piece
- To replace the respirator or the filter, cartridge, or canister elements.

If the employee detects vapor or gas breakthrough, changes in breathing resistance, or leakage of the face piece, the employer will replace or repair the respirator before allowing the employee to return to the work area.

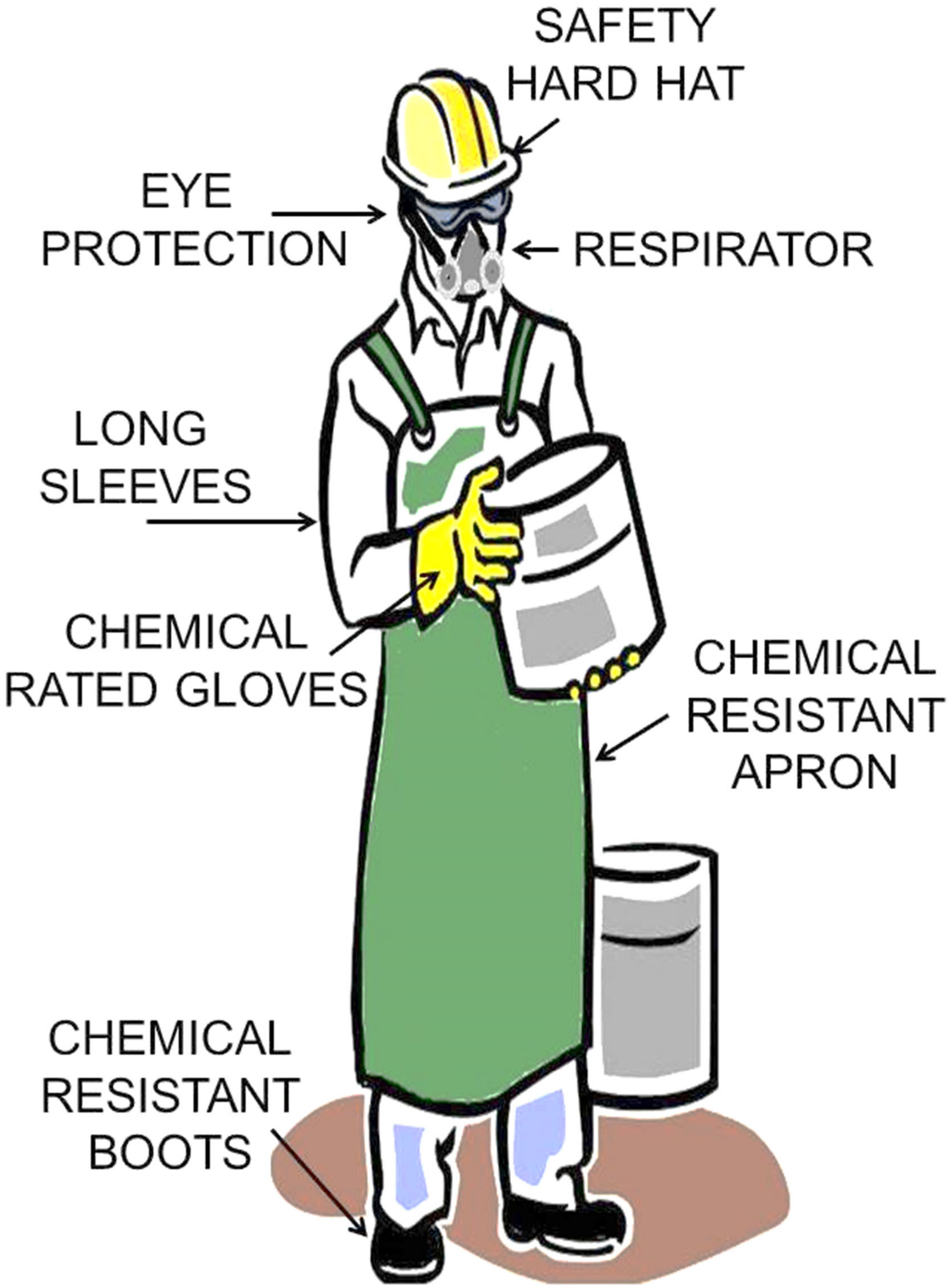
Procedures for IDLH atmospheres

For all IDLH atmospheres, the Employer shall ensure that:

- One employee or, when needed, more than one employee is located outside the IDLH atmosphere
- Visual, voice, or signal line communication is maintained between the employee(s) in the IDLH atmosphere and the employee(s) located outside the IDLH atmosphere
- The employee(s) located outside the IDLH atmosphere are trained and equipped to provide effective emergency rescue
- The employer or designee is notified before the employee(s) located outside the IDLH atmosphere enter the IDLH atmosphere to provide emergency rescue
- The employer or designee authorized to do so by the employer, once notified, provides necessary assistance appropriate to the situation

Employee(s) located outside the IDLH atmospheres will be equipped with:

- Pressure demand or other positive pressure SCBAs, or a pressure demand or other positive pressure supplied-air respirator with auxiliary SCBA; and either
- Appropriate retrieval equipment for removing the employee(s) who enter(s) these hazardous atmospheres where retrieval equipment would contribute to the rescue of the employee(s) and would not increase the overall risk resulting from entry; or
- Equivalent means for rescue where retrieval equipment is not required.


SAFETY
HARD HAT
EYE
PROTECTION
RESPIRATOR
LONG
SLEEVES
CHEMICAL
RATED GLOVES
CHEMICAL
RESISTANT
APRON
CHEMICAL
RESISTANT
BOOTS

Gas and Vapor Contaminants

Gas and vapor contaminants can be classified according to their chemical characteristics. True gaseous contaminants are similar to air in that they possess the same ability to diffuse freely within an area or container. Nitrogen, chlorine, carbon monoxide, carbon dioxide and sulfur dioxide are examples.

Vapors are the gaseous state of substances that are liquids or solids at room temperature. They are formed when the solid or liquid evaporates. Gasoline, solvents and paint thinners are examples of liquids that evaporate easily, producing vapors.

In terms of chemical characteristics, gaseous contaminants may be classified as follows:

- **Inert Gases** —These include such true gases as helium, argon, neon, etc. Although they do not metabolize in the body, these gases represent a hazard because they can produce an oxygen deficiency by displacement of air.
- **Acidic Gases** —Often highly toxic, acidic gases exist as acids or produce acids by reaction with water. Sulfur dioxide, hydrogen sulfide and hydrogen chloride are examples.
- **Alkaline Gases** —These gases exist as alkalis or produce alkalis by reaction with water. Ammonia and phosphine are two examples.

In terms of chemical characteristics, vaporous contaminants may be classified as follows:

- **Organic Compounds** —Contaminants in this category can exist as true gases or vapors produced from organic liquids. Gasoline, solvents and paint thinners are examples.
- **Organometallic Compounds —**These are generally comprised of metals attached to organic groups. Tetraethyllead and organic phosphates are examples.

Hazard Assessment
Proper assessment of the hazard is the first important step to protection. This requires a thorough knowledge of processes, equipment, raw materials, end-products and by-products that can create an exposure hazard.

To determine an atmosphere's oxygen content or concentration levels of particulate and/or gaseous contaminants, air samples must be taken with proper sampling instruments during all conditions of operation. The sampling device and the type and frequency of sampling (spot testing or continuous monitoring) will be dictated by the exposure and operating conditions.

Breathing zone samples are recommended and sampling frequency should be sufficient to assess the average exposure under the variable operating and exposure conditions.

Should contaminant concentrations exceed exposure limits recommended by the American Conference of Governmental Industrial Hygienists (**ACGIH**), OSHA or NIOSH, hazard control procedures must be implemented promptly.

Exposure monitoring plays a critical role in the respirator selection process. The results from such tests will help you determine whether respiratory protection is needed and, if it is, the type of respirator required. Generally, respirator selection is based on three factors:

- The results of your atmospheric monitoring or sampling program;
- The accepted ACGIH, OSHA or NIOSH exposure limits for the substance(s) present;
- And the maximum use concentration (of a substance) for which a respirator can be used.

Exposure limits include ACGIH Threshold Limit Values (**TLVs**), OSHA Permissible Exposure Limits (**PELs**), NIOSH Recommended Exposure Levels (**RELs**) and AIHA Workplace Environmental Exposure Levels (**WEELs**). These values are guides for exposure concentrations that healthy individuals can normally tolerate for eight hours a day, five days a week without harmful effects. Unless otherwise noted, exposure limits are eight-hour, time-weighted-average (**TWA**) concentrations.

In general, gas and vapor exposure limits are expressed in ppm by volume (parts of contaminant per million parts of air), while particulate concentrations are expressed as mg/m3 (milligrams of concentrations per cubic meter of air). For substances that can exist in more than one form (particulate or gaseous), concentrations are expressed in both values.

It is important to note that exposure limits and other exposure standards are constantly changing as more data is gathered about specific chemicals and substances. As such, you must be certain that you are using the most recent data when determining allowable exposure levels for employees.

Hazard Control

Hazard control should start at the process, equipment and plant design levels where contaminants can be effectively controlled at the outset. With operating processes, the problem becomes more difficult. In all cases, however, consideration should be given to the use of effective engineering controls to eliminate and/or reduce exposures to respiratory hazards.

This includes consideration of process encapsulation or isolation, use of less toxic materials in the process and suitable exhaust ventilation, filters and scrubbers to control the effluents.

Because it is sometimes not practical to maintain engineering controls that eliminate all airborne concentrations of contaminants, proper respiratory protective devices should be used whenever such protection is required.

Hazard Assessment or Hazard Certification sheet example is on the following page.

Even if you have a written RP Program and complete training records, OSHA will ask for a hazard certification or assessment form on where or why you need RP.

For example, if you were required to don SCBA to change a chlorine cylinder once a week, OSHA would request to see how that task was evaluated and certified.

RP Cleaning and Disinfecting

The employer shall provide each respirator user with a respirator that is clean, sanitary, and in good working order. The employer shall ensure that respirators are cleaned and disinfected using the Standard Operating Procedure SOP: Cleaning and Disinfecting.

The respirators shall be cleaned and disinfected when:

- Respirators issued for the exclusive use of an employee shall be cleaned and disinfected as often as necessary to be maintained in a sanitary condition.
- Respirators issued to more than one employee shall be cleaned and disinfected before being worn by different individuals.
- Respirators maintained for emergency use shall be cleaned and disinfected after each use.
- Respirators used in fit testing and training shall be cleaned and disinfected after each use.

Cleaning and Storage of respirators assigned to specific employees is the responsibility of that employee.

Respirator Inspection

All respirators/SCBAs, both available for "**General Use**" and those on "**Permanent Check-out**", will be inspected after each use and at least monthly. Should any defects be noted, the respirator/SCBA will be taken to the program Administrator. Damaged Respirators will be either repaired or replaced. The inspection of respirators loaned on "**Permanent Check-out**" is the responsibility of that trained employee.

Respirators shall be inspected as follows:

- All respirators used in routine situations shall be inspected before each use and during cleaning.
- All respirators maintained for use in emergency situations shall be inspected at least monthly and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and shall be checked for proper function before and after each use.
- Emergency escape-only respirators shall be inspected before being carried into the workplace for use.

Respirator inspections include the following:

- A check of respirator function, tightness of connections, and the condition of the various parts including, but not limited to, the face piece, head straps, valves, connecting tube, and cartridges, canisters or filters
- Check of elastomeric parts for pliability and signs of deterioration.
- Self-contained breathing apparatus shall be inspected monthly. Air and oxygen cylinders shall be maintained in a fully charged state and shall be recharged when the pressure falls to 90% of the manufacturer's recommended pressure level. The employer shall determine that the regulator and warning devices function properly

For Emergency Use Respirators the additional requirements apply:

- Certify the respirator by documenting the date the inspection was performed, the name (or signature) of the person who made the inspection, the findings, required remedial action, and a serial number or other means of identifying the inspected respirator.
- Provide this information on a tag or label that is attached to the storage compartment for the respirator, is kept with the respirator, or is included in inspection reports stored as paper or electronic files. This information shall be maintained until replaced following a subsequent certification.

Respirator Storage

Respirators are to be stored as follows:

- All respirators shall be stored to protect them from damage, contamination, dust, sunlight, extreme temperatures, excessive moisture, and damaging chemicals, and they shall be packed or stored to prevent deformation of the face piece and exhalation valve.
- **Emergency Respirators shall be**:
  - Kept accessible to the work area;
  - Stored in compartments or in covers that are clearly marked as containing emergency respirators; and
  - Stored in accordance with any applicable manufacturer instructions.

Repair of Respirators

Respirators that fail an inspection or are otherwise found to be defective will be removed from service to be discarded, repaired or adjusted in accordance with the following procedures:

- Repairs or adjustments to respirators are to be made only by persons appropriately trained to perform such operations and shall use only the respirator manufacturer's NIOSH-approved parts designed for the respirator;
- Repairs shall be made according to the manufacturer's recommendations and specifications for the type and extent of repairs to be performed; and
- Reducing and admission valves, regulators, and alarms shall be adjusted or repaired only by the manufacturer or a technician trained by the manufacturer.

Breathing Air Quality and Use

The employer shall ensure that compressed air, compressed oxygen, liquid air, and liquid oxygen used for respiration accords with the following specifications:

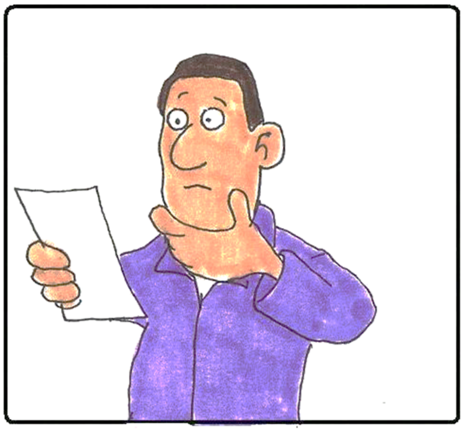
- Compressed and liquid oxygen shall meet the United States Pharmacopoeia Requirements for medical or breathing oxygen; and
- Compressed breathing air shall meet at least the requirements for Grade D breathing air described in ANSI/Compressed Gas Association Commodity Specification for Air, G-7.1-1989, to include:
- Oxygen content (**v/v**) of 19.5-23.5%;
- Hydrocarbon (condensed) content of 5 milligrams per cubic meter of air or less;
- Carbon monoxide content of 10 ppm or less;
- Carbon dioxide content of 1,000 ppm or less; and
- Lack of noticeable odor.
- Compressed oxygen will not be used in atmosphere-supplying respirators that have previously used compressed air.
- Oxygen concentrations greater than 23.5% are used only in equipment designed for oxygen service or distribution.

Cylinders used to supply breathing air to respirators meet the following requirements:

- Cylinders are tested and maintained as prescribed in the Shipping Container Specification Regulations of the Department of Transportation (49 CFR part 173 and part 178).
- Cylinders of purchased breathing air have a certificate of analysis from the supplier that the breathing air meets the requirements for Grade D breathing air.
- Moisture content in breathing air cylinders does not exceed a dew point of -50 deg. F (-45.6 deg. C) at 1 atmosphere pressure.

- Breathing air couplings are incompatible with outlets for nonrespirable worksite air or other gas systems. No asphyxiating substance shall be introduced into breathing air lines.
- Breathing gas containers shall be marked in accordance with the NIOSH respirator certification standard, 42 CFR part 84.

Summary



READ THE SAFETY DATA SHEET

WEAR PROPER PPE

HANDLING CHEMICALS

Following this training session, employees should:

- Wear the respirator assigned to him or her
- Always check for fit before wearing
- Always check for damage and deterioration before wearing
- Know when to replace canisters and cartridges
- Practice maneuvering with a respirator
- Store carefully in the proper location.

Respiratory Protection Chapter Post Quiz

True or False Questions

1. The Employee is required to retain written information regarding medical evaluations, fit testing, and the respirator program.

2. Training will be provided prior to requiring the employee to use a respirator in the workplace.

The training shall ensure that each employee can demonstrate knowledge of at least the following:
#3-7
3. Why the respirator is necessary and how improper fit, usage, or maintenance can compromise the protective effect of the respirator.

4. How to use the respirator effectively in emergency situations, including situations in which the respirator malfunctions.

5. How to inspect, put on and remove, use, and check the seals of a transmission.

6. What the procedures are for maintenance and storage of the respirator.

7. How not to recognize medical signs and symptoms that may not limit or prevent the effective use of respirators

Retraining shall be conducted annually and when:
8. Changes in the workplace or the type of respirator render previous training obsolete.

9. Adequacies in the employee's knowledge or use of the respirator indicate that the employee has retained the requisite understanding or skill.

10. Other situation arises in which retraining appears necessary to ensure safe respirator use.

11. A pre-authorization and annual certification by a qualified physician will be required and maintained. Any changes in an Employees health or physical characteristics will be reported to the Occupational Health Department and will be evaluated by a qualified physician.

12. Only the proper prescribed dust mask or OSHA may be used for the job or work environment.

13. Employees working in environments where a sudden release of a hazardous substance is likely will wear an appropriate respirator for that hazardous substance (example: Employees working in an ammonia compressor room will have an ammonia APR respirator on their person.).

14. Only SCBAs will be used in oxygen deficient environments, environments with an unknown hazardous substance or unknown quantity of a known hazardous substance or any environment that is determined "Immediately Dangerous to Life or Health" (IDLH).

15. Employees will follow the established Emergency Response Program and/or Confined Space Entry Program when applicable.

16. Management will establish and maintain surveillance of jobs and work place conditions and degree of Employee exposure or stress to maintain the proper procedures and to provide the necessary RPE.

17. The Employer is responsible and need to have evaluated the respiratory hazard(s) in each workplace, identified relevant workplace and user factors and has based respirator selection on these factors. Also included are estimates of employee exposures to respiratory hazard(s) and an identification of the contaminant's chemical state and physical form.

18. Respirators provided only for escape from PEL atmospheres shall be NIOSH-certified for escape from the atmosphere in which they will be used.

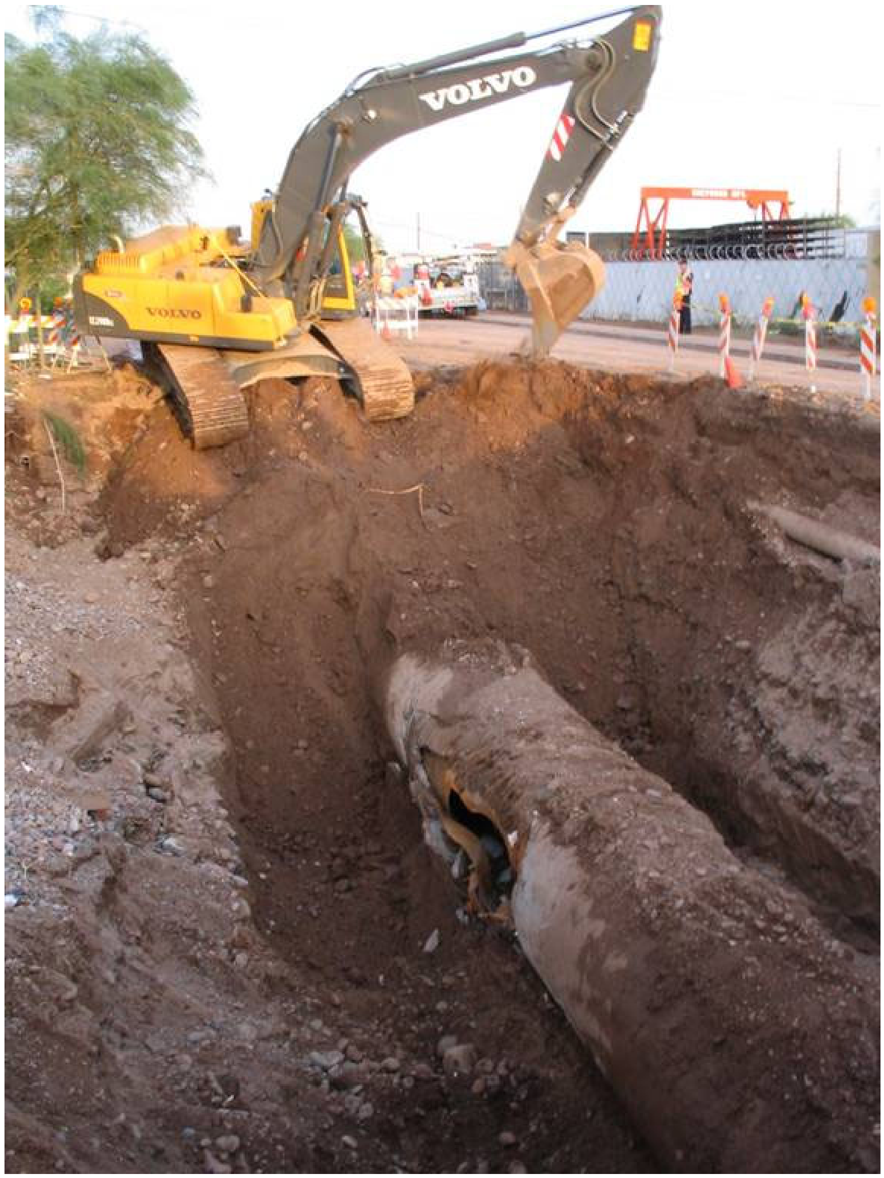
19. The respirators selected shall be adequate to protect the health of the employee and ensure compliance with all other OSHA statutory and regulatory requirements, under routine and reasonably foreseeable emergency situations.

20. The respirator selected shall be appropriate for the chemical state and physical form of the contaminant.

Excavation and Trenching Chapter

Section Focus: You will learn the basics of proper excavation and trenching safety. At the end of this section, you the student will be able to understand and describe commonly found trench safety procedures and devices. There is a post quiz at the end of this section to review your comprehension and a final examination in the Assignment for your contact hours.

Scope/Background: The OSHA SUBPART P - 29 CFR 1926.650-652 requires the employer to set up an excavation safety program to protect employees from cave-in and other excavation dangers.



54-inch water main blow out. Are you prepared to handle this type of an emergency? Most water providers will have to contract this type of work out because they are not prepared.

A large, deep un-shored, unprotected trench.

Competent Person - Proper person

Everybody has an idea of what this phrase means, but for somebody in the EHS field – more specifically, for somebody whose career revolves in some way around OSHA – “Competent Person” has a very specific two-part meaning:

A Competent Person is somebody that has both the knowledge to recognize a hazard and the authority to correct it.

Consider the following example: You may be the most knowledgeable excavator on the planet. You may have 25 years of experience under your belt and a degree in soil mechanics, but if you need to pick up a phone to ask somebody to come instruct the backhoe operator to fix the slope of his trench, **you are not a Competent Person**.

The converse is true as well: you could be the owner of the company strolling through the site with everybody quaking in fear at your feet, ready to heed your every command, but if you can’t tell that the parallel fracturing at the top edges of your excavation indicate that a collapse is imminent, **you are not a Competent Person**.

.

OSHA SUBPART P - 29 CFR 1926.650-652

Competent Person Introduction

Anyone who has done excavation work will tell you that once the first bucket of dirt is out of the ground, you never know what surprises await. Tales of unmarked utilities, unexpected rock and other nightmares are common. The greatest variable, however, is the type of excavation or trenching will be done and how to protect yourself for a cave-in.

The OSHA excavation standard was revised because excavating is the most dangerous of all construction operations. More workers are killed or seriously injured in and around excavations than in any other construction work. The second reason that OSHA revised the existing standard was to clarify the requirements.

The revised standard makes the standard easier to understand. The new standard uses performance criteria where ever possible. This added flexibly provides employers with options when classifying soil and when selecting methods to protect the employee from cave-ins.

Although the standard has been clarified and employers have options when meeting some of the requirements, employers must realize that the employee must be protected at all times.

Some employers have a mindset of not needing this training until they are caught by OSHA, which is equivalent to buying car insurance only after a car collision.

Excavation decisions will have to be made right from the planning stages through completion of the work. Some sections of the standard require that documentation be kept. TLC will provide a sample of this type of documentation.

In some situations, professional engineers will be required to plan or design the excavation and/or method of protecting the worker (such as when an excavation exceeds 20 feet in depth).

The purpose of this session is to provide you with information about the OSHA excavation standard. This program is not designed or intended to provide participants with all the information, rules, regulations, and methods that they may need to know to perform all excavation work safety. Every plan involving excavation must be studied carefully to determine the specific hazards for each job.

Supporting Utilities is mandatory.

Major OSHA Violation. Do not operate equipment in unprotected trenches. This guy is trying hard to get to Heaven before his time is up.

Excavation Facts

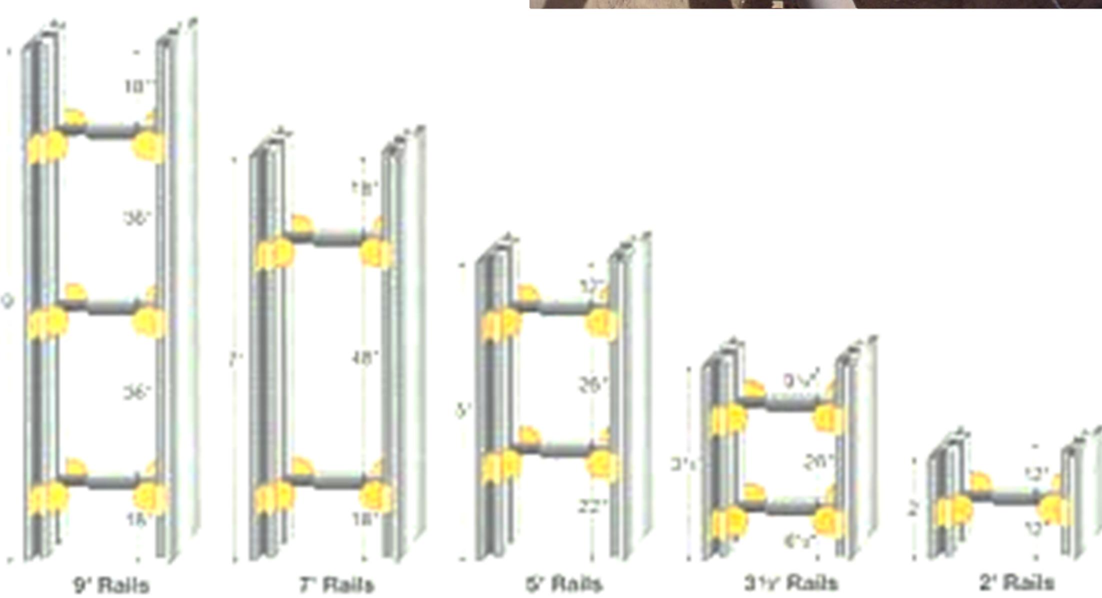
Every year in the United States:
- ✓ **100 to 500 people are killed in an excavation cave-in.**
- ✓ **1000 to 5000 employees are seriously injured.**

The average worker that is killed by a cave-in is a 20 to 30-year-old male who has had little or no training at all. Most deaths occur in trenches 5 feet to 15 feet in depth.

Cave-ins cause deaths and injuries by:
- ✓ **Suffocation**
- ✓ **Crushing**
- ✓ **Loss of circulation**
- ✓ **Falling objects**

One cubic foot (12" x 12" x 12") can weigh between 90 and 140 pounds. Therefore, one cubic yard (3' x 3' x 3') weights as much as a backhoe (approximately 3000 pounds).

Subpart P applies to all open excavations in the earth's surface**.**
- ✓ **All trenches are excavations.**
- ✓ **All excavations are not trenches.**



Notice that employees are wearing hard hats but no ladders are present. Spoil piles are too close to the hole. Almost looks like they over did the shores for the photograph but no ladder for miles.

Notice the ladder is partially properly tied down. Three rungs out and tied but not staked.

Competent Person - Defined

Competent person means one who is capable of identifying existing hazards in the surroundings or working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to employees and has authorization to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate them.

In order to be a "**Competent Person**" for the purpose of this standard, one must have specific training in and be knowledgeable about soils analysis, the use of protective systems and the requirements of 29 CFR Part 1926.650-652 Subpart P.

Rescue training exercises are essential. Everyone is required to practice once a year. Yes, once a year.

Competent Person Duties

- Performs daily inspections of the protective equipment, trench conditions, safety equipment and adjacent areas.
- Inspections shall be made prior to the start of work and as needed throughout the shift.
- Inspections shall be made after every rainstorm or other hazard occurrence.
- Knowledge of emergency contact methods, telephone or radio dispatch.
- Removes employees and all other personnel from hazardous conditions and makes all changes necessary to ensure their safety.
- Insures all employees have proper protective equipment, hard-hats, reflective vests, steel-toed boots, harnesses, eye protection, hearing protection and drinking water.
- Categorize soil conditions and conduct visual and manual tests.
- Determine the appropriate protection system to be used.
- Maintain on-site records of inspections and protective systems used.
- Maintain on-site Hazard Communication program, Material Safety Data Sheets and a Risk Management Plan, if necessary.
- Maintain current First Aid and CPR certifications. Maintain current Confined Space certification training.

Scope of Work

1. During excavation work a competent person shall be on the job site at all times when personnel are working within or around the excavation. This is necessary in order to monitor soil conditions, equipment and protection systems employed.
2. The estimated locations of utility installations, such as sewer, telephone, fuel, electric, water lines, or any other underground installation that reasonably may be expected to be encountered during excavation work, shall be determined prior to opening an excavation.
3. Adequate precautions shall be taken to protect employees working in excavations, against the hazards posed by water accumulation.
4. Employees shall be protected from excavated or other materials or equipment that could pose a hazard by falling or rolling into excavations. Protection shall be provided by placing and keeping such material or equipment at least two (2') feet from the edge of excavations.
5. A stairway, ladder, or ramp shall be used as a means of access or egress in trench excavations that are four (4') feet or more in depth. The ladder(s), stairway(s), or ramp shall be spaced so that no employee in the trench excavation is more than twenty-five (25') feet from a means of egress. When ladder(s) are employed, the top of the ladder shall extend a minimum of three (3') feet above the ground and shall be properly secured.
6. When excavations are exposed to vehicular traffic, each employee shall wear a warning vest made with reflective material or highly visibility material. All personnel within the construction area shall wear a hard-hat at all times.
7. Employees shall not be permitted underneath loads handled by lifting or digging equipment. Employees shall be required to stand away from any vehicle being loaded or unloaded to avoid being struck by any spillage or falling materials.
8. In excavations where oxygen deficiency or gaseous conditions exist, or could be reasonably expected to exist, air in the excavation shall be tested.
9. Where oxygen deficiency (atmospheres containing less than 19.5 percent oxygen) exists, the area must be continuously ventilated until the oxygen levels are above 19.5 percent.

10. Where a gaseous condition exists, the area shall be ventilated until the flammable gas concentration is below 20 percent of the lower flammable limit.
11. Whenever oxygen deficiency or gaseous conditions exist or could reasonably exist, the area shall be monitored continuously to assure that employees are protected.
12. Where the stability of adjoining buildings, walls or other structures are endangered by excavation operations, support systems such as shoring, bracing, or underpinning shall be provided to ensure the stability of such structures for the protection of employees.
13. Sidewalks, pavement and appurtenant structures shall not be undermined unless a support system such as shoring is provided to protect employees from the possible collapse of such structures.

Always wait for the buried utilities to be marked before excavation begins. Believe it or not, this crew dug 9 feet deep before the Locator showed up and marked fiber optics in the same trench.

Notice that the employees do not have hard hats, ladders, or any protective systems. Major OSHA violations.

Personnel Protective Systems

Employees in excavations shall be protected from cave-ins by an adequate protective system, which shall be inspected by a competent person.

The use of protective systems is required for all excavations, in excess of five (5') feet, except when excavation is within stable rock.

Trench excavation less than five (5') feet in depth may not require the use of protective systems, unless there is evidence of a potential cave-in. The competent person shall determine the need for the use of protective systems when such conditions exist.

When sloping, benching or protective systems are required, refer to requirements in CFR 1926.652 (**OSHA Construction Standards**).

Whenever support systems, shield systems, or other protective systems are being used, a copy of the manufacturer's specifications, recommendations, and limitations sheet shall be in written form and maintained at the job site.

This poor soul is probably going to be a short timer here on earth. He is sitting on the sewer main in a bell shaped hole under a steel plate which cars are driving over. No protection at all. There was a ladder in the trench was about 50 feet away. He wouldn't make it out of a cave-in unless he had wings.

Excavation Protection Systems

The three basic protective systems for excavations and trenches are sloping and benching systems, shoring, and shields. The protective systems shall have the capacity to resist without failure all loads that are intended or could reasonably be expected to be applied to or transmitted to the system. Every employee in an excavation shall be protected from cave-ins by an adequate protective system.

Exceptions to Using Protective System:

- Excavations are made entirely in stable rock.
- Excavations are less than 5 feet deep and declared safe by a competent person.

Sloping and Benching Systems
There are four options for sloping**:**

- Slope to the angle required by the standard for Type C, which is the most unstable soil type.
- The table provided in Appendix B of the standard may be used to determine the maximum allowable angle (after determining the soil type).
- Tabulated data prepared by a registered professional engineer can be utilized.
- A registered professional engineer can design a sloping plan for a specific job.

Sloping and benching systems for excavations five (5) to twenty (20) feet in depth must be constructed under the instruction of a designated competent person. Sloping and benching systems for excavations greater than twenty (20) feet must be designed and stamped by a registered professional engineer. Sloping and benching specifications can be found in Appendix B of the OSHA Standard (Subpart P).

Shoring Systems
Shoring is another protective system or support system. Shoring utilizes a framework of vertical members (uprights), horizontal members (whales), and cross braces to support the sides of the excavation to prevent a cave-in. Metal hydraulic, mechanical or timber shoring are common examples.

This is my favorite photo of all. Here are two men in a 30-foot-deep trench without any protection or ladders. They are lucky to have a rope. Please do not work in this dangerous environment.

The different examples of shoring are found in the OSHA Standard under these appendices:

APPENDIX C - Timber Shoring for Trenches
APPENDIX D - Aluminum Hydraulic Shoring for Trenches
APPENDIX E - Alternatives to Timber Shoring

Shield Systems (Trench Boxes)
Shielding is the third method of providing a safe workplace. Unlike sloping and shoring, shielding does not prevent a cave-in. Shields are designed to withstand the soil forces caused by a cave-in and protect the employees inside the structure. Most shields consist of two flat, parallel metal walls that are held apart by metal cross braces.

Shielding design and construction is not covered in the OSHA Standards. Shields must be certified in design by a registered professional engineer and must have either a registration plate on the shield or registration papers from the manufacturer on file at the jobsite office.

ANY REPAIRS OR MODIFICATIONS MUST BE APPROVED BY THE MANUFACTURER.

Safety Precautions for Shield Systems
- Shields must not have any lateral movement when installed.
- Employees will be protected from cave-ins when entering and exiting the shield (examples - ladder within the shield or a properly sloped ramp at the end).
- Employees are not allowed in the shield during installation, removal, or during any vertical movement.

- Shields can be 2 ft. above the bottom of an excavation if they are designed to resist loads at the full depth and if there are no indications of caving under or behind the shield.
- The shield must extend at least 18 inches above the point where proper sloping begins (the height of the shield must be greater than the depth of the excavation).
- The open end of the shield must be protected from the exposed excavation wall. The wall must be sloped, shored, or shielded. Engineer designed end plates can be mounted on the ends of the shield to prevent cave-ins.

Personal Protective Equipment
It is **OSHA** policy for you to wear a hard hat, safety glasses, and work boots on the jobsite. Because of the hazards involved with excavations, other personal protective equipment may be necessary, depending on the potential hazards present (examples-goggles, gloves, and respiratory equipment).

Excavation & Trenching Guidelines

This section outlines procedures and guidelines for the protection of employees working in and around excavations and trenches. This section requires compliance with OSHA Standards described in Subpart P (**CFR 1926.650**) for the construction industry.

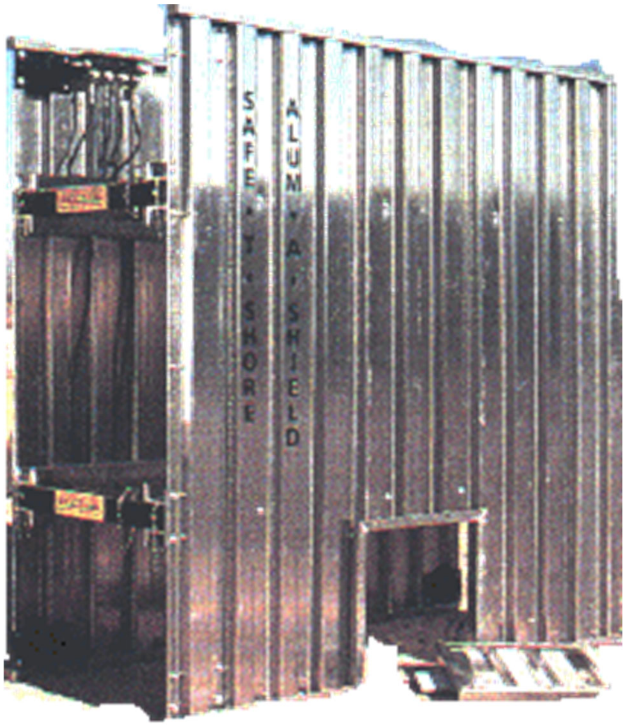
Safety compliance is mandatory to ensure employee protection when working in or around excavations.

The competent person(s) must be trained in accordance with the OSHA Excavation Standard, and all other programs that may apply (examples Hazard Communication, Confined Space, and Respiratory Protection), and must demonstrate a thorough understanding and knowledge of the programs and the hazards associated.

All other employees working in and around the excavation must be trained in the recognition of hazards associated with trenching and excavating.

REFERENCES

- 29 CFR 1926.650, Subpart P - Excavations
- Excavation Equipment Manufacturer Safety Procedures



Trench Shields and Boxes

Hazards

One of the reasons OSHA requires a competent person on-site during excavation & trenching are the numerous potential hazardous that may be encountered or created. Hazards include:

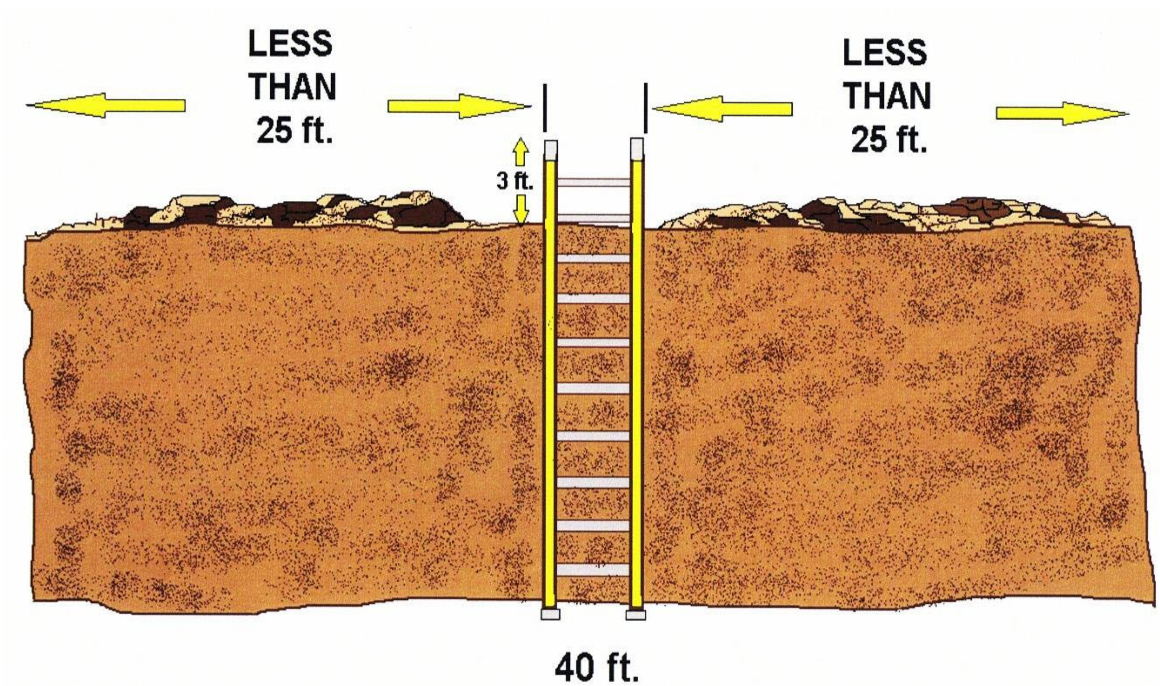
Electrocution
Gas Explosion
Entrapment
Struck by equipment
Suffocation

Hazard Controls

Before any work is performed and before any employees enter the excavation, a number of items must be checked and insured:

- Before any excavation, underground installations must be determined. This can be accomplished by either contacting the local utility companies or the local "**one-call'** center for the area. All underground utility locations must be documented on the proper forms. All overhead hazards (**surface encumbrances**) that create a hazard to employees must be removed or supported to eliminate the hazard.
- If the excavation is to be over 20 feet deep, it must be designed by a registered professional engineer who is registered in the state where the work will be performed.
- Adequate protective systems will be utilized to protect employees. This can be accomplished through sloping, shoring, or shielding.
- The worksite must be analyzed in order to design adequate protection systems and prevent cave-ins. There must also be an excavation safety plan developed to protect employees.
- Workers must be supplied with, and wear, any personal protective equipment deemed necessary to assure their protection.
- All spoil piles will be stored a minimum of **two (2) feet** from the sides of the excavation. The spoil pile must not block the safe means of egress.
- If a trench or excavation is 4 feet or deeper, stairways, ramps, or ladders will be used as a safe means of access and egress. For trenches, the employee must not have to travel any more than 25 feet of lateral travel to reach the stairway, ramp, or ladder.
- No employee will work in an excavation where water is accumulating unless adequate measures are used to protect the employees.
- A competent person will inspect all excavations and trenches daily, prior to employee exposure or entry, and after any rainfall, soil change, or any other time needed during the shift. The competent person must take prompt measures to eliminate any and all hazards.
- Excavations and trenches 4 feet or deeper that have the potential for toxic substances or hazardous atmospheres will be tested at least daily. If the atmosphere is inadequate, protective systems will be utilized.
- If work is in or around traffic, employees must be supplied with and wear orange reflective vests. Signs and barricades must be utilized to ensure the safety of employees, vehicular traffic, and pedestrians.

How many safety violations can you find in this photo?



Excavation Safety Plan

An excavation safety plan is required in written form. This plan is to be developed to the level necessary to insure complete compliance with the OSHA Excavation Safety Standard and state and local safety standards.

Excavation Safety Plan Factors:

- Utilization of the local one-call system.
- Determination of locations of all underground utilities.
- Consideration of confined space atmosphere potential.
- Proper soil protection systems and personal protective equipment and clothing.
- Determination of soil composition and classification.
- Determination of surface and subsurface water.
- Depth of excavation and length of time it will remain open.
- Proper adherence to all OSHA Standards, this excavation and trenching safety program, and any other coinciding safety programs.

1. Warning system for mobile equipment, methods to help prevent vehicles and equipment from falling in the trench can be accomplished by providing:

A. Barricades.
B. Hand or mechanical signals.
C. Stop logs.
D. Grade away from the excavation.

All equipment with an obstructed rear view is required to have a back-up alarm or an observer when backing {1926.601 (b) (4).}

2. Hazardous atmospheres, you must limit all exposures to hazardous atmospheres.

A. Oxygen deficient is anything less than 19.5% oxygen. Symptoms will include dizziness, increased heart rate or may experience a buzzing in the ears.
B. Normal is 21% oxygen.
C. Oxygen enriched atmospheres increase flammability of combustible materials.
D. Carbon monoxide causes oxygen starvation and can be fatal at a concentration of 1% for one minute. This is equal to 10,000 PPM. The Threshold Limit Value (**TLV**) is only 50 PPM.
E. If there is a possibility that a hazardous atmosphere exists or could be reasonably expected to exist, test the atmosphere before the employee enters an excavation. Some areas of concern include; digging near gas lines, sewers, landfills and near areas of high traffic.
F. Provide respirators or ventilation when needed. All personnel must be fit tested before wearing a respirator and all personnel must be training how to use ventilation.

The use of any respirator by employees will require a written respirator program form the employer {1926.103).

A. Ventilate trench if flammable gas exceeds 20% of the lower flammable limit.
B. Test the atmosphere often--this will ensure that the trench remains safe.
C. Perform regular maintenance on gas meters. Calibrate and change out filters regularly.
D. Never enter a hazardous atmosphere to rescue an employee unless you have been trained in rescue techniques and have proper rescue equipment. More than half the deaths occur while attempting a rescue.

3. **Emergency rescue equipment must be available when a hazardous atmosphere exists or could be reasonably expected to exist**.

A. Respirator must be suitable for the exposure. An air supplied or self-contained breathing apparatus is preferable

B. Harness and lifeline is required when an employee enters bellbottom piers and other deep confined spaces. The lifeline must be attended at all times.

Employees entering confined spaces must be trained. {1926.21 (b) (6) I}
Specific requirements for welding in confined spaces {1926.352 (g) and 1926.653 (b)}.

4. Protection from hazards associated with water accumulation is necessary to prevent cave-ins.

A. Methods for controlling accumulated water vary with each situation.

B. Employees are not permitted to work in trenches were water accumulation exists.

C. Special support system or shield systems may be used to protect employees from cave-ins.

D. Water removal equipment may be used and must be monitored by a competent person to prevent water accumulation.

E. Safety harness and lifeline may be used to protect employees.

F. Surface water must be diverted and controlled.

G. Trench must be inspected after rain.

5. Stability of adjacent structures to protect employees from cave-ins.

A. Support systems such as shoring, bracing, or underpinning must be used to support structures that may be unstable due to excavation operations.

B. Excavation below the base or footing of a foundation or wall is not permitted unless:
   i. Support system is provided to ensure the stability of the structure.
   ii. The excavation is in stable rock.
   iii. A Registered Professional Engineer approves the operation.

C. Support systems must be provided for sidewalks, pavements and other structures that may be affected by the excavation operations.

6. Protection of employees from loose rock or soil.

A. Employees must be protected from being struck by materials falling or rolling from the edge and the face of the trench.

B. Spoils and equipment must be set back at least 2 feet from the edge of the trench and/or a retaining device must be installed.

7. Fall protection is required for walkways and bridges over trenches. Other fall protection may also be required.

8. Remotely located excavations shall be backfilled, covered, or barricaded (for example wells, pits, shafts, etc.)

Inspections must be made:

A. Daily prior to starting work

B. As needed throughout the shift by a competent person.

C. After every rainstorm.

D. After other hazard increasing occurrence (snowstorm, windstorm, thaw, earthquake, etc.).

E. Inspect the trench for indications of possible cave-ins (fissures, tension cracks, sloughing, undercutting, water seepage, bulging at the bottom).

F. Inspect adjacent areas (spoil piles, structures).

G. To protective systems and their components (uprights, wales sheeting, shields hydraulics) before and after use.
H. Check for indications of a hazardous or potentially hazardous atmosphere.
I. Test the atmosphere if a hazard could reasonably be expected to exist.

Remove employees from the trench when there are indications of possible cave-ins, protective system failures, or other potentially hazardous conditions. Never work in water without proper protection. You will have to wear a Lifeline with a rope to drag your dead body out of these hazardous conditions.

It is not a legal place for ladder storage.

Soil Classification and Identification

The OSHA Standards define soil classifications within the Simplified Soil Classification Systems, which consist of four categories: Stable rock, Type A, Type B, and Type C. Stability is greatest in stable rock and decreases through Type A and B to Type C, which is the least stable.

Appendix A of the standard provides soil mechanics terms and types of field tests used to determine soil classifications. Stable rock is defined as natural solid mineral matter that can be excavated with vertical sides and remain intact while exposed.

Type A soil is defined as:

- Cohesive soils with an unconfined compressive strength of 1.5 tons per square foot (**TSF**) or greater.
- Cemented soils like caliche and hardpan are considered Type A.

Soil is NOT Type A if:

- It is fissured.
- The soil is subject to vibration from heavy traffic, pile driving or similar effects.
- The soil has been previously disturbed.
- The material is subject to other factors that would require it to be classified as a less stable material.
- The exclusions for Type A most generally eliminate it from most construction situations.

Type B soil is defined as:

- Cohesive soil with an unconfined compressive strength greater than .5 TSF, but less than 1.5 TSF.
- Granular cohesion-less soil including angular gravel, silt, silt loam, and sandy loam.
- The soil has been previously disturbed except that soil classified as Type C soil.
- Soil that meets the unconfined compressive strength requirements of Type A soil, but is fissured or subject to vibration.
- Dry rock that is unstable.

Type C soil is defined as:

- Cohesive soil with an unconfined compressive strength of .5 TSF or less.
- Granular soils including gravel, sand and loamy sand.
- Submerged soil or soil from which water is freely seeping.
- Submerged rock that is not stable.

Soil Test & Identification

The competent person will classify the soil type in accordance with the definitions in Appendix A based on at least one visual and one manual analysis. These tests should be run on freshly excavated samples from the excavation and are designed to determine stability based on a number of criteria: the cohesiveness, the presence of fissures, the presence and amount of water, the unconfined compressive strength, and the duration of exposure, undermining, and the presence of layering, prior excavation and vibration.

The cohesion tests are based on methods to determine the presence of clay. Clay, silt, and sand are size classifications, with clay being the smallest sized particles, silt intermediate and sand the largest.

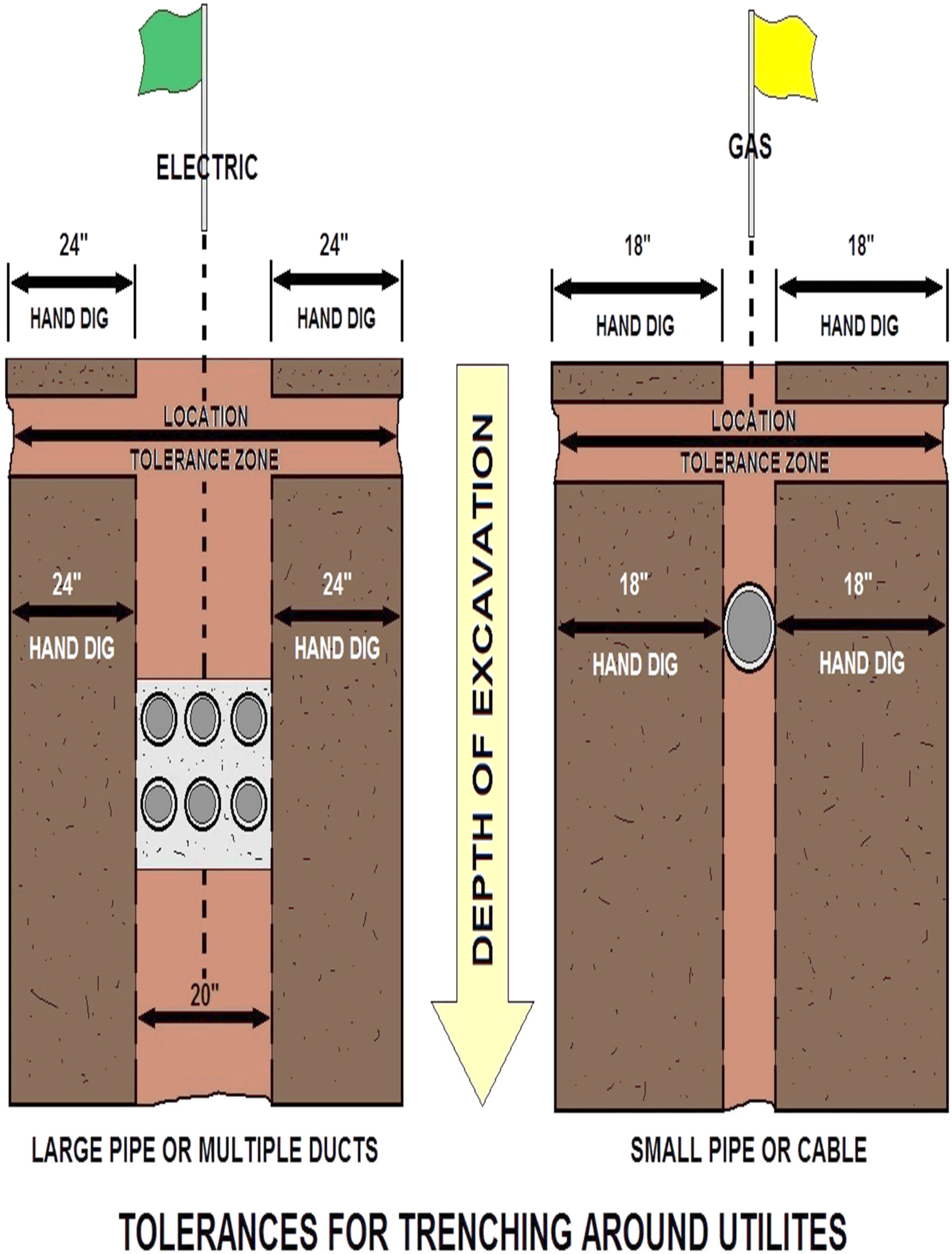
Clay minerals exhibit good cohesion and plasticity (can be molded). Sand exhibits no elasticity and virtually no cohesion unless surface wetting is present. The degree of cohesiveness and plasticity depend on the amounts of all three types and water.

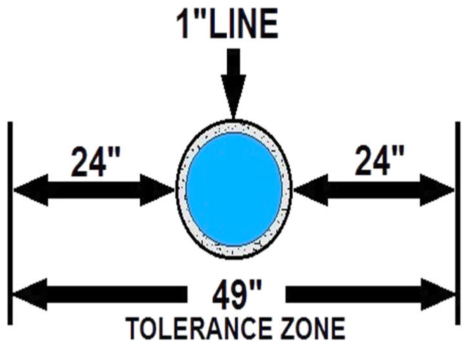
When examining the soil, three questions must be asked: Is the sample granular or cohesive? Is it fissured or non-fissured? What is the unconfined compressive strength measured in TSF?

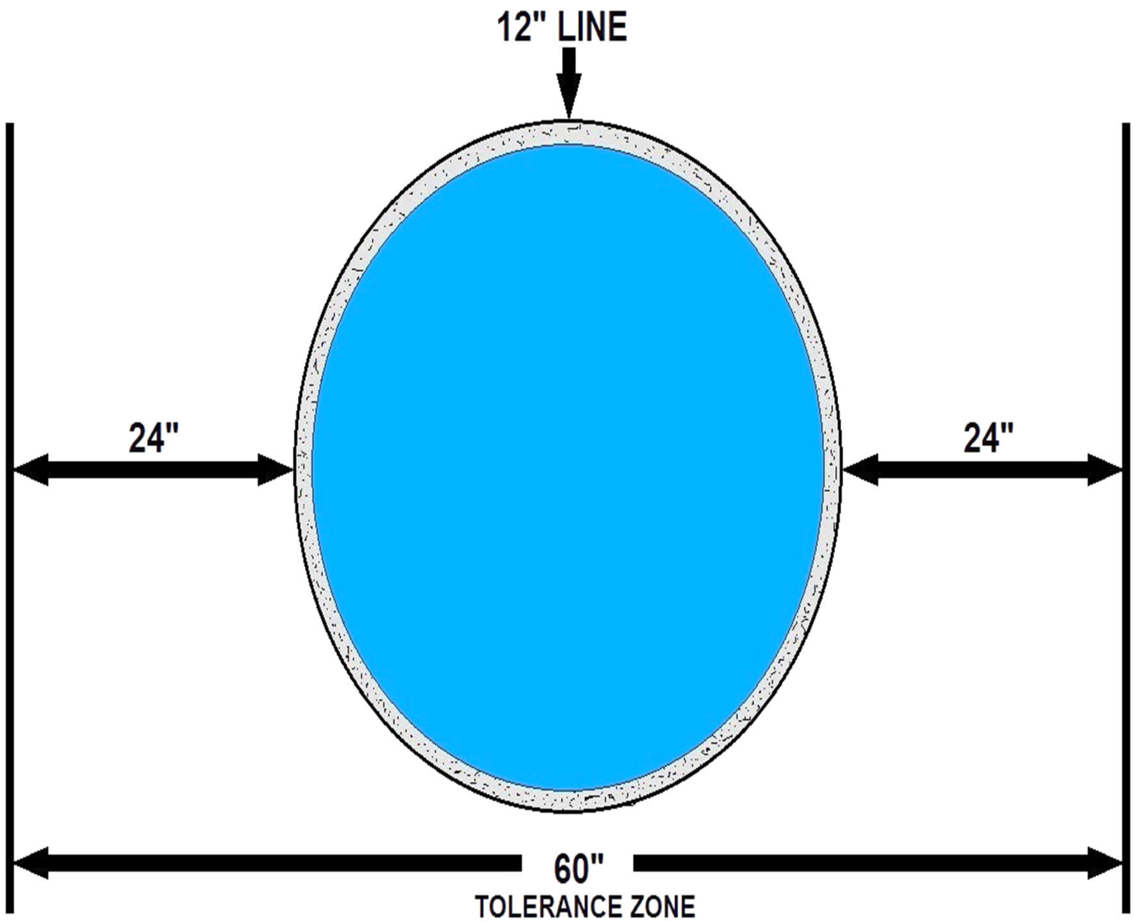
The competent person will perform several tests of the excavation to obtain consistent, supporting data along its depth and length. The soil is subject to change several times within the scope of an excavation and the moisture content will vary with weather and job conditions. The competent person must also determine the level of protection based on what conditions exist at the time of the test, and allow for changing conditions.

Ribbon Soil Test

Shoring Diagram #1







TOLERANCE ZONES USED TO AVOID HITTING UTILITES WHILE EXCAVATING

Sloping

MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE SLOPES

SOIL TYPE	SLOPE (H:V)	ANGLE(º)
Stable Rock	Vertical	90º
Type A	3/4 : 1	53º
Type B	1 : 1	45º
Type C	1 1/2 : 1	34º

MAXIMUM ALLOWABLE SLOPE means the steepest incline of an excavation face that is acceptable for the most favorable site conditions as protection against cave-ins and is expressed as the ratio of horizontal distance to vertical rise (**H:V**).

The tables and configurations within Appendix B may be used to a maximum depth of twenty (20') feet deep. Jobs more than twenty (20') feet in depth require the design of a sloping plan by a registered professional engineer (**RPE**). If configurations are used for depths less than 20 feet other than those found in Appendix B, they must also be designed by a registered professional engineer.

Shielding

The third method of providing a safe workplace in excavations is shielding. Shielding is different from shoring and sloping in that it does not prevent cave-ins. Instead, it protects the workers in the event of a cave-in. Its function is therefore somewhat similar to that of a bomb shelter.

Shields are simply devices that, when placed in an excavation, have sufficient structural strength to support the force of a cave-in should one occur. Shields take a number of different shapes and sizes. Most shields consist of two flat, parallel metal walls which are held apart by metal cross braces which are placed at the ends of the "**Box**" to allow for the installation of pipe within its interior dimensions.

These boxes are used to greatest effect in what is known as "cut and cover" operations where a contractor excavates just enough trench to install the shield, then sets a joint of pipe, then excavates further, then pulls the shield forward to install another joint while the first is being backfilled. This method is extremely cost effective in that it is fast, safe, requires minimum excavation and minimum open trench. It has become the preferred method of laying pipe in most instances. While original shields were quite large, smaller shields have gained in popularity with public works maintenance crews and contractors working in shallow excavations because of their ease of use. Recently, round shields, made of corrugated metal have appeared. The sizes, shapes and possibilities for the applications of shields are endless. If they are to be used, however, several points must be borne in mind.

1. Shield construction is not covered by the standard. Users must rely on manufacturers' requirements. For this reason, it is critical that you know your supplier. Reputable manufacturers supply boxes designed by registered professional engineers, and the standard requires that they are certified for their applications. Do not make the mistake of having the neighborhood welder fabricate one. A user must know that their shield is appropriate for the situation.

2. Bent cross braces are not braces, they are hinges. Any bent of deformed structural member must be repaired or replaced according to the manufactures' guidelines.

3. The manufacturer must approve any modification to the shields.

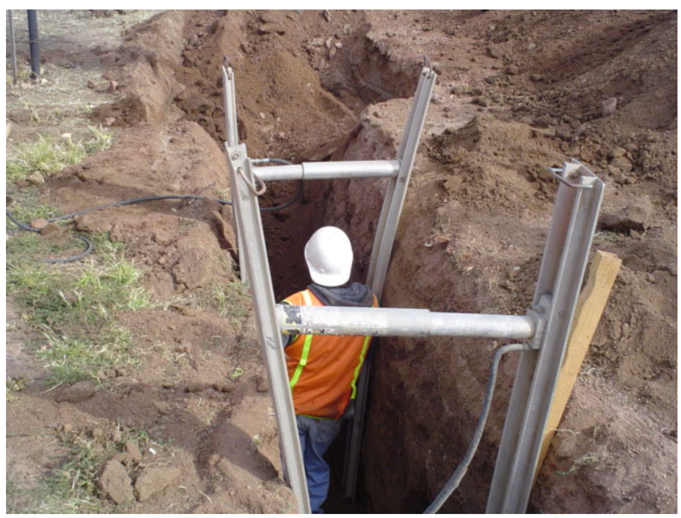
4. Shields must be installed so as to prevent lateral movement in the event of a cave-in.

5. Shields may ride two feet above the bottom of an excavation, provided they are calculated to support the full depth of the excavation and there is no caving under or behind the shield.

6. Workers must enter and leave the shield in a protected manner, such as by ladder within the shield or a properly sloped ramp at the end.

7. Workers may not remain in the shield during its installation, removal or during vertical movement.

8. Do not forget about the open end of the shield if it exposes a wall of the excavation. The wall should be sloped, shored or shielded off to prevent a cave-in from the end.



9. If the excavation is deeper than the shield is tall, attached shields of the correct specifications may be used or the excavation may be sloped back to maximum allowable angle from a point 18 inches below the top of the shield.

Complete Rule and further instructions are located in TLC's Competent Person Course.

All of this text is credited to OSHA.

Inspections

Daily inspection of excavations, the adjacent areas and protective systems shall be made by the competent person for evidence of a situation that could result in a cave-in, indications of failure of protective systems, hazardous atmospheres or other hazardous conditions.

- All inspections shall be conducted by the competent person prior to the start of work and as needed throughout the shift.
- Inspections will be made after every rainstorm or any other increasing hazard.
- All documented inspections will be kept on file in the jobsite safety files and forwarded to the Safety Director weekly.
- A copy of the ***Daily Excavation Inspection*** form is located at the end of this program.

The competent person(s) must be trained in accordance with the OSHA Excavation Standard, and all other programs that may apply (examples Hazard Communication, Confined Space, and Respiratory Protection), and must demonstrate a thorough understanding and knowledge of the programs and the hazards associated. All other employees working in and around the excavation must be trained in the recognition of hazards associated with trenching and excavating.

Two unsafe excavation examples: Top, notice the man in a 6-foot-deep trench with no ladder or shoring, and the placement of spoil. Bottom picture, utilities are marked after the excavation has begun, no hard hats, no ladders, no protective system, incorrect spoil placement.

DAILY EXCAVATION CHECKLIST

Client		**Date**	
Project Name		**Approx. Temp.**	
Project Location		**Approx. Wind Dir.**	
Job Number		**Safety Rep**	
Excavation Depth & Width		**Soil Classification**	
Protective System Used			
Activities In Excavation			
Competent Person			

Excavation > 4 feet deep? ___Yes ___No

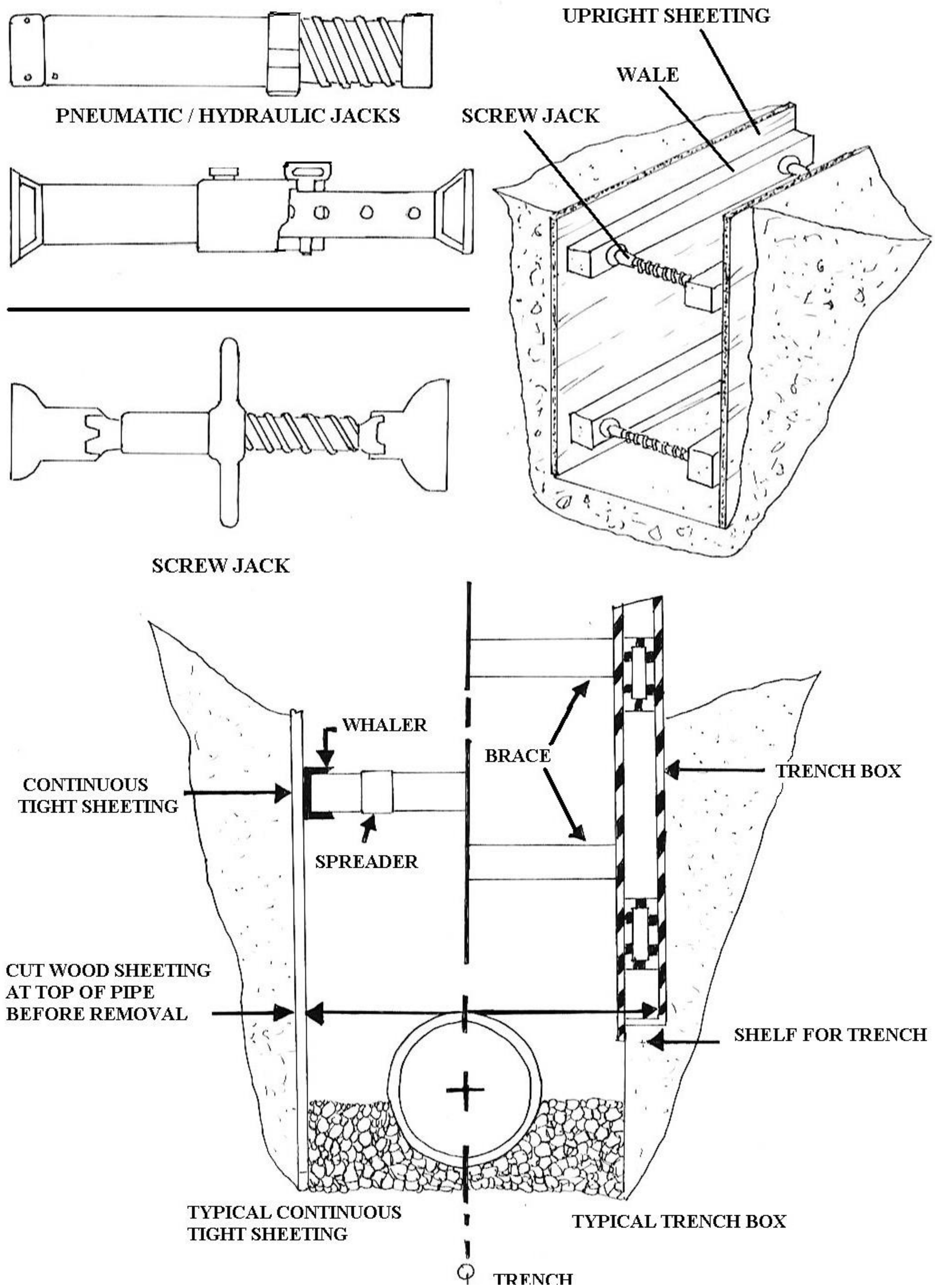
NOTE: **Trenches over 4 feet in depth are considered excavations. Any items marked *NO* on this form *MUST* be remediated prior to any employees entering the excavation.**

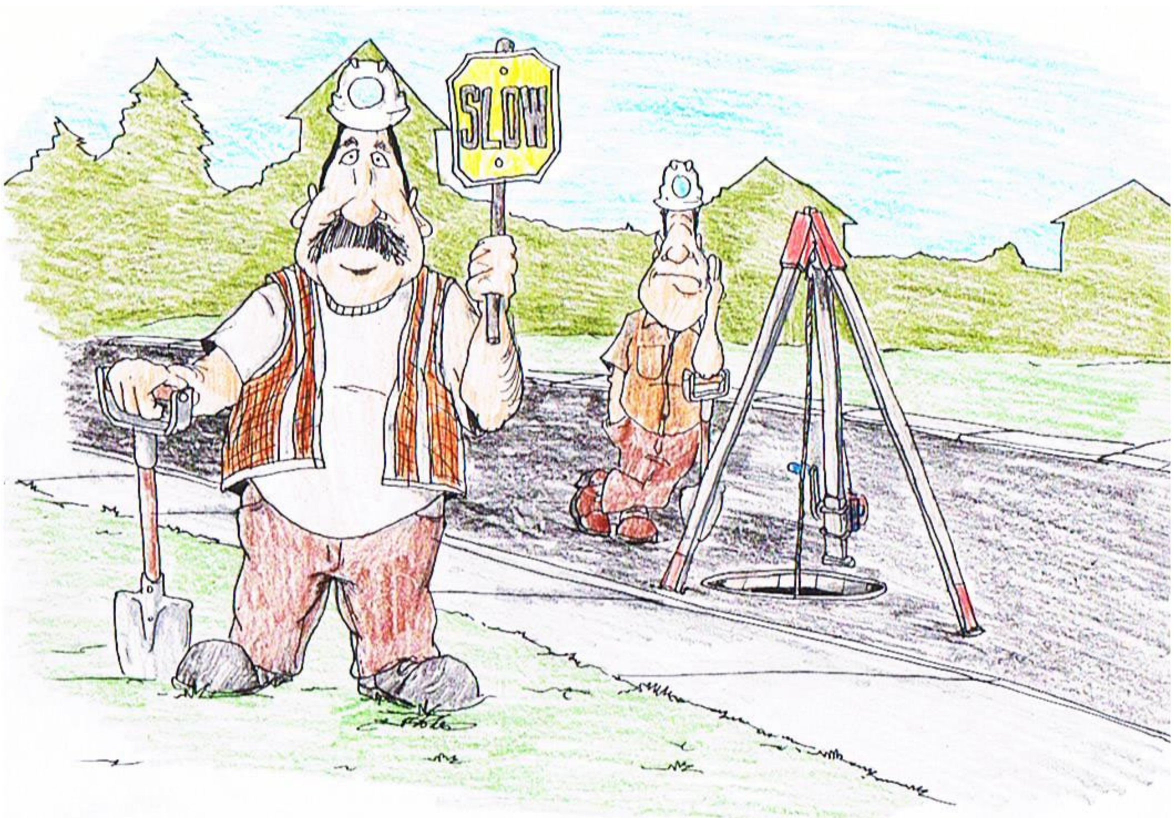
YES	NO	N/A	DESCRIPTION
			GENERAL
			Employees protected from cave-ins & loose rock/soil that could roll into the excavation
			Spoils, materials & equipment set back at least 2 feet from the edge of the excavation.
			Engineering designs for sheeting &/or manufacturer's data on trench box capabilities on site
			Adequate signs posted and barricades provided
			Training (toolbox meeting) conducted w/ employees prior to entering excavation
			UTILITIES
			Utility company contacted & given 24 hours' notice &/or utilities already located & marked
			Overhead lines located, noted and reviewed with the operator
			Utility locations reviewed with the operator, & precautions taken to ensure contact does not occur
			Utilities crossing the excavation supported, and protected from falling materials
			Underground installations protected, supported or removed when excavation is open
			WET CONDITIONS
			Precautions taken to protect employees from water accumulation (continuous dewatering)
			Surface water or runoff diverted /controlled to prevent accumulation in the excavation
			Inspection made after every rainstorm or other hazard increasing occurrence

HAZARDOUS ATMOSPHERES			
			Air in the excavation tested for oxygen deficiency, combustibles, other contaminants
			Ventilation used in atmospheres that are oxygen rich/deficient &/or contains hazardous substances
			Ventilation provided to keep LEL below 10 %
			Emergency equipment available where hazardous atmospheres could or do exist
			Safety harness and lifeline used
			Supplied air necessary (if yes, contact safety department)
ENTRY & EXIT			
			Exit (i.e. ladder, sloped wall) no further than 25 feet from ANY employee
			Ladders secured and extend 3 feet above the edge of the trench
			Wood ramps constructed of uniform material thickness, cleated together @ the bottom
			Employees protected from cave-ins when entering or exiting the excavation

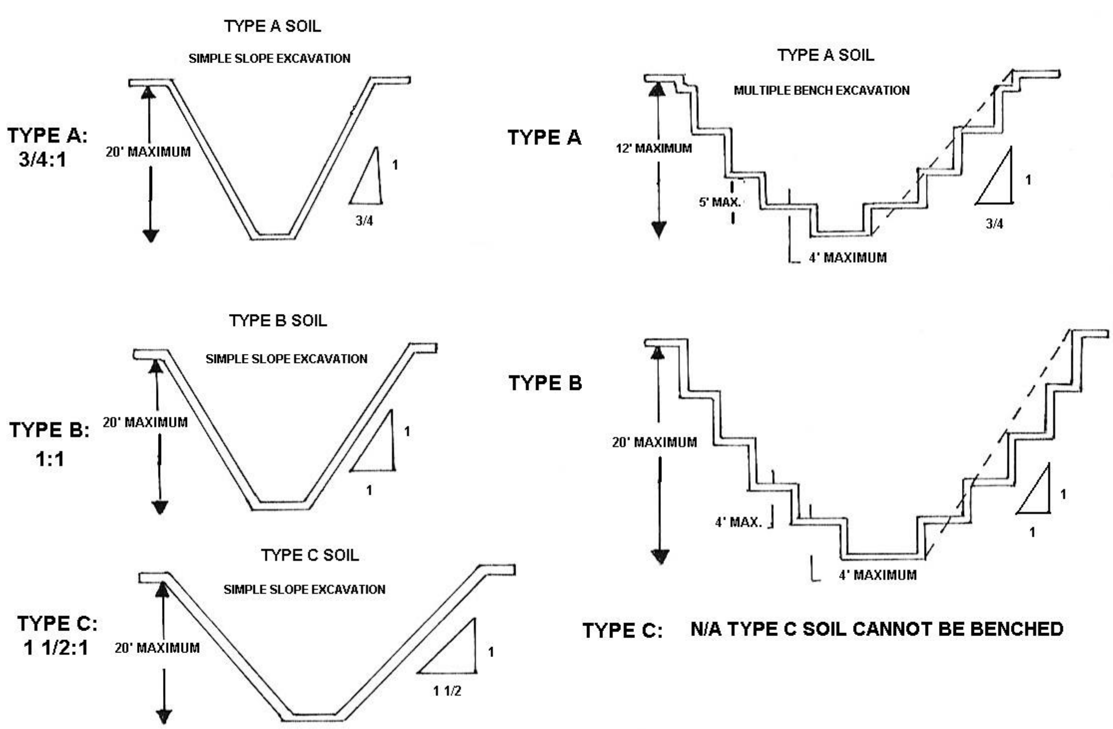
Explain how you have secured the site and made it safe to work inside (if possible)

Shoring Diagram #2





SLOPING **BENCHING**



One-call Center or Bluestakes

You are required to locate or call for proper buried utility locations before you dig or excavate. You will usually need a 48-hour notice before you excavate. Please check with your local one-call system.

Red spray marks-Electricity, Yellow-Gas, Blue-Water

Orange spray marks - Telephone & Fiber Optics

One Call Program

According to federal safety statistics, damage from unauthorized digging is the major cause of natural gas pipeline failures. To prevent excavation damage to all utilities, including pipelines, all 50 states have instituted "***One Call***" Programs. The programs provide telephone numbers for excavation contractors to call before excavation begins.

The one-call operator will notify a pipeline company of any planned excavation in the vicinity of its pipeline so that the company can flag the location of the pipeline and assign personnel to be present during excavation, if necessary.

In a related effort, a joint government-industry team has developed a public education program entitled "***Dig Safely***". The team involved representatives from the U.S. Department of Transportation, gas and liquid pipeline companies, distribution companies, excavators, the insurance industry, one-call systems and the telecommunications industry. This campaign provides information to the general public concerning underground utilities and the danger of unknowingly digging into buried lines and cables.

The program has posters, brochures and other printed materials available for use by interested organizations. For more information, contact **www.digsafely.com**.

Telephone Cables, difficult to dig around, just as with as electrical lines.

One-Call Center, Underground Utilities

One Call Centers were established as a one-call notification system by underground facility owners to assist excavators with statutory requirements to notify underground facility owners prior to excavation. This damage prevention service is provided free of charge to any individual or company planning to excavate. By participating in the program and getting underground facilities located, you can:

- Comply with Federal Law
- Avoid Injuries
- Prevent costly damages and interruptions of facility services
- Save time and money
- Avoid hazards
- Eliminate construction delays

Color Codes for marking underground utility lines.

Red	**Electric Power**
Yellow	**Gas-Oil- Product Lines**
Orange	**Communication, Cable television**
Blue	**Water systems, slurry pipelines**
Green	**Sanitary sewer system**
Pink	**Temporary survey markings**

Example of a One-Call Center's Rules
Excavations: determining location of underground facilities; providing information; excavator marking; on-site representative; validity period of markings.

A. A person shall not make or begin any excavation in any public street, alley, right-of-way dedicated to the public use or utility easement or on any express or implied private property utility easement without first determining whether underground facilities will be encountered, and if so where they are located from each and every public utility, municipal corporation or other person having the right to bury such underground facilities within the public street, alley, right-of-way or utility easement and taking measures for control of the facilities in a careful and prudent manner.

B. Every public utility, municipal corporation or other person having the right to bury underground facilities shall file with the corporation commission the job title, address and telephone number of the person or persons from whom the necessary information may be obtained. Such person or persons shall be readily available during established business hours. The information on file shall also include the name, address and telephone number of each one-call notification center to which the owner of the facility belongs. Upon receipt of inquiry or notice from the excavator, the owner of the facility shall respond as promptly as practical, but in no event later than two days, by marking such facility with stakes, paint or in some customary manner. No person shall begin excavating before the location and marking are complete or the excavator is notified that marking is unnecessary.

C. On a timely request by the owner of a facility, the excavator shall mark the boundaries of the location requested to be excavated in accordance with a color code designated by the commission or by applicable custom or standard in the industry. A request under this subsection for excavator marking does not alter any other requirement of this section.

D. In performing the marking required by subsection B of this section, the owner of an underground facility installed after December 31, 1988 in a public street, alley or right-of–way dedicated to public use, but not including any express or implied private property utility easement, shall locate the facility by referring to installation records of the facility and utilizing one of the following methods:

1. Vertical line or facility markers.
2. Locator strip or locator wire.
3. Signs or permanent markers.
4. Electronic or magnetic location or tracing techniques.
5. Electronic or magnetic sensors or markers.
6. Metal sensors or sensing techniques.
7. Sonar techniques.
8. Underground electrical or radio transmitters.
9. Manual location techniques, including pot-holing.
10. Surface extensions of underground facilities.
11. Any other surface or subsurface location technique at least as accurate as the other marking methods in this subsection not prohibited by the commission or by federal or state law.

E. For an underground facility other than one installed after December 31, 1988, in a public street, alley or right-of-way dedicated to public use, in performing the marking required by subsection B of this section, the owner may refer to installation or other records relating to the facility to assist in locating the facility and shall locate the facility utilizing one of the methods listed under subsection D of this section.

If an underground facility owner is unable to complete the location and marking within the time period provided by subsection B of this section, the facility owner shall satisfy the requirements of this section by proving prompt notice of these facts to the excavator.

Assigning one or more representatives to be present on the excavation site at all pertinent times as requested by the excavator to provide facility location services until the facilities have been located and marked.

The underground facility owner shall bear all of its costs associated with assigning representatives. If representatives are assigned under this subsection, the excavator is not responsible or liable for damage or repair of the owner's underground facility while acting under the direction of an assigned representative of the owner, unless the damage or need for repair was caused by the excavator's negligence.

Natural Gas Safety

That familiar blue flame that plays such an important role in our lives should, like other sources of energy, be treated with respect. Following a few simple guidelines can help ensure that you can safely enjoy all the benefits natural gas has to offer.

Natural gas is colorless and invisible. When it burns it should appear as a clear, blue flame. Because natural gas has no odor, a special chemical called mercaptan is added to make it easy to detect gas leaks from pipes or appliances. This odor is commonly described as a rotten-egg smell.

Natural gas is clean-burning. When burned completely, it produces only water vapor and carbon dioxide, just as you do when you breathe. Natural gas is such a safe and dependable fuel that it's easy to take for granted. But please, never take safety for granted. As with any source of energy, you should follow certain safety measures when using natural gas.

When it's taken from the ground, natural gas is tasteless, colorless and odorless. To make it easier to detect, a harmless but strong-smelling odorant is added, Ethyl Mercaptan. If you ever smell this "***rotten egg-like***" odor, it may mean there is a gas leak.

WHAT TO DO IF YOU SMELL GAS:

- Do not smoke. Do not use lighters or matches.
- Do not turn on/off any switches or appliances.
- Our personnel are available 24 hours a day to respond to any emergency call.

Carbon Monoxide

Carbon monoxide is produced when burning any fuel incompletely, such as charcoal, gasoline or wood. Carbon monoxide is highly poisonous and it has no odor, taste or color. If natural gas equipment is not maintained, adjusted and operated properly, it could produce carbon monoxide.

Your natural gas appliances should produce a clear, steady blue flame. If your gas appliances exhibit an unusual behavior or produce a yellowish-color flame, that may be a warning sign that your appliance is producing carbon monoxide.

A licensed professional should inspect appliances annually to insure safe operation. An inspection will accomplish the following:

- Make sure the appliance is installed properly and that it is in good working condition.
- Ensure that there is enough fresh air circulating for the fuel to burn properly.
- Check that vents are in good condition and are not blocked with debris.

Other helpful tips:

- The area surrounding your gas appliances should be clear from clutter or trash.
- Carbon monoxide detectors may be helpful in your home or business. But remember, a carbon monoxide detector should never be substituted for using equipment safely - which includes having your heating and cooking equipment inspected once a year by a trained professional.

OSHA's General Industry Regulation, §1910.146 Permit-required confined spaces, contains requirements for practices and procedures to protect employees in general industry from the hazards of entry into permit-required confined spaces. This regulation does not apply to construction.

OSHA's Construction Safety and Health Regulations Part 1926 do not contain a permit-required confined space regulation. Subpart C, §1926.21 Safety training and education specifies training for personnel who are required to enter confined spaces and defines a "***confined or enclosed space***."

Excavation Chapter Post Quiz

1. A competent person is one who is capable of __________________existing hazards in the surroundings or working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous, or dangerous to employees; and who has authorization to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate them.

2. In order to be a "Competent Person" for the purpose of this standard, one must have specific training in and be _____________about soils analysis, the use of protective systems and the requirements of 29 CFR Part 1926.650-652 Subpart P.

Competent Person Duties

3. __________________daily inspections of the protective equipment, trench conditions, safety equipment and adjacent areas.

4. ________________ shall be made prior to the start of work and as needed throughout the shift.

5. _______________shall be made after every rainstorm or other hazard occurrence.

6. _______________of emergency contact methods, telephone or radio dispatch.

7. ________________ the appropriate protection system to be used.

8. _________________on-site records of inspections and protective systems used.

9. ______________ current First Aid and CPR certifications. Maintain current confined space certification training.

10. During excavation work, a competent person shall be on the job site at all times when personnel are working within or around the excavation. This is necessary in order to _____________soil conditions, equipment and protection systems employed.

11. The estimated locations of utility installations, such as sewer, telephone, fuel, electric, water lines, or any other underground installation that reasonably may be expected to be encountered during excavation work, shall be _____________ prior to opening an excavation.

12. Adequate _______________shall be taken to protect employees working in excavations, against the hazards posed by water accumulation.

13. ________________shall be protected from excavated or other materials, or equipment, that could pose a hazard by falling or rolling into excavations.

14. Protection shall be provided by placing and keeping such material or equipment at least two (2') feet from the edge of __________________.

15. A stairway, ladder, or ramp shall be used as a means of _________________in trench excavations that are four (4') feet or more in depth.

16. The ladder(s), stairway(s), or ramp shall be spaced so that no employee in the trench excavation is more than twenty (25') feet from a _________________.

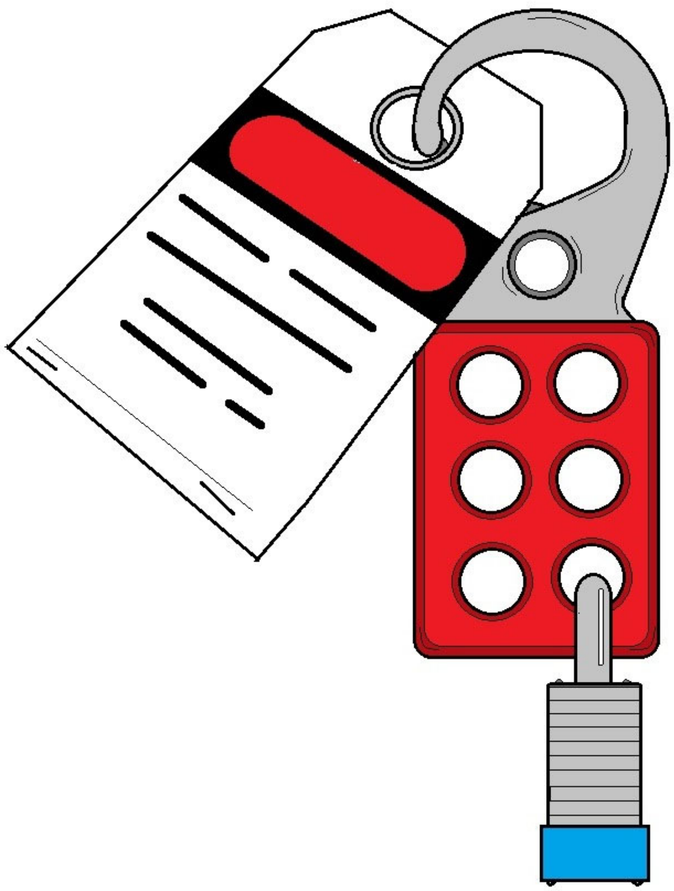
17. When ladder(s) are employed, the top of the ladder shall extend a minimum of three (3') feet above the ground and shall be __________________.

18. When ___________________ are exposed to vehicular traffic, each employee shall wear a warning vest made with reflective material or high visibility material.

General Safety Training Chapter
Lockout – Tagout/Ladder/Fire/Asbestos

Section Focus: You will learn the basics of general construction safety procedures. At the end of this section, you the student will be able to understand and describe lockout-tagout, ladder, fire and asbestos safety procedures. There is a post quiz at the end of this section to review your comprehension and a final examination in the Assignment for your contact hours.

Scope/Background: OSHA requires employers to train employees on the dangers and safety procedures of lockout-tagout, ladder, fire and asbestos related concerns.



USE LOCK-OUT TAGS, LOCKS AND HASPS TO DENERGIZE EQUIPMENT TO AVOID ACCIDENTAL START-UP AND PREVENT INJURIES OR DEATH

(LOTO) Lockout and Tagout

Purpose

Control of Hazardous energy is the purpose of the Lockout- Tagout Policy. This policy establishes the requirements for isolation of both kinetic and potential electrical, chemical, thermal, hydraulic and pneumatic and gravitational energy prior to equipment repair, adjustment or removal. The Lockout -Tagout Electrical Safety Policy is part of your overall safety program. If you do not understand this policy, it’s your responsibly to ask your supervisor to have this policy explained to you.

Reference: OSHA Standard 29 CFR 1910. 147, the control of hazardous energy.

Definitions

Authorized (Qualified) Employees are the only ones certified to lock and tag-out equipment or machinery. Whether an employee is considered to be qualified will depend upon various circumstances in the workplace. It is likely for an individual to be considered "**qualified**" with regard to certain equipment in the workplace, but "**unqualified**" as to other equipment.

An employee who is undergoing on-the-job training and in the course of such training, has demonstrated an ability to perform duties safely at his or her level of training and who is under the direct supervision of a qualified person, is considered to be "**qualified**" for the performance of those duties.

Affected Employees are those employees who operate machinery or equipment upon which lockout or tagging out is required under this program. Training of these individuals will be less stringent in that it will include the purpose and use of the lockout procedures.

Other Employees are identified as those that do not fall into the authorized, affected or qualified employee category. Essentially, it will include all other employees. These employees will be provided instruction in what the program is and not to touch any machine or equipment when they see that it has been locked or tagged out.

Training

Authorized Employees Training

All maintenance employees and Department Supervisors will be trained to use the Lock and Tagout Procedures. The training will be conducted by the Supervisor or Safety Coordinator at time of initial hire. Retraining shall be held at least annually. The training will consist of the following:

- Review of General Procedures.
- Review of Specific Procedures for machinery, equipment and processes.
- Location and use of Specific Procedures.
- Procedures when questions arise.

Affected Employee Training

- Only trained and authorized Employees will repair, replace or adjust machinery, equipment or processes.
- Affected Employees may not remove Locks, locking devices or tags from machinery, equipment or circuits.
- Purpose and use of the lockout procedures.

Other Employee Training

- Only trained and authorized Employees will repair, replace or adjust machinery or Equipment.
- Other Employees may not remove Locks, locking devices or tags from machinery, equipment or circuits.

Preparation for Lock and Tagout Procedures
A Lockout - Tagout survey will be conducted to locate and identify all energy sources to verify which switches or valves supply energy to machinery and equipment. Dual or redundant controls will need to be removed.

A Tagout Schedule will be developed for each piece of equipment and machinery. This schedule describes the energy sources, location of disconnects, type of disconnect, special hazards and special safety procedures. The schedule will be reviewed each time to ensure employees properly lock and tag out equipment and machinery.

If a Tagout Schedule does not exist for a particular piece of equipment, machinery and process, one must be developed prior to conducting a Lockout - Tagout. As repairs and/or renovations of existing electrical systems are made, standardized controls will be used. It is your departmental supervisor's responsibility to ensure that a schedule is made.

Routine Maintenance & Machine Adjustments
Lock and Tag out procedures are not required if equipment must be operating for proper adjustment. This rare exception may be used only by trained and authorized employees when specific procedures have been developed to safely avoid hazards with proper training.

All consideration shall be made to prevent the need for an employee to break the plane of a normally guarded area of the equipment by use of tools and other devices.

Standard Operating Procedure (SOP): General Lock and Tag out Procedures
Before working on, repairing, adjusting or replacing machinery and equipment, the following procedures will be utilized to place the machinery and equipment in a neutral or zero mechanical state.

All of this text is credited to OSHA.

Preparation for Shutdown.

Before authorized or affected employees turn off a machine or piece of equipment, the authorized employee will have knowledge of the type and magnitude of the energy, the hazards of the energy to be controlled, and the means to control the energy.

Notify all affected employees that the machinery, equipment or process will be out of service.

Machine or Equipment Shutdown
The machine or equipment will be turned off or shut down using the specific procedures for that specific machine. An orderly shutdown will be utilized to avoid any additional or increased hazards to employees as a result of equipment de-energization.

If the machinery, equipment or process is in operation, follow normal stopping procedures (depress stop button, open toggle switch, etc.). Move switch or panel arms to "Off" or "Open" positions and close all valves or other energy isolating devices so that the energy source(s) is disconnected or isolated from the machinery or equipment.

Machine or Equipment Isolation
All energy control devices that are needed to control the energy to the machine or equipment will be physically located and operated in such a manner as to isolate the machine or equipment from the energy source.

Lockout or Tagout Device Application.
Lockout or tagout devices will be affixed to energy isolating devices by authorized employees. Lockout devices will be affixed in a manner that will hold the energy isolating devices from the "safe" or "off" position.

Where tagout devices are used, they will be affixed in such a manner that will clearly state that the operation or the movement of energy isolating devices from the "safe" or "off" positions is prohibited.

The tagout devices will be attached to the same point a lock would be attached. If the tag cannot be affixed at that point, the tag will be located as close as possible to the device in a position that will be immediately obvious to anyone attempting to operate the device.

Lock and tag out all energy devices by use of hasps, chains and valve covers with assigned individual locks.

Stored Energy
Following the application of the lockout or tagout devices to the energy isolating devices, all potential or residual energy will be relieved, disconnected, restrained, and otherwise rendered safe.

Where the re-accumulation of stored energy to a hazardous energy level is possible, verification of isolation will be continued until the maintenance or servicing is complete.

Release stored energy (capacitors, springs, elevated members, rotating fly wheels, and hydraulic/air/gas/steam systems) must be relieved or restrained by grounding, repositioning, blocking and/or bleeding the system.

Verification of Isolation

Prior to starting work on machines or equipment that have been locked or tagged out, the authorized employees will verify that isolation or de-energization of the machine or equipment have been accomplished.

After assuring that no employee will be placed in danger, test all lock and tag outs by following the normal start up procedures (depress start button, etc.).
Caution: After Test, place controls in neutral position.

Extended Lockout - Tagout
Should the shift change before the machinery or equipment can be restored to service, the lock and tag out must remain. If the task is reassigned to the next shift, those employees must lock and tag out before the previous shift may remove their lock and tag.

SOP: Release from LOCKOUT/TAGOUT
Before lockout or tagout devices are removed and the energy restored to the machine or equipment, the following actions will be taken:

1. The work area will be thoroughly inspected to ensure that nonessential items have been removed and that machine or equipment components are operational.
2. The work area will be checked to ensure that all employees have been safely positioned or removed. Before the lockout or tagout devices are removed, the affected employees will be notified that the lockout or tagout devices are being removed.
3. Each lockout or tagout device will be removed from each energy-isolating device by the employee who applied the device.

SOP: LOTO Procedure for Electrical Plug-Type Equipment
This procedure covers all Electrical Plug-Type Equipment such as battery chargers, some product pumps, office equipment, powered hand tools, powered bench tools, lathes, fans, etc.

When working on, repairing, or adjusting the above equipment, the following procedures must be utilized to prevent accidental or sudden startup:

1. Unplug electrical equipment from wall socket or in-line socket.
2. Attach "**Do Not Operate**" Tag and Plug Box & Lock on end of power cord.
An exception is granted to not lock & tag the plug if the cord & plug remain in the exclusive control of the Employee working on, adjusting or inspecting the equipment.
3. Test equipment to assure power source has been removed by depressing the "Start" or “On" Switch.
4. Perform required operations.
5. Replace all guards removed.
6. Remove Lock & Plug Box and Tag.
7. Inspect power cord and socket before plugging equipment into power source. Any defects must be repaired before placing the equipment back in service.

NOTE: Occasionally used equipment may be unplugged from power source when not in use.

SOP: LOTO Procedures Involving More Than One Employee
In the preceding SOPs, if more than one employee is assigned to a task requiring a lock and tag out, each must place his/her own lock and tag on the energy isolating device(s).

SOP: Management Removal of Lock and Tag Out
Only the employee that locks and tags out machinery, equipment or processes may remove his/her lock and tag. However, the employee should leave the facility before removing his/her lock and tag, and the supervisor may remove the lock and tag. The supervisor must be assured that all tools have been removed, all guards have been replaced and all employees are free from any hazard before the lock and tag are removed and the machinery, equipment or process are returned to service. Notification of the employee who placed the lock is required prior to lock removal.

Contractors
Contractors working on our property and equipment must use this Lockout-Tagout procedure while servicing or maintaining equipment, machinery or processes.

Lockout - Tag out Safety Equipment
The employer will provide all Lockout-Tagout safety equipment and training to any employee that may need or work with electricity or powered equipment. Your supervisor will be able to provide any assistance or equipment.

Ladder Safety Chapter

Purpose
Ladders present unique opportunities for unsafe acts and unsafe conditions. Employees who use ladders must be trained in proper selection, inspection, use and storage. Improper use of ladders has caused a large percentage of accidents in the workplace. Use caution on ladders.

OSHA reference: (29 CFR 1910.25, 1910.26, and 1910.27).

Ladder Hazards
Falls from ladders can result in broken bones and death. Ladder safety is a lifesaving program at our company.

Hazards include:

- Ladders with missing or broken parts.
- Using a ladder with too low a weight rating.
- Using a ladder that is too short for the intended purpose.
- Using metal ladders near electrical wires.
- Using ladders as a working platform.
- Objects falling from ladders.

Ladder Inspection
Inspect ladders before each use.

- All rungs and steps are free of oil, grease, dirt, etc.
- All fittings are tight.
- Spreaders or other locking devices are in place.
- Non-skid safety feet are in place.
- No structural defects, all support braces intact.

Do not use broken ladders. Most ladders cannot be repaired to manufacturer specifications. Throw away all broken ladders.

Ladder Storage
Store ladders on sturdy hooks in areas where they cannot be damaged. Store to prevent warping or sagging. Do not hang anything on ladders that are in a stored condition.

Ladder Ratings & Limits
Ladder weight ratings

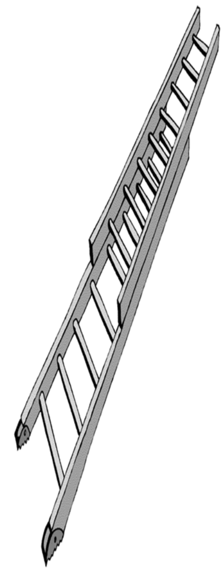
- I-A 300 pounds (heavy duty)
- I 250 pounds (heavy duty)
- II 225 pounds (medium duty)
- III 200 pounds (light duty).

Limits on ladder length.

- A stepladder should be no more than 20 feet high.
- A one-section ladder should be no more than 30 feet.
- An extension ladder can go to 60 feet, but the sections must overlap.

Ladder Setup

The following procedure must be followed to prevent ladder accidents:



✓ Place ladder on a clean, slip-free level surface.
✓ Extend the ladder to have about 4 feet above the top support or work area.
✓ Anchor the top and bottom of the ladder.
✓ Place the ladder base 1/4 the height of the ladder from the wall when using an extension ladder.
✓ Never allow more than one person on a ladder.
✓ Use carriers and tool belts to carry objects up a ladder.
✓ Do not lean out from the ladder in any direction.
✓ If you have a fear of heights - don't climb a ladder.
✓ Do not allow others to work under a ladder in use.

Ladder Maintenance

✓ Keep ladders clean.
✓ Never replace broken parts unless provided by the original manufacturer.
✓ Do not attempt to repair broken side rails.

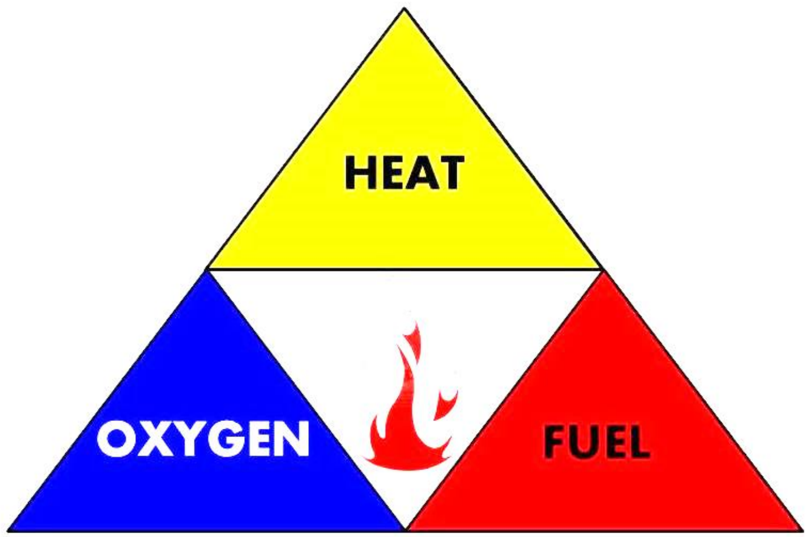
We have a ladder, but no protective system in place or hardhat.
Is that Asbestos? Sure looks like it and it is not taped up as OSHA requires.

Fire Safety Section

In order to understand how fire extinguishers work, you first need to know a little bit about fire.

Four things must be present at the same time in order to produce fire:

- Enough **oxygen** to sustain combustion,
- Enough **heat** to raise the material to its ignition temperature,
- Some sort of **fuel** or combustible material, and
- The **chemical, exothermic reaction** that is fire.



FIRE TRIANGLE

Oxygen, heat, and fuel are frequently referred to as the "**fire triangle**." Add in the fourth element, the chemical reaction, and you actually have a fire "**tetrahedron**." The important thing to remember is: **take any of these four things away, and you will not have a fire** or **the fire will be extinguished**.

Essentially, fire extinguishers put out fire by taking away one or more elements of the fire triangle/tetrahedron.

Fire safety, at its most basic, is based upon the principle of keeping fuel sources and ignition sources separate.

The percentage of combustible gas in the air is important, too. For example, a manhole filled with fresh air is gradually filled by a leak of combustible gas such as methane or natural gas, mixing with the fresh air. As the ratio of gas to air changes, the sample passes through three ranges: lean, explosive and rich.

In the lean range there isn't enough gas in the air to burn. On the other hand, the rich range has too much gas and not enough air. However, the explosive range has just the right combination of gas and air to form an explosive mixture.

Care must be taken, however, when a mixture is too rich, because dilution with fresh air could bring the mixture into the flammable or explosive range. An analogy is the automobile that won't start on a cold morning (a lean atmosphere because the liquid gasoline has not vaporized sufficiently), but can be flooded with too much gasoline (a rich atmosphere with too much vaporization). Eventually, when the right mixture of gas and air finally exists (explosive), the car starts.

The Fire Tetrahedron

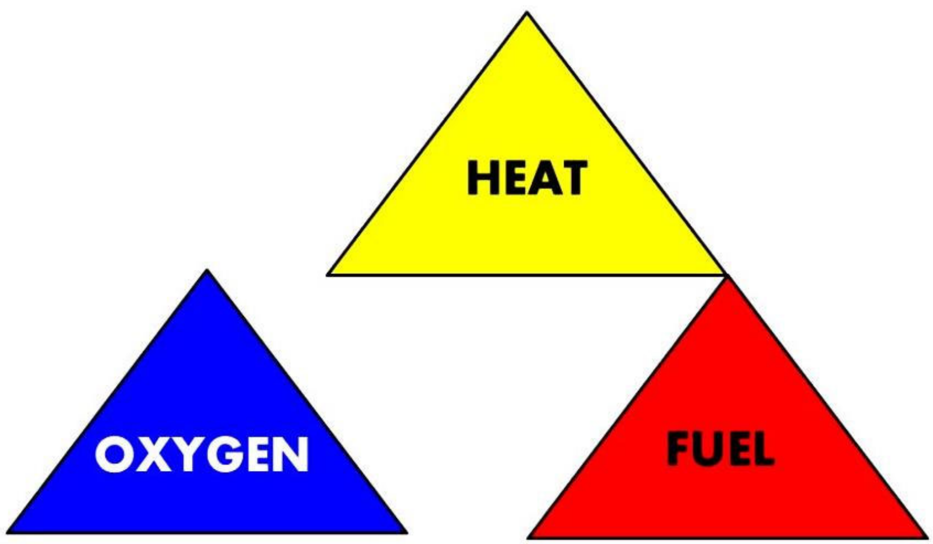
Modern day thinking now accepts there is a forth element required to sustain combustion. It is **Chemical Reaction** and must be present with all the other elements at the same time in order to produce fire. The four elements are: -

- Enough **oxygen** to sustain combustion,
- Enough **heat** to raise the material to its ignition temperature,
- Some sort of **fuel** or combustible material, and
- The **chemical, exothermic reaction** that is fire.

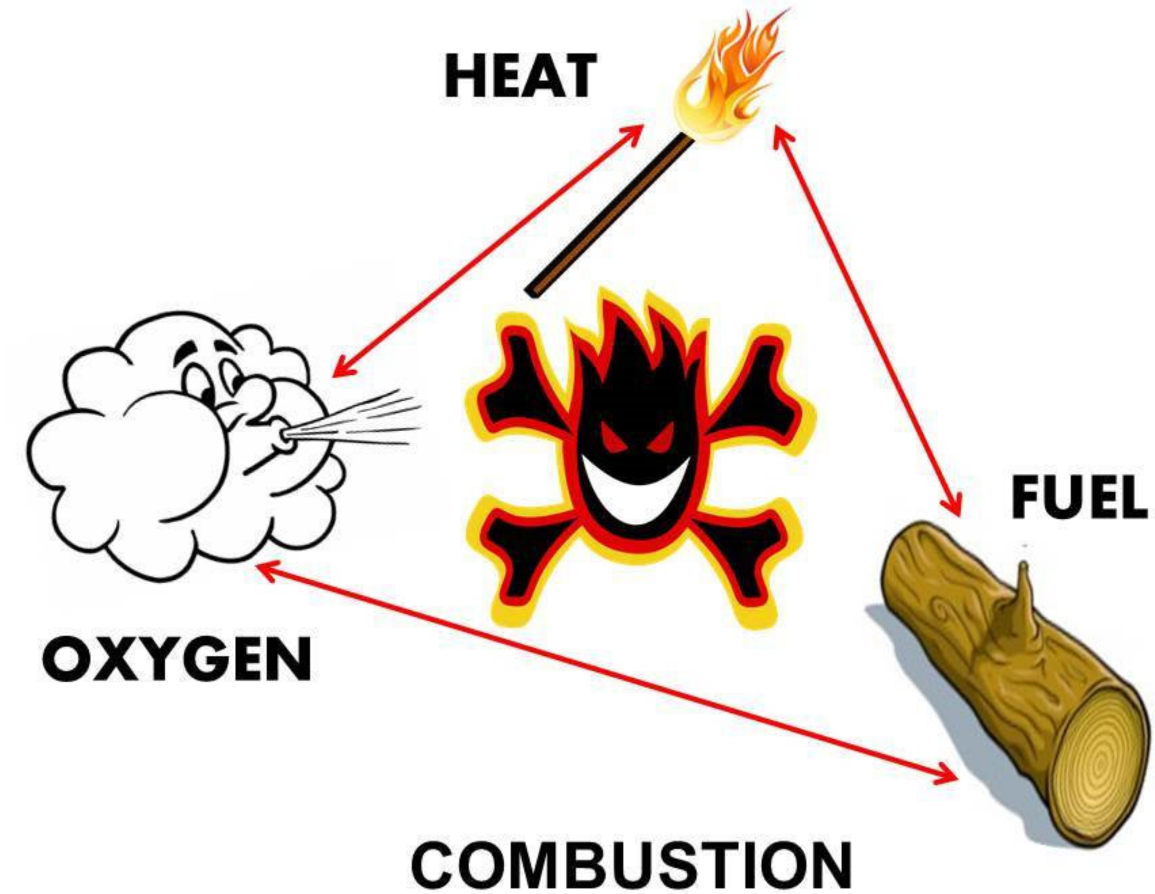
Once you have three sides of the fire triangle you promote a fourth element, a chemical reaction, consequently you have a fire "***Tetrahedron."*** The important thing to remember is, **take any of these four things away, and you will not have a fire** or **the fire will be extinguished**.

To extinguish a fire by the forth element you need to interfere with the chemical reaction. One way, is to mop up the free radicals in the chemical reaction using certain chemicals. BCF and other Halon extinguishers will achieve this, it also creates an inert gas barrier, however this type of extinguisher is being phased out.

In the future other extinguishing agents may be found using this principle.



NO COMBUSTION



Not all fires are the same, and they are classified according to the type of fuel that is burning. If you use the wrong type of fire extinguisher on the wrong class of fire, you can, in fact, make matters worse. It is therefore very important to understand the four different fire classifications.

Class A - Wood, paper, cloth, trash, plastics
Solid combustible materials that are not metals.

Class B - Flammable liquids: gasoline, oil, grease, acetone
Any non-metal in a liquid state, on fire. This classification also includes flammable gases.

Class C - Electrical: energized electrical equipment
As long as it's "plugged in," it would be considered a class C fire.

Class D - Metals: potassium, sodium, aluminum, magnesium
Unless you work in a laboratory or in an industry that uses these materials, it is unlikely you'll have to deal with a Class D fire. It takes special extinguishing agents (Metal-X, foam) to fight such a fire. Most fire extinguishers will have a pictograph label telling you which classifications of fire the extinguisher is designed to fight. For example, a simple water extinguisher might have a label like the one below, indicating that it should only be used on Class A fires.

A

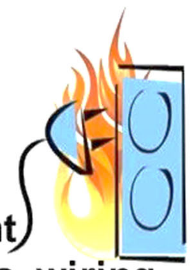
Fires that include materials such as Wood, paper, cloth and cardboard.

B

Fires that include Gasoline, oil, oil-based paints and flammable liquids.

C

Fires that include energized equipment including appliances, wiring circuit breakers and fuse boxes.



D

Fires that include combustible metals Including magnesium, potassium and sodium.

P Pull plug

A Aim

S Squeeze

S Sweep

Fire Prevention Measures

Fire prevention measures propose to reduce the incidence of fires by eliminating opportunities for ignition of flammable materials.

Flammable and Combustible Materials

A. Substitution

Flammable liquids sometimes may be substituted by relatively safe materials in order to reduce the risk of fires. Any substituted material should be stable and nontoxic and should either be nonflammable or have a high flashpoint.

B. Storage

Flammable and combustible liquids require careful handling at all times. The proper storage of flammable liquids within a work area is very important in order to protect personnel from fire and other safety and health hazards.

1) **Cabinets**

Not more than 120 gallons of Class I, Class II, and Class IIIA liquids may be stored in a storage cabinet. Of this total, not more than 60 gallons may be Class I and II liquids. Not more than three such cabinets (120 gallons each) may be located in a single fire area except in an industrial area.

Table 1. Maximum allowable capacity of containers and portable tanks

	Flammable Liquids		Combustible Liquids		
Container	**1A**	**1B**	**1C**	**II**	**III**
Glass or approved plastic1	1 pt[2]	1 qt[2]	1 gal	1 gal	1 gal
Metal (Other than DOT drums)	1 gal	5 gal	5 gal	5 gal	5 gal
Safety Cans	2 gal	5 gal	5 gal	5 gal	5 gal
Metal drums (DOT specifications)	60 gal	60 gal	60 gal	60 gal	60 gal
Approved portable tanks	660 gal	660 gal	660 gal	660 gal	660 gal
(1) Nearest metric size is also acceptable for the glass and plastic (2) One gallon or nearest metric equivalent size may be used if metal and labeled with their contents.					

A fire resistant file cabinet that is burned completely and beside it are modern flammable liquids storage cabinets.

2) Containers
The capacity of flammable and combustible liquid containers will be in accordance with Table 1.

3) Storage Inside Buildings.
Where approved storage cabinets or rooms are not provided, inside storage will comply with the following basic conditions:
a. The storage of any flammable or combustible liquid shall not physically obstruct a means of egress from the building or area.

b. Containers of flammable or combustible liquids will remain tightly sealed except when transferred, poured or applied. Remove only that portion of liquid in the storage container required to accomplish a particular job.

c. If a flammable and combustible liquid storage building is used, it will be a one-story building devoted principally to the handling and storing of flammable or combustible liquids. The building will have 2-hour fire-rated exterior walls having no opening within 10 feet of such storage.

d. Flammable paints, oils, and varnishes in 1 or 5 gallon containers, used for building maintenance purposes, may be stored temporarily in closed containers outside approved storage cabinets or room if kept at the job site for less than 10 calendar days.

C. Ventilation
Every inside storage room will be provided with a continuous mechanical exhaust ventilation system. To prevent the accumulation of vapors, the location of both the makeup and exhaust air openings will be arranged to provide, as far as practical, air movement directly to the exterior of the building and if ducts are used, they will not be used for any other purpose.

Asbestos Section

OSHA's Asbestos Standard
Employees must receive asbestos training when they are assigned to work in an area with the risk of exposure to asbestos. The training includes asbestos hazards and how to reduce them. More than one standard may apply to a particular assignment. Employees must be told where in their workplace they can find copies of all the applicable asbestos standards.

Reducing Exposure
Prohibited Activities
Employees should never eat, drink, smoke, chew tobacco or gum, or apply makeup in regulated areas. These activities can greatly increase an employee's exposure to asbestos fibers.

Work Practices
Each employee who will be working with asbestos must be trained in the proper work practices for the job being done. Training must include hands-on experience. OSHA recommends specific procedures to prevent release of asbestos fibers depending on the type of action being done and the class of work.

General work procedures include:
- ✓ Never cut, hammer, or otherwise damage ACM.
- ✓ Don't sand flooring materials that contain asbestos.
- ✓ Don't burnish or dry-buff floors containing asbestos unless there's enough finish to prevent the pad from contacting the ACM.
- ✓ Don't use compressed air to remove asbestos or ACM without using a ventilation system to capture the dust.
- ✓ Use enclosures, impermeable sleeves, HEPA vacuums, etc., when working on automotive brakes and clutches.
- ✓ Use wet methods, wetting agents, or removal encapsulation to control fiber release during handling, mixing, removal, cutting, or cleanup.

OSHA also specifies the work practices by the class of work being performed in shipyard and construction. These practices are highly specific, and the proper training is essential to worker health.

Some of the work procedures include the use of:
- ✓ Negative-pressure enclosures
- ✓ Glove bag systems
- ✓ Glove box systems
- ✓ Water spray process systems
- ✓ Walk-in or mini-enclosures

Wetting asbestos keeps fibers out of the air. Handle, mix, apply, remove, cut, and score asbestos while it's wet. Certain asbestos-containing products may not be removed from their shipping containers unless they're wet, enclosed, or ventilated.

The products include:

- ✓ Asbestos cement
- ✓ Mortar
- ✓ Coating
- ✓ Grout
- ✓ Plaster

Regulated Areas

A regulated area is an area where the airborne concentration of asbestos exceeds or is likely to exceed the PEL (either the TWA or the excursion limit). The OSHA shipbuilding and construction standards further demarcate a regulated area by what class of asbestos work is being conducted. Class I, II, and III asbestos work must be done in a regulated area by accredited personnel.

EPA determines that an area is regulated by whether the activity constitutes a major or minor fiber release. A major fiber release requires restricted entry into the area and the posting of signs to prevent entry into the area by persons other than those necessary to perform the response action. Whenever possible, restricted areas should get a negative-pressure enclosure before removal or demolition activities commence.

Employers must mark off any regulated areas from the rest of the workplace in a way that employees can recognize and avoid the area or take the appropriate precautions before entering. Only accredited employees are allowed access to regulated areas. Each person entering a regulated area must be supplied with and required to use a respirator.

Eating, drinking, smoking, or chewing tobacco or gum should be prohibited in these areas. No one may apply cosmetics in a regulated area.

Warning Signs

Warning signs must be posted in regulated areas. Signs should include the following cautions:

DANGER-ASBESTOS
CANCER AND LUNG DISEASE HAZARD
AUTHORIZED PERSONNEL ONLY
RESPIRATORS AND PROTECTIVE CLOTHING ARE REQUIRED IN THIS AREA

Respirators

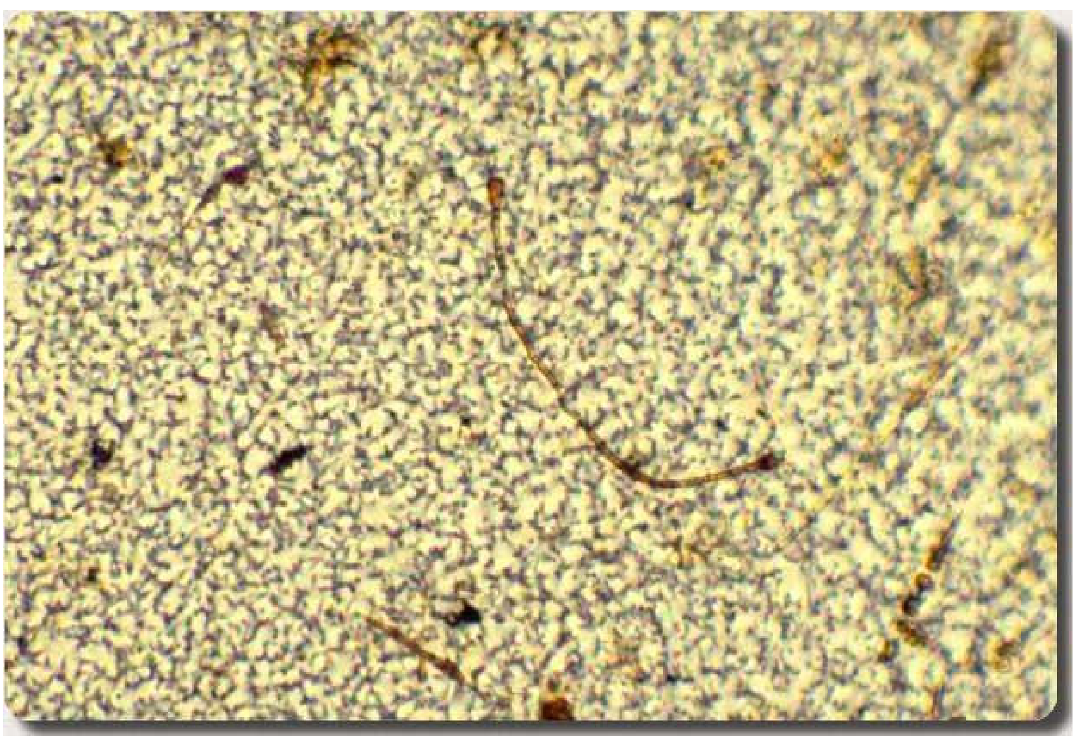
OSHA's respirator standard (29 CFR 1910.134) requires that:

- ✓ The correct respirator be specified for each job
- ✓ The employer have written procedures on the safe use of respirators in "**dangerous atmospheres that might be encountered in normal operations or in emergencies**"
- ✓ Someone stand by a worker using a respirator and stay in communication so that rescue can be provided promptly if needed
- ✓ In some such situations, workers wearing respirators also wear safety harnesses or lines

For certain limited operations, when all feasible engineering and work practices cannot reduce the employee exposure to below the TWA or excursion limits (i.e., 0.1 f/cc and 1.0 f/cc respectively), the employer must reduce exposure to asbestos to 0.5 f/cc over an 8-hour period or 2.5 f/cc for 30 minutes, or less and require employees to use the appropriate respirator.

The operations that will likely require respirator use include: coupling cutoff in primary asbestos cement pipe manufacturing; sanding in primary and secondary asbestos cement sheet manufacturing; grinding in primary and secondary friction product manufacturing; carding and spinning in dry textile processes; and grinding and sanding in primary plastics manufacturing.

Even though the area may be above the TWA, employers must reduce employee exposure to asbestos below the TWA or excursion limit



This is a photograph of inside a lung that was exposed to asbestos and developed cancer

Protective Clothing

Employees exposed to asbestos above the TWA or excursion limit, or where the possibility of eye irritation exists, must use appropriate protective work clothing and equipment. The employer must provide the protection at no cost to the employee. ***Protective clothing includes:***

- ✓ **Coveralls or similar full-body work clothing**
- ✓ **Gloves, head coverings, and foot coverings**
- ✓ **Face shields, vented goggles, or other appropriate PPE that complies with 29 CFR 1910.133**

Change rooms must be provided for the removal of any protective clothing that is contaminated with asbestos. Employees cannot take contaminated work clothing out of the change room, except for laundering, maintenance, or disposal. All contaminated work clothing must be stored in closed containers that prevent dispersion of the asbestos.

Contaminated clothing may only be transported only in sealed impermeable bags or other closed, impermeable containers, with all appropriate labels.

Employers must provide employees who work with asbestos in areas where the airborne exposure to asbestos is above the TWA and/or excursion limit with:

- ✓ **Change rooms equipped with two separate lockers or storage facilities to prevent contamination of the employee's street clothes with fibers from PPE.**
- ✓ **Showers.**
- ✓ **Lunchroom facilities that have a positive pressure, filtered air supply, and are readily accessible. Never enter the lunchroom in protective clothing that may be contaminated with asbestos.**

Anyone working with asbestos should carefully wash his or her hands and face prior to eating, drinking, or smoking.

Engineering Controls

Local exhaust ventilation and dust collection systems are very important, especially when you use tools such as saws, drills, scorers, and abrasive wheels that could release asbestos fibers into the air. ***The following is allowable exposure control equipment:***

- ✓ Automatic bag-opening equipment
- ✓ Exhaust systems to collect air in closed containers
- ✓ Dust collection and cleaning systems
- ✓ Hoods to cover operations that release fibers
- ✓ Tools with exhaust systems or wet sprays
- ✓ Shrouds for tools such as grinders

Whenever the engineering and work practices are insufficient to control asbestos fibers, employees must supplement the controls with respiratory protection.

Decontamination Areas

Decontamination areas are a source of secondary exposure to asbestos. Follow the decontamination procedures for the site to prevent asbestos on protective clothing from becoming airborne. Always enter or exit the regulated area through the decontamination area.

When leaving a regulated area, employees should enter the decontamination area through the equipment room. There, they should remove all asbestos material on the protective clothing by using an HEPA-filtered vacuum. Employees must not remove their respirators while in the equipment room. All protective clothing must be removed and put into labeled clothing bags. Employees then must leave the equipment room, remove their respirator, and shower before entering a clean room.

Housekeeping Requirements

OSHA regulates housekeeping activities under both the general industry standard and the construction standard. The general industry standard applies to routine housekeeping activities in facilities where the asbestos material is whole. If the housekeeping activities are for the cleanup of construction-related activities, the more stringent construction standard must be followed. Generally, both standards require similar precautions:

- ✓ Maintain all surfaces as free as possible from ACM waste and dust.
- ✓ Do not clean surfaces using compressed air.
- ✓ Use HEPA-filtered vacuuming equipment.
- ✓ Use wet cleaning or HEPA vacuuming whenever possible. Dry sweeping and shoveling is a last resort.
- ✓ Sanding of asbestos floors is prohibited.
- ✓ Stripping of finish from asbestos flooring may only be done using low-abrasion pads at less than 300 rpm and wet methods.
- ✓ Buffing is allowed only if sufficient finish remains to prevent the pads from contacting the ACM.

The construction standard also requires:

- ✓ All asbestos waste must be collected and disposed of in sealed, labeled, impermeable bags or similar containers.
- ✓ Waste and dust from areas with accessible TSI or surfacing ACM may not be dusted or dry swept except by using an HEPA-filtered vacuum and all material placed in a leak-tight container.

Cleanup Procedures

Keep all surfaces free of asbestos-containing dust and waste. Clean up all asbestos releases as soon as possible. Use HEPA vacuums—not compressed air—to clean up ACM. Shovel, sweep, or use other dry methods only when vacuuming or wet cleaning is impossible.

Avoid activities that might release fibers. For instance, don't cut through pipe insulation or hammer nails or drill holes in ceilings that might contain asbestos.

Asbestos NESHAP

INTRODUCTION

The Clean Air Act (**CAA**) requires the U. S. Environmental Protection Agency (**EPA**) to develop and enforce regulations to protect the general public from exposure to airborne contaminants that are known to be hazardous to human health. In accordance with Section 112 of the CAA, EPA established National Emissions Standards for Hazardous Air Pollutants (**NESHAP**) to protect the public.

Asbestos was one of the first hazardous air pollutants regulated under Section 112. On March 31, 1971, EPA identified asbestos as a hazardous pollutant, and on April 6, 1973, EPA first promulgated the Asbestos NESHAP in 40 CFR Part 61.

In 1990, a revised NESHAP regulation was promulgated by EPA. Information contained in this pamphlet is consistent with the amended regulation. This pamphlet answers the most commonly asked questions about the Asbestos NESHAP for demolitions and renovations. Many of the questions included in this pamphlet have been raised by demolition and renovation contractors in recent years. Most questions relate to how a demolition or renovation contractor or building owner can best comply with the regulation.

The responses assume that the questioner has a basic understanding of the Asbestos NESHAP and demolition and renovation practices. A brief glossary of terms is also included at the back of the pamphlet.

The Asbestos NESHAP regulations protect the public by minimizing the release of asbestos fibers during activities involving the processing, handling, and disposal of asbestos-containing material. Accordingly, the Asbestos NESHAP specifies work practices to be followed during demolitions and renovations of all structures, installations, and buildings (excluding residential buildings that have four or fewer dwelling units).

In addition, the regulations require the owner of the building and/or the contractor to notify applicable State and local agencies and/or EPA Regional Offices before all demolitions, or before renovations of buildings that contain a certain threshold amount of asbestos.

For more information about the Asbestos NESHAP or for answers to questions not covered in this pamphlet, contact the delegated State or local agency or the appropriate EPA Regional Office.

REQUIREMENTS FOR ADEQUATELY WETTING ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS

The NESHAP regulation requires that RACM be adequately wetted during the following activities:

a. During cutting or disjoining operations when a facility component which is covered or coated with friable ACM is being removed from that facility as units or in sections (Section 61.145 (c)(2)(i)).

During demolitions or renovations a contractor may choose to remove an entire boiler, a section of pipe, or other facility components without first removing the asbestos insulation from these structures. Any ACM which will be disturbed during cutting or disjoining operations must be adequately wet.

b. During stripping operations when a facility component containing RACM remains in place in the facility. (Section 61.145 (c)(3)).

Stripping operations are the most common form of asbestos removal during renovation activities, since most items that are covered with asbestos are facility components or structural members which will not be removed. Stripping off all of the RACM can generate significant asbestos emissions if the ACM is not adequately wet during removal.

Friable spray-on ACM, which includes fire-proofing materials found on decking and support I-beams, is normally easy to wet throughout because of the absorbing property of the cellulose mixing/binding agent. The Asbestos NESHAP requires that these materials be fully penetrated with the wetting agent during demolition/renovation activities.

Other ACM, however, such as "**thermal-block**" insulation used on pipes and boilers, certain ceiling and floor tile applications, etc., which do not absorb water readily may be hard to penetrate by water or a wetting agent. For such materials, adequate wetting consists of coating the surfaces of the materials with water or a wetting agent prior to, during, and, in most cases, after removal activities in order to prevent asbestos emissions. Whenever such materials are broken during the removal process, the exposed, dry surfaces must be wetted immediately to reduce emissions.

If pieces of dry ACM are accidentally disturbed, they should be immediately wetted and kept wet until collected for disposal. Removal personnel are commonly assigned to keep the fallen RACM wet prior to its being collected for disposal.

c. After the RACM has been stripped from a facility component, it must remain adequately wet until it has been collected and contained or treated in preparation for disposal. (Section 61.145 (c)(6)(i)).

After removal, adequately wetted ACWM must be sealed in leak-tight containers or wrapping which must be labeled as specified by the Occupational Health and Safety Administration (OSHA) under 29 CFR 1910.1001(j)(2) or 1926.58(k)(2)(iii). Such waste materials destined for off-site transport must additionally be labeled with the name of the generator and location of the waste generation site (Section 61.150 (a)(1)(iv and v)).

d. In demolitions where the RACM was not removed prior to demolition (Section 61.145 (c)(1)(i)(ii)(iii)(iv)).

- RACM on a facility component encased in concrete or other similarly hard material must be adequately wet whenever exposed during demolitions (Section 61.145 (c)(1)(ii));
- RACM which was not accessible for testing and, due to demolition, cannot be safely removed, must be kept adequately wet at all times until disposed of (Section 61.145 (c)(1)(iii)):
- The portion of a facility ordered demolished that contains RACM must be adequately wet during the wrecking operation (Section 61.145 (c)(9)).

In each of the above situations, ACWM generated must be kept adequately wet during handling and loading for transport to the disposal site. In cases where ACWM can't be segregated from the debris pile it must be disposed of as ACWM. Such ACWM does not have to be sealed in leak-tight containers or wrapping, but may be transported and disposed of in bulk (Section 61.150 (a)(3)).

5. EXCEPTIONS TO ADEQUATELY WETTING ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS

The Asbestos NESHAP allows two exceptions to wetting RACM during a demolition or renovation project:

- When the temperature at the point of wetting is below 0C (32F) (Section 61.145 (c)(7)(i)). The owner/operator must remove facility components coated or covered with friable ACM as units or sections to the maximum extent possible and meet subsequent requirements of 61.145, including the wetting requirements. During periods when wetting operations are suspended due to freezing temperatures, the owner/operator must record the temperature in the area containing the facility components at the beginning, middle, and end of each workday and keep daily temperature records available for inspection by the Administrator during normal business hours at the demolition or renovation site. The owner or operator shall retain the temperature records for at least 2 years.
- When the use of water would unavoidably damage equipment or present a safety hazard (Sec. 61.145 (c)(3)(i)(A)). The owner/operator must first obtain written approval from the Administrator for an alternative work practice, prior to renovation activities and utilize a local exhaust ventilation and collection system designed to capture particulate asbestos released during removal operations. (Section 61.145 (c)(3)(i)(B)(1)); or a glove bag system or a leak-tight wrapping which can contain the particulate asbestos materials produced by stripping ACM. (Section 61.145 (c)(3)(i)(B)(2)and (3))

6. TECHNIQUES FOR WETTING ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS

General Information

Adequate wetting of ACM is typically accomplished by repeatedly spraying it with a liquid or a wetting agent, usually amended water (water to which surfactant chemicals have been added), until it can absorb no more. However, this does not necessarily mean that the ACM will be soaked throughout. Surfactant chemicals reduce the surface tension of the water, thereby increasing its ability to penetrate the ACM and surround the asbestos fibers.

Although amending agents are not required by the Asbestos NESHAP (the NESHAP only requires the use of a liquid), EPA, in its "Guidance for Controlling Asbestos-Containing Materials in Buildings", EPA-560/5-85-024 (Purple Book), recommends the use of a 50:50 mixture of polyoxyethylene ester and polyoxyethylene ether, or the equivalent, in a 0.16 percent solution (1 ounce to 5 gallons) of water.

Wetting Agents
Wetting agents may be applied with garden sprayers or hoses. Garden sprayers are hand-held, portable, and have a one- to five-gallon capacity. Water hoses are usually attached to a faucet tap, fire hydrant or water tank. Generally, the hose has a nozzle attached which spreads the water stream so that a fine mist is created.

An engineering control often used is a misting unit which can be used to create a high level of humidity within a removal area. It is believed that fibers emitted into a saturated environment will absorb the wetting agent and fall out of the air faster, thus reducing airborne fiber levels.

7. PROCEDURES FOR WETTING ASBESTOS-CONTAINING MATERIALS
The following procedures describe methods of adequately wetting various applications of ACM.
Thermal System Insulation

Molded Pipe Insulation
The recommended wetting procedure for this type of RACM is to saturate the outer surface with amended water, strip off the wet canvas coating and then rewet the surface in order to thoroughly saturate the ACM. The metal bands supporting the RACM should be removed and the half-round sections carefully separated. While this occurs, the interior side and edges of the sections should be saturated with amended water.

If a section breaks during removal, the exposed surfaces should be wetted immediately. A misting sprayer may also be used to keep the air in the removal area or containment area saturated with amended water to attempt to reduce airborne asbestos fiber levels.

Corrugated Paper Pipe Insulation
The outer surface of the corrugated paper **("air-cell")** pipe insulation, usually a canvas wrap, should be saturated with a wetting agent and then removed. Wetting should continue until all the insulation is permeated with amended water. Metal bands holding the insulation in place should be removed and the corrugated RACM insulation stripped.

Any unsaturated surfaces exposed during the stripping operation must be wetted immediately to reduce asbestos emissions. A misting sprayer may also be used to keep the air in the removal area saturated with amended water to attempt to reduce airborne asbestos fiber levels.

Boiler and Water Tank Thermal Block Insulation
Asbestos-containing preformed block insulation has been used as thermal insulation on boilers, hot water tanks and heat exchangers in industrial, commercial, institutional and residential applications. The blocks are commonly chalky in nature and may be held in place by chicken wire or expanded metal lath. A plaster-saturated canvas was often applied as a final covering or wrap.

Due to the number, thickness and varying absorbencies of these layers of materials, adequate wetting may be accomplished only by continually wetting the materials with amended water as the various layers are stripped.

One person may be assigned to spray the materials as they are stripped, and a misting sprayer may be used in an attempt to reduce airborne asbestos fiber levels.

Cementitious Fitting Insulation
Wetting of cementitious fitting insulation is similar to that used when removing asbestos-containing thermal block insulation. The outer surface is saturated with amended water and the outer covering (if applicable) is removed. The fitting insulation is then rewetted and the insulation stripped. To ensure that the fitting remains adequately wet during the removal operation, a person is often assigned to spray the ACM as it is stripped. A misting sprayer may be used to reduce airborne asbestos fiber levels.

Asbestos-Containing Surfacing Materials
"**Surfacing Material**" is a generic term designated by the Asbestos Hazard Emergency Response Act (AHERA; Asbestos Containing Materials in Schools, 40 CFR Part 763, Subpart E) to mean any wall or ceiling material that is sprayed-on or troweled-on, such as acoustical plaster or fireproofing. The recommended wetting method for this type of RACM is to saturate the surfaces, begin the stripping operation and continue to wet the RACM as it is being removed. A misting sprayer may also be used to keep the air saturated while the removal occurs.

Since surfacing materials vary in their ability to absorb a wetting agent, inspectors must consider the type of surfacing material that is being removed in order to determine the required extent of penetration by the amended water. Surfacing materials which easily absorb a wetting agent need to be fully penetrated or permeated to be considered adequately wet, whereas only the exposed surfaces of materials which do not absorb water readily need to be wetted.

The use of high pressure water to remove asbestos-containing surfacing materials, either through a steam-cleaning device or a diesel powered hydroblasting water applicator, should be avoided since such use may unduly disturb RACM and contribute to higher airborne asbestos fiber levels. However, if this removal method is used, contractors must adequately wet the ACM prior to and during the removal.

Miscellaneous Asbestos-Containing Materials
Both friable and non-friable forms of other asbestos-containing building materials exist. Friable materials include asbestos-containing paper (commonly found beneath wooden floors), wallpaper, and joint compound. It has been estimated that 5 to 10 percent of the ceiling tiles currently installed in the U.S. contain asbestos.

Non-friable miscellaneous ACM includes floor tiles, asbestos cement sheet (transite board), siding shingles, asphalt roofing shingles, laboratory benchtops and even chalkboards. These materials may become friable with age, and under harsh conditions. Category I non-friable ACM must be carefully examined to determine if the material is in poor condition, that is, if the binding material is losing its integrity, exhibited by peeling, cracking or crumbling; and is also friable.

When Category I non-friable ACM has become friable it is subject to the NESHAP.
If Category I or II ACM is sanded, ground, cut or abraded it is also covered by the NESHAP. Category II non-friable ACM which is damaged to the extent that it has or will become crumbled, pulverized or reduced to powder due to demolition/ renovation activities, is subject to the Asbestos NESHAP.

Miscellaneous materials are wetted in manners similar to those used to wet other categories of RACM. Coverings are saturated with a wetting agent before removal and the asbestos-containing portions fully penetrated with the agent prior to, during and after their removal, while stored in the removal area, and while being placed into disposal containers.

Miscellaneous materials that don't absorb water readily (e.g., asbestos-concrete products, and floor tiles) are only required to have wetted surfaces. A misting sprayer may be used to diminish airborne asbestos fiber levels.

8. INSPECTION PROCEDURES

The intent of the following guidelines is to provide **GUIDANCE ONLY**, to the regulated community regarding the inspection procedures recommended to Asbestos NESHAP inspectors for determining compliance with the "Adequately Wet" requirements of the Asbestos NESHAP. The purpose of the wetting provisions is to require as much wetting as is necessary to prevent airborne emissions of asbestos fibers. In order to achieve this result, RACM and ACWM must be wetted and maintained wet until collected for disposal. The determination of whether RACM or ACWM has been adequately wetted is generally based on observations made by the inspector at the time of inspection. Observations probative of whether a material is adequately wet include but are not limited to, the following:

- Is there a water supply in place?
- Is water or a wetting agent observed being sprayed onto the RACM or ACWM both during stripping or removal and afterwards while the material awaits proper disposal? If yes, carefully note the method of application used (e.g., misting, fogging, spraying of surface area only or drenching to penetrate the ACM throughout).
- If water or a wetting agent is being used, what equipment is used to apply it (e.g., garden hose, plant mister)?
- If water or a wetting agent is not being used, determine why it is not and document the reason. Possible (although not necessarily valid) reasons include: prior permission obtained from the Administrator (safety hazard, potential equipment damage);
  no water source at the facility;
  temperature at the point of wetting below 32 degrees F;
  portable water supply ran out and contractor continued to work; or
  contractor prepared the area earlier, etc.
- Examine a stripped or removed piece of ACWM or RACM which wets readily. Does it appear to be wetted throughout? If it does not, adequately wet the sample. Describe and photograph how the physical characteristics of the material change upon wetting (e.g., color, weight, texture, etc.). Take samples, as necessary, to document the presence of asbestos in the suspect material.
- When examining materials that do not readily absorb water or a wetting agent (e.g., premolded thermal system insulation, ceiling tiles, floor tiles) inspectors should note whether all exposed surfaces of these materials have been wetted as required.
- Is there visible dust (airborne or settled), or dry ACWM debris in the immediate vicinity of the operation? Inspectors should collect samples of such materials for analysis of their possible asbestos content.
- Examine ACWM in bags or other containers using the procedures that follow, to determine if the material has been adequately wetted?

Randomly select bags (or containers) for inspection.

Lift the bag or container and assess its overall weight. (A bag of dry ACWM can generally be lifted easily with one hand, whereas a bag filled with well-wetted material is substantially heavier.)

If the bag or other container is transparent:
Visually inspect the contents of the unopened bag for evidence of moisture (e.g., water droplets, water in the bottom of the bag, a change in the color of the material due to water).

Without opening the bag, squeeze chunks of debris to ascertain whether moisture droplets are emitted.

If the material appears dry or not penetrated with liquid or a wetting agent, open the bag using the additional steps described in step 9 below a collect a bulk sample of each type of material in the bag noting variations in size, patterns, color and textures.

If the waste material is contained in an opaque bag or other container, or if the material is in a transparent bag which appears to be inadequately wetted:

Carefully open the bag (in the containment area, if possible). If there is no containment area at the site, a glove bag may be used to enclose the container prior to opening it to minimize the risk of any fiber release.

Examine the contents of the bag for evidence of moisture as in 8 above, and if the material appears dry or it is not fully penetrated with water or a wetting agent, collect a bulk sample.

Reseal the bag immediately after evaluating and sampling its contents.

General Safety Chapter Post Quiz

1. Before authorized or affected employees turn off a machine or piece of equipment, the authorized employee will have knowledge of the type and magnitude of the energy, the hazards of the energy to be controlled, and the means to________________.

2. Notify _____________ that the machinery, equipment or process will be out of service.

3. The machine or equipment will be turned off or shut down using the ___________ for that specific machine.

4. An orderly shutdown will be utilized to avoid any additional or increased hazards to employees as a result of______________________.

5. All energy control devices that are needed to control the energy to the machine or equipment will be physically located and operated in such a manner as to isolate the machine or equipment from the_______________.

6. Lockout or tagout devices will be affixed to energy isolating devices by ________________.

7. _______________will be affixed in a manner that will hold the energy isolating devices from the "safe" or "off" position.

8. The ________________will be attached to the same point a lock would be attached.

9. Lock and tag out all energy devices by use of hasps, chains and valve covers with ______________ individual locks.

10. Oxygen, heat, and fuel are frequently referred to as the _____________.

11. Add in the fourth element, the chemical reaction, and you actually have a fire "__________."

12. Essentially, fire extinguishers put out fire by taking away one or more elements of the________________________.

13. Fire safety, at its most basic, is based upon the principle of keeping _____________and ignition sources separate.

14. Employees must receive asbestos training when they are assigned to work in an area with the ___________________to asbestos.

15. Employees must be told where in their workplace they can find copies of all the applicable_____________________________.

16. Employees should never eat, drink, smoke, chew tobacco or gum, or apply makeup in____________________. These activities can greatly increase an employee's exposure to asbestos fibers.

17. Each employee who will be working with asbestos must be trained in the proper work practices for the job being done. Training must include___________________.

18. _________________ recommends specific procedures to prevent release of asbestos fibers depending on the type of action being done and the class of work.

Safety Glossary

Barricades: Visible warning barriers that keep vehicles and pedestrians from entering a construction site.

Braces: Devices that hold or fasten two or more parts together or in place. Braces are diagonal or horizontal. They may be made of wood or metal.

Bracing System: A system of braces which applies pressure against trench walls to stabilize them. A bracing system is part of a trench shoring system used to prevent trench walls from collapsing.

Benching: A method of cutting back the sides of a trench into horizontal steps to prevent cave-ins.

Bulge: An outward swelling in the soil of a trench; may be a warning sign of trench failure.

Buried Structures: Manholes, junction boxes or catch basins beneath the ground or any other installations that may be encountered during trenching.

Clay: Fine-grained natural soil that is plastic when moist and hard and brittle when dry. Clay is made up of particles smaller than .0002 millimeters.

Clumps: Heavy lumps or thick groupings of soil.

Cohesion: The relative ability to clump together, the force holding two like substances together.

Cohesive: When a soil has grains that hold together and clump well.

Competent Person: One who is capable of identifying existing and predictable hazards in the surroundings, or working conditions which are unsanitary, hazardous or dangerous to employees. Has authorization to take prompt corrective measures to eliminate hazards. The Competent Person is trained and knowledgeable about soil analysis and the use of protective systems.

Confined Space: Has limited or restricted means of entry or exit, is large enough for an employee to enter and perform assigned work, and is not designed for continuous occupancy by the employee. These spaces may include, but are not limited to, underground vaults, tanks, storage bins, pits, and diked areas, vessels, and silos.

Diversion Ditches: A ditch cut around the work site to keep water from entering the trench.

Drainage System: Pumps, pipe or channel used to drain off rain or groundwater from inside the trench.

Excavation: Any man-made cut, cavity trench or depression in an earth surface, formed by earth removal.

Fissure: A long narrow opening or crack in the rock or soil. Fissures are often a sign of trench wall failure.

Grain: Particles that once were large rocks, but have been broken down through time and the effects of weathering. The size of the grain of a soil determines the stability and cohesiveness of a soil. The larger the grain is, the more unstable the soil is.

Gravel: A loose mixture of pebbles and rock fragments, which is coarser than sand.

Hardpan: A layer of hard subsoil or clay that does not allow water in. Hardpan is classified as a Type A soil.

Heaving: The swelling of a soil.

Jacks: Jacks are braces or supports within a shoring system. They are placed against beams to resist the pressure of the earth.

Loamy Sand: Soil composed of a mixture of sand, clay and silt, with more sand grains than clay or silt. It is classified as a Type C soil.

Manufacturer's Tabulated Data: Tables and charts approved by a registered professional engineer and used to design and construct a protective system.

Permit Required Confined Space: Meets the definition of a confined space and has one or more of these characteristics: (1) contains or has potential to contain a hazardous atmosphere, (2) contains a material that has the potential for engulfing an entrant, (3) has an internal configuration that might cause an entrant to be trapped or asphyxiated by inwardly converging walls or by a floor that slopes downward and tapers to a smaller cross section, and/or (4) contains any other recognized serious safety or health hazards.

Personal Protective Equipment: Safety goggles and glasses, reflective clothing, work gloves, hard hat, safety shoes, rubber boots, earplugs or protectors, face shield and face mask or respirator.

Registered Professional Engineer: A person who is registered as a professional engineer in the state where the work is to be performed.

Sand: A type C soil with small, loose grains of disintegrated rock.

Sandy Loam: Granular soil with enough silt and clay to make it slightly cohesive

Saturation: The process of a soil being filled to capacity with moisture.

Shear: A phenomenon which happens when a trench wall is subjected to stress. Fissured cracks widen until a portion of the trench wall breaks off and slides into the trench.

Sheeting: Durable sheets of metal or wood, which are held firmly against a trench wall to prevent it from caving-in. Sheeting is a component of a trench shoring system.

Shielding: A device which provides adequate protection from falling or collapsing earth loads. The trench box is a common form of shielding.

Shoring: Main method of stabilizing and supporting a trench wall to prevent cave-ins. It consists of uprights, stingers and braces.

Silt: A soil which contains fine particles and is very smooth.

Silty Clay: A plastic soil that will appear rough or broken when rubbed over the thumb and finger.

Sloping: The process of cutting back the sides of a trench to avoid a cave-in.

Sloughing: When loose soil begins to run in from the lower part of the wall into the excavation. It is the first step to a wall collapse.

Soil Type: A system of classifying soils and rock deposits. Soil must be classified by a qualified person as: Stable rock, Type-A, Type-B, Type-C.

Spall: When a soil begins to crack or flake due to pressure, or from moisture from within the trench.

Spoil Pile/Spoilage: Rock waste, banks and dumps from the excavation.

Supports: Part of a shoring system which helps to bear the weight of braces and other parts of the shoring system.

Trench Box: A prefabricated moveable box usually constructed of metal plates welded to a heavy steel frame. The box is moved along as work progresses. It is able to withstand the forces imposed on it by a cave-in and thereby protects trench workers.

Type-A Soil: The most stable and cohesive type of soil while working at a trench site. Examples are clay, silty clay and hardpan.

Type-B Soil: Type-B soil is next to the most stable soil. Silt, silt loam, sandy loam, medium clay and unstable rock would be good examples of Type-B soils.

Type-C Soil: The least stable type of soil. Examples of Type-C soils are gravel, loamy sand, soft clay, submerged silt and heavy unstable rock.

Unconfined Compressive Strength: Through a variety of tests, a soil's strength is found. The unconfined compressive strength is the soil's measure of bearing capacity and shearing resistance. Measured as the amount of weight per square foot needed to collapse a soil sample.

Uprights: Vertical members of a trench shoring system placed in context with the earth. These members usually are not placed in direct contact with one another.

Vibration: When a soil or excavation site trembles and shakes rapidly due to forces such as loud noises or heavy equipment or traffic.

Voids: Voids are empty spaces between particles of rocks.

Wales: Wales are parts of a shoring system. They are positioned horizontally and help to brace vertical beams and supports. Wales can be fastened to studs with nails, clips or brackets.

Wall Stability: The relative strength and capacity of walls of a trench.

Provide at least one attendant outside the permit space into which entry is authorized for the duration of entry operations;

NOTE: Attendants may be assigned to monitor more than one permit space provided the duties described in paragraph (i) of this section can be effectively performed for each permit space that is monitored. Likewise, attendants may be stationed at any location outside the permit space to be monitored as long as the duties described in paragraph (i) of this section can be effectively performed for each permit space that is monitored.

Confined Space Information Summary

A. The National Institute of Occupational Safety and Health (**NIOSH**) defines Confined Space as "***any space which, by design, has limited openings for entry and exit; unfavorable natural ventilation which could contain or produce dangerous air contaminants, and which is not intended for continuous employee occupancy***."

B. The Occupational Safety and Health Administration (**OSHA**) in 1926.21 "***Safety training and education***" paragraph 5, sub-paragraph ii, defines Confined Space as "any space having a limited means of egress, which is subject to the accumulation of toxic or flammable contaminants or has an oxygen deficient atmosphere. Confined or enclosed spaces include, but are not limited to, storage tanks, process vessels, bins, boilers, ventilation or exhaust ducts, sewers, underground utility vaults, tunnels, pipelines, and open top spaces more than 4 feet deep such as pits, tubs, vaults, and vessels." OSHA 1926 is the construction industry standard.

C. OSHA 1910.146(a) (23), the general industry standard, defines Confined Space Entry as "A permit-required confined space (permit space) means an enclosed space which:

1. Is large enough and so configured that an employee can bodily enter and perform assigned work.

2. Has limited or restricted means for entry or exit, (some examples are tanks, vessels, silos, storage bins, hoppers, vaults, pits and diked areas);

3. Is not designed for continuous human occupancy, and has one or more of the following characteristics:

a. Contains or has a known potential to contain a hazardous atmosphere;

b. Contains a material with the potential for engulfment of the entrant;

c. Has an internal configuration such that an entrant could be trapped or asphyxiated by inwardly converging walls or a floor which slopes downward and tapers to a smaller cross-section;

d. Contains any other recognized "***safety or health hazard***."

D. The exact number of workers killed and injured each year in confined-space accidents is unknown. The NIOSH criteria document on confined spaces lists a study that reviewed 20,000 accident reports filed over a three-year period.

Analysis of those reports showed that 234 deaths and 193 injuries were linked to 276 confined-space incidents. An OSHA report summarizing an in-house review of inspection case files showed that 173 fatalities resulted from 122 confined-space accidents.

E. Employees assigned to work in confined spaces are not the only people at risk. A NIOSH study conducted in 1986 suggests that more than half of those killed in confined spaces were rescuers. In some cases, as many as four would-be rescuers were killed in a single accident.

F. The practices and procedures which your Employer follows when doing confined space entry are designed to protect you from the hazards of entry into and working in this environment. Never short cut these safe work practices.

G. You should know and remember that work-related accidents in confined spaces usually result in serious injury or death.

Notice the ladder safety climbing device in the center of the fixed ladder. Most people do not like or use this device, we call this people "dead".

Handling an OSHA Inspection

Sometimes when an OSHA Compliance Officer visits a job site, project managers, foremen and competent persons feel intimidated. In order to avoid this, companies should have a company policy and a plan of action for managers to follow when handling an OSHA inspection.

It is important to remember that in order to defend your company against alleged violations at an OSHA hearing or in a court of law accurate documentation is necessary so that the facts are not forgotten. All competent persons should keep a logbook to help them remember the dates, temperature, conditions, trench, address, and the crew that was working. This, along with your daily excavation inspection report, will help defend your job decisions. You should keep a copy of the OSHA Construction standards, your safety policy, and a copy of your written Hazard Communication policy with you at all times.

If OSHA shows up to your jobsite.

- ✓ Do not volunteer any information.
- ✓ Record the name and badge number of the OSHA compliance officer.
- ✓ Fill out the OSHA Inspection Report at the time of the inspection.
- ✓ Ask the OSHA Inspector to wait while you contact the main office. You may also have him wait a reasonable amount of time until someone comes from the main office to accompany him on the inspection.
- ✓ If the inspector will not wait, note his answer on the OSHA Inspection Report and remain with the inspector. Take notes on whatever he says or does. Take pictures of whatever he takes pictures of and take soil samples from wherever he takes soil samples.
- ✓ After the inspector leaves the jobsite, telephone the main office and report the results of the inspection to the safety manger.
- ✓ Make sure the OSHA Inspection Report is complete and send it along with copies of your notes and pictures to the safety manger.

Actual OSHA Inspector inspecting a respirator, he also collected all the training records and policies. This small inspection cost the contractor 10 thousand dollars in fines for lack of paperwork and policies.

The OSHA Compliance Officer:

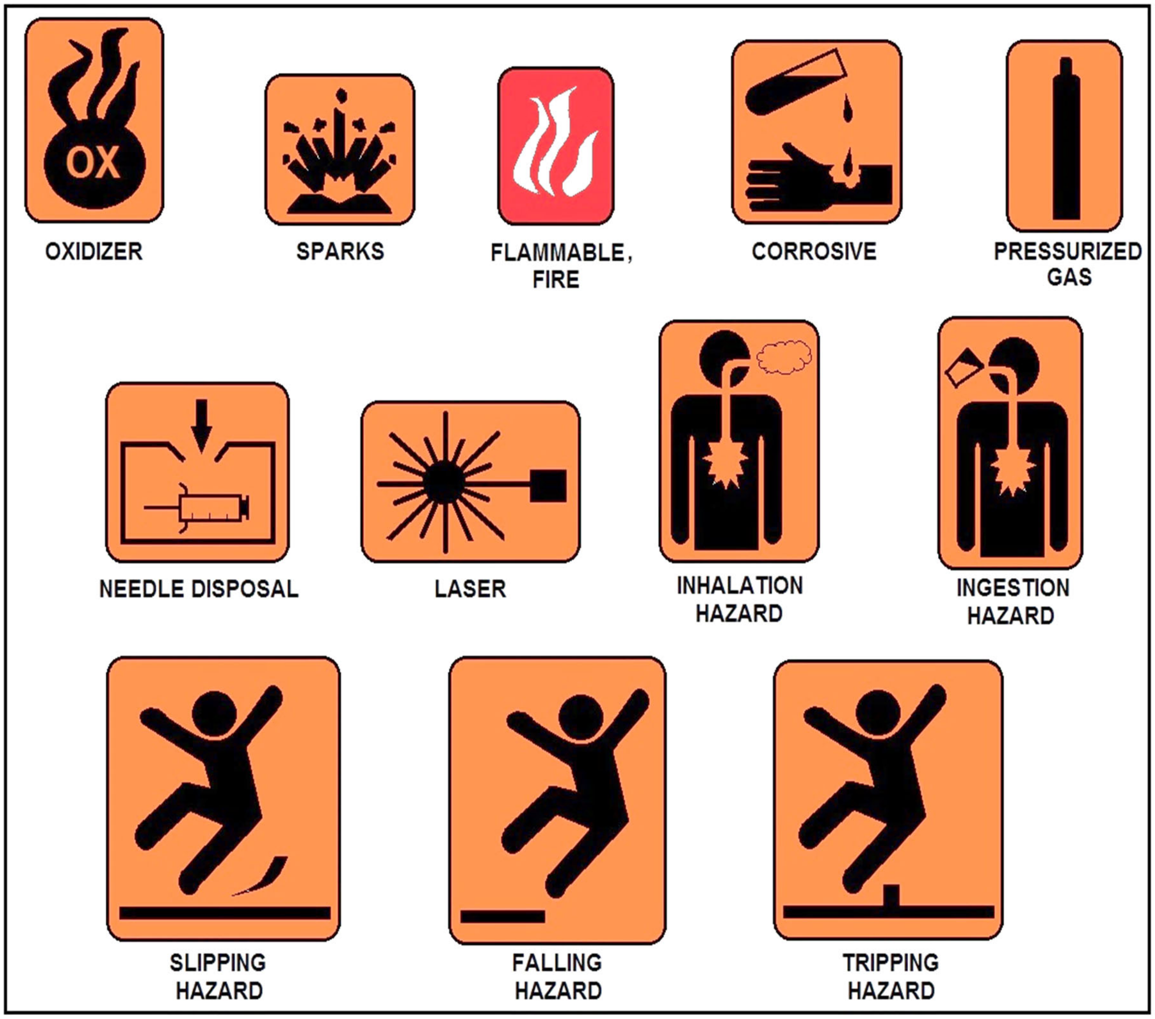
- ❖ Cannot require you to demonstrate anything for his viewing.
- ❖ Does not have the authority to take any written materials from your jobsites that belong to your company.
- ❖ Does not have control of your employees or jobsite. The OSHA Compliance Officer is a guest on the jobsite. He should be treated with respect, not fear.
- ❖ Do not admit guilt to any violation.

Inspectors will ask employees several different questions from CPR training, LOTO, Bloodborne Pathogen to HazCom and RP. He will also require training records to prove that you have been trained. He will also carry several specialized safety tools to inspect all kinds of tools and devices.

OSHA Rule Section

1910.146(d)(5)(vi)
Immediately provide each authorized entrant or that employee's authorized representative with the results of any testing conducted in accord with paragraph (d) of this section.
NOTE: Atmospheric testing conducted in accordance with Appendix B to section 1910.146 would be considered as satisfying the requirements of this paragraph. For permit space operations in sewers, atmospheric testing conducted in accordance with Appendix B, as supplemented by Appendix E to section 1910.146, would be considered as satisfying the requirements of this paragraph.

1910.146(d)(6)
Provide at least one attendant outside the permit space into which entry is authorized for the duration of entry operations;
NOTE: Attendants may be assigned to monitor more than one permit space provided the duties described in paragraph (i) of this section can be effectively performed for each permit space that is monitored. Likewise, attendants may be stationed at any location outside the permit space to be monitored as long as the duties described in paragraph (i) of this section can be effectively performed for each permit space that is monitored.



COMMON GENERAL HAZARD SYMBOLS

Regulations (Standards - 29 CFR)
Permit-required confined spaces - 1910.146

1910.146(a)
Scope and application. This section contains requirements for practices and procedures to protect employees in general industry from the hazards of entry into permit-required confined spaces. This section does not apply to agriculture, to construction, or to shipyard employment (Parts 1928, 1926, and 1915 of this chapter, respectively).

1910.146(b)
Definitions.
"Acceptable entry conditions" means the conditions that must exist in a permit space to allow entry and to ensure that employees involved with a permit-required confined space entry can safely enter into and work within the space.
"Attendant" means an individual stationed outside one or more permit spaces who monitors the authorized entrants and who performs all attendant's duties assigned in the employer's permit space program.
"Authorized entrant" means an employee who is authorized by the employer to enter a permit space.
"Blanking or blinding" means the absolute closure of a pipe, line, or duct by the fastening of a solid plate (such as a spectacle blind or a skillet blind) that completely covers the bore and that is capable of withstanding the maximum pressure of the pipe, line, or duct with no leakage beyond the plate.
"Confined space" means a space that:
(1) Is large enough and so configured that an employee can bodily enter and perform assigned work; and
(2) Has limited or restricted means for entry or exit (for example, tanks, vessels, silos, storage bins, hoppers, vaults, and pits are spaces that may have limited means of entry.); and
(3) Is not designed for continuous employee occupancy.
"Double block and bleed" means the closure of a line, duct, or pipe by closing and locking or tagging two in-line valves and by opening and locking or tagging a drain or vent valve in the line between the two closed valves.
"Emergency" means any occurrence (including any failure of hazard control or monitoring equipment) or event internal or external to the permit space that could endanger entrants.
"Engulfment" means the surrounding and effective capture of a person by a liquid or finely divided (flowable) solid substance that can be aspirated to cause death by filling or plugging the respiratory system or that can exert enough force on the body to cause death by strangulation, constriction, or crushing.
"Entry" means the action by which a person passes through an opening into a permit-required confined space. Entry includes ensuing work activities in that space and is considered to have occurred as soon as any part of the entrant's body breaks the plane of an opening into the space.
"Entry permit (permit)" means the written or printed document that is provided by the employer to allow and control entry into a permit space and that contains the information specified in paragraph (f) of this section.
"Entry supervisor" means the person (such as the employer, foreman, or crew chief) responsible for determining if acceptable entry conditions are present at a permit space where entry is planned, for authorizing entry and overseeing entry operations, and for terminating entry as required by this section.
NOTE: An entry supervisor also may serve as an attendant or as an authorized entrant, as long as that person is trained and equipped as required by this section for each role he or

she fills. Also, the duties of entry supervisor may be passed from one individual to another during the course of an entry operation.
"Hazardous atmosphere" means an atmosphere that may expose employees to the risk of death, incapacitation, impairment of ability to self-rescue (that is, escape unaided from a permit space), injury, or acute illness from one or more of the following causes:
(1) Flammable gas, vapor, or mist in excess of 10 percent of its lower flammable limit (LFL);
(2) Airborne combustible dust at a concentration that meets or exceeds its LFL;
NOTE: This concentration may be approximated as a condition in which the dust obscures vision at a distance of 5 feet (1.52 m) or less.
(3) Atmospheric oxygen concentration below 19.5 percent or above 23.5 percent;
(4) Atmospheric concentration of any substance for which a dose or a permissible exposure limit is published in Subpart G, Occupational Health and Environmental Control, or in Subpart Z, Toxic and Hazardous Substances, of this Part and which could result in employee exposure in excess of its dose or permissible exposure limit;
NOTE: An atmospheric concentration of any substance that is not capable of causing death, incapacitation, impairment of ability to self-rescue, injury, or acute illness due to its health effects is not covered by this provision.
(5) Any other atmospheric condition that is immediately dangerous to life or health.
NOTE: For air contaminants for which OSHA has not determined a dose or permissible exposure limit, other sources of information, such as Material Safety Data Sheets that comply with the Hazard Communication Standard, section 1910.1200 of this Part, published information, and internal documents can provide guidance in establishing acceptable atmospheric conditions.
"Hot work permit" means the employer's written authorization to perform operations (for example, riveting, welding, cutting, burning, and heating) capable of providing a source of ignition.
"Immediately dangerous to life or health (IDLH)" means any condition that poses an immediate or delayed threat to life or that would cause irreversible adverse health effects or that would interfere with an individual's ability to escape unaided from a permit space.
NOTE: Some materials -- hydrogen fluoride gas and cadmium vapor, for example -- may produce immediate transient effects that, even if severe, may pass without medical attention, but are followed by sudden, possibly fatal collapse 12-72 hours after exposure. The victim "feels normal" from recovery from transient effects until collapse. Such materials in hazardous quantities are considered to be "immediately" dangerous to life or health.
"Inerting" means the displacement of the atmosphere in a permit space by a noncombustible gas (such as nitrogen) to such an extent that the resulting atmosphere is noncombustible.
NOTE: This procedure produces an IDLH oxygen-deficient atmosphere.
"Isolation" means the process by which a permit space is removed from service and completely protected against the release of energy and material into the space by such means as: blanking or blinding; misaligning or removing sections of lines, pipes, or ducts; a double block and bleed system; lockout or tagout of all sources of energy; or blocking or disconnecting all mechanical linkages.
"Line breaking" means the intentional opening of a pipe, line, or duct that is or has been carrying flammable, corrosive, or toxic material, an inert gas, or any fluid at a volume, pressure, or temperature capable of causing injury.
"Non-permit confined space" means a confined space that does not contain or, with respect to atmospheric hazards, have the potential to contain any hazard capable of causing death or serious physical harm.
"Oxygen deficient atmosphere" means an atmosphere containing less than 19.5 percent oxygen by volume.
"Oxygen enriched atmosphere" means an atmosphere containing more than 23.5 percent oxygen by volume.

"Permit-required confined space (permit space)" means a confined space that has one or more of the following characteristics:
(1) Contains or has a potential to contain a hazardous atmosphere;
(2) Contains a material that has the potential for engulfing an entrant;
(3) Has an internal configuration such that an entrant could be trapped or asphyxiated by inwardly converging walls or by a floor which slopes downward and tapers to a smaller cross-section; or
(4) Contains any other recognized serious safety or health hazard.
"Permit-required confined space program (permit space program)" means the employer's overall program for controlling, and, where appropriate, for protecting employees from, permit space hazards and for regulating employee entry into permit spaces.
"Permit system" means the employer's written procedure for preparing and issuing permits for entry and for returning the permit space to service following termination of entry.
"Prohibited condition" means any condition in a permit space that is not allowed by the permit during the period when entry is authorized.
"Rescue service" means the personnel designated to rescue employees from permit spaces.
"Retrieval system" means the equipment (including a retrieval line, chest or full-body harness, wristlets, if appropriate, and a lifting device or anchor) used for non-entry rescue of persons from permit spaces.
"Testing" means the process by which the hazards that may confront entrants of a permit space are identified and evaluated. Testing includes specifying the tests that are to be performed in the permit space.
NOTE: Testing enables employers both to devise and implement adequate control measures for the protection of authorized entrants and to determine if acceptable entry conditions are present immediately prior to, and during, entry.

1910.146(c)
General requirements.
1910.146(c)(1)
The employer shall evaluate the workplace to determine if any spaces are permit-required confined spaces.
NOTE: Proper application of the decision flow chart in Appendix A to section 1910.146 would facilitate compliance with this requirement.
1910.146(c)(2)
If the workplace contains permit spaces, the employer shall inform exposed employees, by posting danger signs or by any other equally effective means, of the existence and location of and the danger posed by the permit spaces.
NOTE: A sign reading **DANGER -- PERMIT-REQUIRED CONFINED SPACE, DO NOT ENTER** or using other similar language would satisfy the requirement for a sign.
..1910.146(c)(3)
1910.146(c)(3)
If the employer decides that its employees will not enter permit spaces, the employer shall take effective measures to prevent its employees from entering the permit spaces and shall comply with paragraphs (c)(1), (c)(2), (c)(6), and (c)(8) of this section.
1910.146(c)(4)
If the employer decides that its employees will enter permit spaces, the employer shall develop and implement a written permit space program that complies with this section. The written program shall be available for inspection by employees and their authorized representatives.
1910.146(c)(5)
An employer may use the alternate procedures specified in paragraph (c)(5)(ii) of this section for entering a permit space under the conditions set forth in paragraph (c)(5)(i) of this section.

1910.146(c)(5)(i)
An employer whose employees enter a permit space need not comply with paragraphs (d) through (f) and (h) through (k) of this section, provided that:
1910.146(c)(5)(i)(A)
The employer can demonstrate that the only hazard posed by the permit space is an actual or potential hazardous atmosphere;

1910.146(c)(5)(i)(B)
The employer can demonstrate that continuous forced air ventilation alone is sufficient to maintain that permit space safe for entry;
..1910.146(c)(5)(i)(C)

1910.146(c)(5)(i)(C)
The employer develops monitoring and inspection data that supports the demonstrations required by paragraphs (c)(5)(i)(A) and (c)(5)(i)(B) of this section;
1910.146(c)(5)(i)(D)
If an initial entry of the permit space is necessary to obtain the data required by paragraph (c)(5)(i)(C) of this section, the entry is performed in compliance with paragraphs (d) through (k) of this section;
1910.146(c)(5)(i)(E)
The determinations and supporting data required by paragraphs (c)(5)(i)(A), (c)(5)(i)(B), and (c)(5)(i)(C) of this section are documented by the employer and are made available to each employee who enters the permit space under the terms of paragraph (c)(5) of this section or to that employee's authorized representative; and
1910.146(c)(5)(i)(F)
Entry into the permit space under the terms of paragraph (c)(5)(i) of this section is performed in accordance with the requirements of paragraph (c)(5)(ii) of this section.
NOTE: See paragraph (c)(7) of this section for reclassification of a permit space after all hazards within the space have been eliminated.
1910.146(c)(5)(ii)
The following requirements apply to entry into permit spaces that meet the conditions set forth in paragraph (c)(5)(i) of this section.
1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(A)
Any conditions making it unsafe to remove an entrance cover shall be eliminated before the cover is removed.
..1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(B)
1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(B)
When entrance covers are removed, the opening shall be promptly guarded by a railing, temporary cover, or other temporary barrier that will prevent an accidental fall through the opening and that will protect each employee working in the space from foreign objects entering the space.
1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(C)
Before an employee enters the space, the internal atmosphere shall be tested, with a calibrated direct-reading instrument, for oxygen content, for flammable gases and vapors, and for potential toxic air contaminants, in that order. Any employee who enters the space, or that employee's authorized representative, shall be provided an opportunity to observe the pre-entry testing required by this paragraph.
1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(C)(1)
Oxygen content,
1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(C)(2)
Flammable gases and vapors, and
1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(C)(3)
Potential toxic air contaminants.

1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(D)
There may be no hazardous atmosphere within the space whenever any employee is inside the space.
1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(E)
Continuous forced air ventilation shall be used, as follows:
1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(E)(1)
An employee may not enter the space until the forced air ventilation has eliminated any hazardous atmosphere;

1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(E)(2)
The forced air ventilation shall be so directed as to ventilate the immediate areas where an employee is or will be present within the space and shall continue until all employees have left the space;

1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(E)(3)
The air supply for the forced air ventilation shall be from a clean source and may not increase the hazards in the space.
..1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(F)

1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(F)
The atmosphere within the space shall be periodically tested as necessary to ensure that the continuous forced air ventilation is preventing the accumulation of a hazardous atmosphere. Any employee who enters the space, or that employee's authorized representative, shall be provided with an opportunity to observe the periodic testing required by this paragraph.
1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(G)
If a hazardous atmosphere is detected during entry:
1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(G)(1)
Each employee shall leave the space immediately;
1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(G)(2)
The space shall be evaluated to determine how the hazardous atmosphere developed; and
1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(G)(3)
Measures shall be implemented to protect employees from the hazardous atmosphere before any subsequent entry takes place.
1910.146(c)(5)(ii)(H)
The employer shall verify that the space is safe for entry and that the pre-entry measures required by paragraph (c)(5)(ii) of this section have been taken, through a written certification that contains the date, the location of the space, and the signature of the person providing the certification. The certification shall be made before entry and shall be made available to each employee entering the space or to that employee's authorized representative .
1910.146(c)(6)
When there are changes in the use or configuration of a non-permit confined space that might increase the hazards to entrants, the employer shall reevaluate that space and, if necessary, reclassify it as a permit-required confined space.
..1910.146(c)(7)
1910.146(c)(7)
A space classified by the employer as a permit-required confined space may be reclassified as a non-permit confined space under the following procedures:
1910.146(c)(7)(i)
If the permit space poses no actual or potential atmospheric hazards and if all hazards within the space are eliminated without entry into the space, the permit space may be

reclassified as a non-permit confined space for as long as the non-atmospheric hazards remain eliminated.

1910.146(c)(7)(ii)

If it is necessary to enter the permit space to eliminate hazards, such entry shall be performed under paragraphs (d) through (k) of this section. If testing and inspection during that entry demonstrate that the hazards within the permit space have been eliminated, the permit space may be reclassified as a non-permit confined space for as long as the hazards remain eliminated.

NOTE: Control of atmospheric hazards through forced air ventilation does not constitute elimination of the hazards. Paragraph (c)(5) covers permit space entry where the employer can demonstrate that forced air ventilation alone will control all hazards in the space.

1910.146(c)(7)(iii)

The employer shall document the basis for determining that all hazards in a permit space have been eliminated, through a certification that contains the date, the location of the space, and the signature of the person making the determination. The certification shall be made available to each employee entering the space or to that employee's authorized representative.

..1910.146(c)(7)(iv)

1910.146(c)(7)(iv)

If hazards arise within a permit space that has been declassified to a non-permit space under paragraph (c)(7) of this section, each employee in the space shall exit the space. The employer shall then reevaluate the space and determine whether it must be reclassified as a permit space, in accordance with other applicable provisions of this section.

1910.146(c)(8)

When an employer (host employer) arranges to have employees of another employer (contractor) perform work that involves permit space entry, the host employer shall:

1910.146(c)(8)(i)

Inform the contractor that the workplace contains permit spaces and that permit space entry is allowed only through compliance with a permit space program meeting the requirements of this section;

1910.146(c)(8)(ii)

Apprise the contractor of the elements, including the hazards identified and the host employer's experience with the space, that make the space in question a permit space;

1910.146(c)(8)(iii)

Apprise the contractor of any precautions or procedures that the host employer has implemented for the protection of employees in or near permit spaces where contractor personnel will be working;

1910.146(c)(8)(iv)

Coordinate entry operations with the contractor, when both host employer personnel and contractor personnel will be working in or near permit spaces, as required by paragraph (d)(11) of this section; and

..1910.146(c)(8)(v)

1910.146(c)(8)(v)

Debrief the contractor at the conclusion of the entry operations regarding the permit space program followed and regarding any hazards confronted or created in permit spaces during entry operations.

1910.146(c)(9)

In addition to complying with the permit space requirements that apply to all employers, each contractor who is retained to perform permit space entry operations shall:

1910.146(c)(9)(i)
Obtain any available information regarding permit space hazards and entry operations from the host employer;
1910.146(c)(9)(ii)
Coordinate entry operations with the host employer, when both host employer personnel and contractor personnel will be working in or near permit spaces, as required by paragraph (d)(11) of this section; and
1910.146(c)(9)(iii)
Inform the host employer of the permit space program that the contractor will follow and of any hazards confronted or created in permit spaces, either through a debriefing or during the entry operation.
1910.146(d)
Permit-required confined space program (permit space program). Under the permit space program required by paragraph (c)(4) of this section, the employer shall:
1910.146(d)(1)
Implement the measures necessary to prevent unauthorized entry;
..1910.146(d)(2)
1910.146(d)(2)
Identify and evaluate the hazards of permit spaces before employees enter them;
1910.146(d)(3)
Develop and implement the means, procedures, and practices necessary for safe permit space entry operations, including, but not limited to, the following:
1910.146(d)(3)(i)
Specifying acceptable entry conditions;

1910.146(d)(3)(ii)
Providing each authorized entrant or that employee's authorized representative with the opportunity to observe any monitoring or testing of permit spaces;
1910.146(d)(3)(iii)
Isolating the permit space;

1910.146(d)(3)(iv)
Purging, inerting, flushing, or ventilating the permit space as necessary to eliminate or control atmospheric hazards;
1910.146(d)(3)(v)
Providing pedestrian, vehicle, or other barriers as necessary to protect entrants from external hazards; and
1910.146(d)(3)(vi)
Verifying that conditions in the permit space are acceptable for entry throughout the duration of an authorized entry.
1910.146(d)(4)
Provide the following equipment (specified in paragraphs (d)(4)(i) through (d)(4)(ix) of this section) at no cost to employees, maintain that equipment properly, and ensure that employees use that equipment properly:
..1910.146(d)(4)(i)
1910.146(d)(4)(i)
Testing and monitoring equipment needed to comply with paragraph (d)(5) of this section;
1910.146(d)(4)(ii)
Ventilating equipment needed to obtain acceptable entry conditions;
1910.146(d)(4)(iii)
Communications equipment necessary for compliance with paragraphs (h)(3) and (i)(5) of this section;

1910.146(d)(4)(iv)
Personal protective equipment insofar as feasible engineering and work practice controls do not adequately protect employees;
1910.146(d)(4)(v)
Lighting equipment needed to enable employees to see well enough to work safely and to exit the space quickly in an emergency;
1910.146(d)(4)(vi)
Barriers and shields as required by paragraph (d)(3)(iv) of this section;
1910.146(d)(4)(vii)
Equipment, such as ladders, needed for safe ingress and egress by authorized entrants;
1910.146(d)(4)(viii)
Rescue and emergency equipment needed to comply with paragraph (d)(9) of this section, except to the extent that the equipment is provided by rescue services; and
1910.146(d)(4)(ix)
Any other equipment necessary for safe entry into and rescue from permit spaces.
..1910.146(d)(5)
1910.146(d)(5)
Evaluate permit space conditions as follows when entry operations are conducted:
1910.146(d)(5)(i)
Test conditions in the permit space to determine if acceptable entry conditions exist before entry is authorized to begin, except that, if isolation of the space is infeasible because the space is large or is part of a continuous system (such as a sewer), pre-entry testing shall be performed to the extent feasible before entry is authorized and, if entry is authorized, entry conditions shall be continuously monitored in the areas where authorized entrants are working;
1910.146(d)(5)(ii)
Test or monitor the permit space as necessary to determine if acceptable entry conditions are being maintained during the course of entry operations; and
1910.146(d)(5)(iii)
When testing for atmospheric hazards, test first for oxygen, then for combustible gases and vapors, and then for toxic gases and vapors.
1910.146(d)(5)(iv)
Provide each authorized entrant or that employee's authorized representative an opportunity to observe the pre-entry and any subsequent testing or monitoring of permit spaces;
1910.146(d)(5)(v)
Reevaluate the permit space in the presence of any authorized entrant or that employee's authorized representative who requests that the employer conduct such reevaluation because the entrant or representative has reason to believe that the evaluation of that space may not have been adequate;
1910.146(d)(5)(vi)
Immediately provide each authorized entrant or that employee's authorized representative with the results of any testing conducted in accord with paragraph (d) of this section.
NOTE: Atmospheric testing conducted in accordance with Appendix B to section 1910.146 would be considered as satisfying the requirements of this paragraph. For permit space operations in sewers, atmospheric testing conducted in accordance with Appendix B, as supplemented by Appendix E to section 1910.146, would be considered as satisfying the requirements of this paragraph.
1910.146(d)(6)
Provide at least one attendant outside the permit space into which entry is authorized for the duration of entry operations;
NOTE: Attendants may be assigned to monitor more than one permit space provided the duties described in paragraph (i) of this section can be effectively performed for each permit space that is monitored. Likewise, attendants may be stationed at any location outside the

permit space to be monitored as long as the duties described in paragraph (i) of this section can be effectively performed for each permit space that is monitored.

..1910.146(d)(7)

1910.146(d)(7)

If multiple spaces are to be monitored by a single attendant, include in the permit program the means and procedures to enable the attendant to respond to an emergency affecting one or more of the permit spaces being monitored without distraction from the attendant's responsibilities under paragraph (i) of this section;

1910.146(d)(8)

Designate the persons who are to have active roles (as, for example, authorized entrants, attendants, entry supervisors, or persons who test or monitor the atmosphere in a permit space) in entry operations, identify the duties of each such employee, and provide each such employee with the training required by paragraph (g) of this section;

1910.146(d)(9)

Develop and implement procedures for summoning rescue and emergency services, for rescuing entrants from permit spaces, for providing necessary emergency services to rescued employees, and for preventing unauthorized personnel from attempting a rescue;

1910.146(d)(10)

Develop and implement a system for the preparation, issuance, use, and cancellation of entry permits as required by this section;

1910.146(d)(11)

Develop and implement procedures to coordinate entry operations when employees of more than one employer are working simultaneously as authorized entrants in a permit space, so that employees of one employer do not endanger the employees of any other employer;

..1910.146(d)(12)

1910.146(d)(12)

Develop and implement procedures (such as closing off a permit space and canceling the permit) necessary for concluding the entry after entry operations have been completed;

1910.146(d)(13)

Review entry operations when the employer has reason to believe that the measures taken under the permit space program may not protect employees and revise the program to correct deficiencies found to exist before subsequent entries are authorized; and

NOTE: Examples of circumstances requiring the review of the permit space program are: any unauthorized entry of a permit space, the detection of a permit space hazard not covered by the permit, the detection of a condition prohibited by the permit, the occurrence of an injury or near-miss during entry, a change in the use or configuration of a permit space, and employee complaints about the effectiveness of the program.

1910.146(d)(14)

Review the permit space program, using the canceled permits retained under paragraph (e)(6) of this section within 1 year after each entry and revise the program as necessary, to ensure that employees participating in entry operations are protected from permit space hazards.

NOTE: Employers may perform a single annual review covering all entries performed during a 12-month period. If no entry is performed during a 12-month period, no review is necessary.

Appendix C to section 1910.146 presents examples of permit space programs that are considered to comply with the requirements of paragraph (d) of this section.

1910.146(e)

Permit system.

1910.146(e)(1)

Before entry is authorized, the employer shall document the completion of measures required by paragraph (d)(3) of this section by preparing an entry permit.

NOTE: Appendix D to section 1910.146 presents examples of permits whose elements are considered to comply with the requirements of this section.
1910.146(e)(2)
Before entry begins, the entry supervisor identified on the permit shall sign the entry permit to authorize entry.
1910.146(e)(3)
The completed permit shall be made available at the time of entry to all authorized entrants or their authorized representatives, by posting it at the entry portal or by any other equally effective means, so that the entrants can confirm that pre-entry preparations have been completed.
..1910.146(e)(4)
1910.146(e)(4)
The duration of the permit may not exceed the time required to complete the assigned task or job identified on the permit in accordance with paragraph (f)(2) of this section.
1910.146(e)(5)
The entry supervisor shall terminate entry and cancel the entry permit when:
1910.146(e)(5)(i)
The entry operations covered by the entry permit have been completed; or
1910.146(e)(5)(ii)
A condition that is not allowed under the entry permit arises in or near the permit space.
1910.146(e)(6)
The employer shall retain each canceled entry permit for at least 1 year to facilitate the review of the permit-required confined space program required by paragraph (d)(14) of this section. Any problems encountered during an entry operation shall be noted on the pertinent permit so that appropriate revisions to the permit space program can be made.
1910.146(f)
Entry permit. The entry permit that documents compliance with this section and authorizes entry to a permit space shall identify:

1910.146(f)(1)
The permit space to be entered;
1910.146(f)(2)
The purpose of the entry;
..1910.146(f)(3)
1910.146(f)(3)
The date and the authorized duration of the entry permit;
1910.146(f)(4)
The authorized entrants within the permit space, by name or by such other means (for example, through the use of rosters or tracking systems) as will enable the attendant to determine quickly and accurately, for the duration of the permit, which authorized entrants are inside the permit space;
NOTE: This requirement may be met by inserting a reference on the entry permit as to the means used, such as a roster or tracking system, to keep track of the authorized entrants within the permit space.
1910.146(f)(5)
The personnel, by name, currently serving as attendants;
1910.146(f)(6)
The individual, by name, currently serving as entry supervisor, with a space for the signature or initials of the entry supervisor who originally authorized entry;
1910.146(f)(7)
The hazards of the permit space to be entered;
1910.146(f)(8)

The measures used to isolate the permit space and to eliminate or control permit space hazards before entry;
NOTE: Those measures can include the lockout or tagging of equipment and procedures for purging, inerting, ventilating, and flushing permit spaces.
1910.146(f)(9)
The acceptable entry conditions;
1910.146(f)(10)
The results of initial and periodic tests performed under paragraph (d)(5) of this section, accompanied by the names or initials of the testers and by an indication of when the tests were performed;
..1910.146(f)(11)
1910.146(f)(11)
The rescue and emergency services that can be summoned and the means (such as the equipment to use and the numbers to call) for summoning those services;
1910.146(f)(12)
The communication procedures used by authorized entrants and attendants to maintain contact during the entry;
1910.146(f)(13)
Equipment, such as personal protective equipment, testing equipment, communications equipment, alarm systems, and rescue equipment, to be provided for compliance with this section;
1910.146(f)(14)
Any other information whose inclusion is necessary, given the circumstances of the particular confined space, in order to ensure employee safety; and (15) Any additional permits, such as for hot work, that have been issued to authorize work in the permit space.
1910.146(g)
Training.
1910.146(g)(1)
The employer shall provide training so that all employees whose work is regulated by this section acquire the understanding, knowledge, and skills necessary for the safe performance of the duties assigned under this section.

1910.146(g)(2)
Training shall be provided to each affected employee:
1910.146(g)(2)(i)
Before the employee is first assigned duties under this section;
..1910.146(g)(2)(ii)
1910.146(g)(2)(ii)
Before there is a change in assigned duties;

1910.146(g)(2)(iii)
Whenever there is a change in permit space operations that presents a hazard about which an employee has not previously been trained;
1910.146(g)(2)(iv)
Whenever the employer has reason to believe either that there are deviations from the permit space entry procedures required by paragraph (d)(3) of this section or that there are inadequacies in the employee's knowledge or use of these procedures.
1910.146(g)(3)
The training shall establish employee proficiency in the duties required by this section and shall introduce new or revised procedures, as necessary, for compliance with this section.
1910.146(g)(4)
The employer shall certify that the training required by paragraphs (g)(1) through (g)(3) of this section has been accomplished. The certification shall contain each employee's name,

the signatures or initials of the trainers, and the dates of training. The certification shall be available for inspection by employees and their authorized representatives.

1910.146(h)

Duties of authorized entrants. The employer shall ensure that all authorized entrants:

..1910.146(h)(1)

1910.146(h)(1)

Know the hazards that may be faced during entry, including information on the mode, signs or symptoms, and consequences of the exposure;

1910.146(h)(2)

Properly use equipment as required by paragraph (d)(4) of this section;

1910.146(h)(3)

Communicate with the attendant as necessary to enable the attendant to monitor entrant status and to enable the attendant to alert entrants of the need to evacuate the space as required by paragraph (i)(6) of this section;

1910.146(h)(4)

Alert the attendant whenever:

1910.146(h)(4)(i)

The entrant recognizes any warning sign or symptom of exposure to a dangerous situation, or

1910.146(h)(4)(ii)

The entrant detects a prohibited condition; and

1910.146(h)(5)

Exit from the permit space as quickly as possible whenever:

1910.146(h)(5)(i)

An order to evacuate is given by the attendant or the entry supervisor,

1910.146(h)(5)(ii)

The entrant recognizes any warning sign or symptom of exposure to a dangerous situation,

..1910.146(h)(5)(iii)

1910.146(h)(5)(iii)

The entrant detects a prohibited condition, or

1910.146(h)(5)(iv)

An evacuation alarm is activated.

1910.146(i)

Duties of attendants. The employer shall ensure that each attendant:

1910.146(i)(1)

Knows the hazards that may be faced during entry, including information on the mode, signs or symptoms, and consequences of the exposure;

1910.146(i)(2)

Is aware of possible behavioral effects of hazard exposure in authorized entrants;

1910.146(i)(3)

Continuously maintains an accurate count of authorized entrants in the permit space and ensures that the means used to identify authorized entrants under paragraph (f)(4) of this section accurately identifies who is in the permit space;

1910.146(i)(4)

Remains outside the permit space during entry operations until relieved by another attendant;

NOTE: When the employer's permit entry program allows attendant entry for rescue, attendants may enter a permit space to attempt a rescue if they have been trained and equipped for rescue operations as required by paragraph (k)(1) of this section and if they have been relieved as required by paragraph (i)(4) of this section.

1910.146(i)(5)

Communicates with authorized entrants as necessary to monitor entrant status and to alert entrants of the need to evacuate the space under paragraph (i)(6) of this section;
..1910.146(i)(6)
1910.146(i)(6)
Monitors activities inside and outside the space to determine if it is safe for entrants to remain in the space and orders the authorized entrants to evacuate the permit space immediately under any of the following conditions;
1910.146(i)(6)(i)
If the attendant detects a prohibited condition;
1910.146(i)(6)(ii)
If the attendant detects the behavioral effects of hazard exposure in an authorized entrant;
1910.146(i)(6)(iii)
If the attendant detects a situation outside the space that could endanger the authorized entrants; or
1910.146(i)(6)(iv)
If the attendant cannot effectively and safely perform all the duties required under paragraph (i) of this section;
1910.146(i)(7)
Summon rescue and other emergency services as soon as the attendant determines that authorized entrants may need assistance to escape from permit space hazards;
1910.146(i)(8)
Takes the following actions when unauthorized persons approach or enter a permit space while entry is underway:
1910.146(i)(8)(i)
Warn the unauthorized persons that they must stay away from the permit space;
..1910.146(i)(8)(ii)
1910.146(i)(8)(ii)
Advise the unauthorized persons that they must exit immediately if they have entered the permit space; and
1910.146(i)(8)(iii)
Inform the authorized entrants and the entry supervisor if unauthorized persons have entered the permit space;
1910.146(i)(9)
Performs non-entry rescues as specified by the employer's rescue procedure; and
1910.146(i)(10)
Performs no duties that might interfere with the attendant's primary duty to monitor and protect the authorized entrants.
1910.146(j)
Duties of entry supervisors. The employer shall ensure that each entry supervisor:
1910.146(j)(1)
Knows the hazards that may be faced during entry, including information on the mode, signs or symptoms, and consequences of the exposure;
1910.146(j)(2)
Verifies, by checking that the appropriate entries have been made on the permit, that all tests specified by the permit have been conducted and that all procedures and equipment specified by the permit are in place before endorsing the permit and allowing entry to begin;
..1910.146(j)(3)
1910.146(j)(3)
Terminates the entry and cancels the permit as required by paragraph (e)(5) of this section;
1910.146(j)(4)
Verifies that rescue services are available and that the means for summoning them are operable;
1910.146(j)(5)

Removes unauthorized individuals who enter or who attempt to enter the permit space during entry operations; and

1910.146(j)(6)

Determines, whenever responsibility for a permit space entry operation is transferred and at intervals dictated by the hazards and operations performed within the space that entry operations remain consistent with terms of the entry permit and that acceptable entry conditions are maintained.

1910.146(k)

Rescue and emergency services.

1910.146(k)(1)

An employer who designates rescue and emergency services, pursuant to paragraph (d)(9) of this section, shall:

1910.146(k)(1)(i)

Evaluate a prospective rescuer's ability to respond to a rescue summons in a timely manner, considering the hazard(s) identified;

Note to paragraph (k)(l)(i): What will be considered timely will vary according to the specific hazards involved in each entry. For example, §1910.134, Respiratory Protection, requires that employers provide a standby person or persons capable of immediate action to rescue employee(s) wearing respiratory protection while in work areas defined as IDLH atmospheres.

..1910.146(k)(1)(ii)

1910.146(k)(1)(ii)

Evaluate a prospective rescue service's ability, in terms of proficiency with rescue-related tasks and equipment, to function appropriately while rescuing entrants from the particular permit space or types of permit spaces identified;

1910.146(k)(1)(iii)

Select a rescue team or service from those evaluated that:

1910.146(k)(1)(iii)(A)

Has the capability to reach the victim(s) within a time frame that is appropriate for the permit space hazard(s) identified;

1910.146(k)(1)(iii)(B)

Is equipped for and proficient in performing the needed rescue services;

1910.146(k)(1)(iv)

Inform each rescue team or service of the hazards they may confront when called on to perform rescue at the site; and

1910.146(k)(1)(v)

Provide the rescue team or service selected with access to all permit spaces from which rescue may be necessary so that the rescue service can develop appropriate rescue plans and practice rescue operations.

Note to paragraph (k)(1): Non-mandatory Appendix F contains examples of criteria which employers can use in evaluating prospective rescuers as required by paragraph (k)(l) of this section.

1910.146(k)(2)

An employer whose employees have been designated to provide permit space rescue and emergency services shall take the following measures:

1910.146(k)(2)(i)

Provide affected employees with the personal protective equipment (PPE) needed to conduct permit space rescues safely and train affected employees so they are proficient in the use of that PPE, at no cost to those employees;

1910.146(k)(2)(ii)

Train affected employees to perform assigned rescue duties. The employer must ensure that such employees successfully complete the training required to establish proficiency as an authorized entrant, as provided by paragraphs (g) and (h) of this section;
1910.146(k)(2)(iii)
Train affected employees in basic first-aid and cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR). The employer shall ensure that at least one member of the rescue team or service holding a current certification in first aid and CPR is available; and
1910.146(k)(2)(iv)
Ensure that affected employees practice making permit space rescues at least once every 12 months, by means of simulated rescue operations in which they remove dummies, manikins, or actual persons from the actual permit spaces or from representative permit spaces. Representative permit spaces shall, with respect to opening size, configuration, and accessibility, simulate the types of permit spaces from which rescue is to be performed.
..1910.146(k)(3)
1910.146(k)(3)
To facilitate non-entry rescue, retrieval systems or methods shall be used whenever an authorized entrant enters a permit space, unless the retrieval equipment would increase the overall risk of entry or would not contribute to the rescue of the entrant. Retrieval systems shall meet the following requirements.
1910.146(k)(3)(i)
Each authorized entrant shall use a chest or full body harness, with a retrieval line attached at the center of the entrant's back near shoulder level, above the entrant's head, or at another point which the employer can establish presents a profile small enough for the successful removal of the entrant. Wristlets may be used in lieu of the chest or full body harness if the employer can demonstrate that the use of a chest or full body harness is infeasible or creates a greater hazard and that the use of wristlets is the safest and most effective alternative.
1910.146(k)(3)(ii)
The other end of the retrieval line shall be attached to a mechanical device or fixed point outside the permit space in such a manner that rescue can begin as soon as the rescuer becomes aware that rescue is necessary. A mechanical device shall be available to retrieve personnel from vertical type permit spaces more than 5 feet (1.52 m) deep
1910.146(k)(4)
If an injured entrant is exposed to a substance for which a Material Safety Data Sheet (MSDS) or other similar written information is required to be kept at the worksite, that MSDS or written information shall be made available to the medical facility treating the exposed entrant.
..1910.146(l)

Employee participation.
1910.146(l)(1)
Employers shall consult with affected employees and their authorized representatives on the development and implementation of all aspects of the permit space program required by paragraph (c) of this section.
1910.146(l)(2)
Employers shall make available to affected employees and their authorized representatives all information required to be developed by this section.
[58 FR 4549, Jan. 14, 1993; 58 FR 34845, June 29, 1993; 59 FR 26115, May 19, 1994; 63 FR 66038, Dec. 1, 1998]

Other Related Rules

1926.21(b)(6)
1926.21(b)(6)(i)
All employees required to enter into confined or enclosed spaces shall be instructed as to the nature of the hazards involved, the necessary precautions to be taken, and in the use of protective and emergency equipment required. The employer shall comply with any specific regulations that apply to work in dangerous or potentially dangerous areas.
1926.21(b)(6)(ii)
For purposes of paragraph (b)(6)(i) of this section, "confined or enclosed space" means any space having a limited means of egress, which is subject to the accumulation of toxic or flammable contaminants or has an oxygen deficient atmosphere. Confined or enclosed spaces include, but are not limited to, storage tanks, process vessels, bins, boilers, ventilation or exhaust ducts, sewers, underground utility vaults, tunnels, pipelines, and open top spaces more than 4 feet in depth such as pits, tubs, vaults, and vessels.

Entry Procedures. If there are no non-atmospheric hazards present and if the pre-entry tests show there is no dangerous air contamination and/or oxygen deficiency within the space and there is no reason to believe that any is likely to develop, entry into and work within may proceed. Continuous testing of the atmosphere in the immediate vicinity of the workers within the space shall be accomplished. The workers will immediately leave the permit space when any of the gas-monitor alarm set points are reached as defined. Workers will not return to the area until a SUPERVISOR who has completed the gas detector training has used a direct reading gas detector to evaluate the situation and has determined that it is safe to enter.

29 CFR 1910.146 App C

Examples of Permit-required Confined Space Programs
Example 1.
Workplace. Sewer entry.
Potential hazards. The employees could be exposed to the following:
Engulfment.
Presence of toxic gases. Equal to or more than 10 ppm hydrogen sulfide measured as an 8-hour time-weighted average. If the presence of other toxic contaminants is suspected, specific monitoring programs will be developed.
Presence of explosive/flammable gases. Equal to or greater than 10% of the lower flammable limit (LFL).
Oxygen Deficiency. A concentration of oxygen in the atmosphere equal to or less than 19.5% by volume.

A. ENTRY WITHOUT PERMIT/ATTENDANT

Certification. Confined spaces may be entered without the need for a written permit or attendant provided that the space can be maintained in a safe condition for entry by mechanical ventilation alone, as provided in 1910.146(c)(5). All spaces shall be considered permit-required confined spaces until the pre-entry procedures demonstrate otherwise. Any employee required or permitted to pre-check or enter an enclosed/confined space shall have successfully completed, as a minimum, the training as required by the following sections of these procedures. A written copy of operating and rescue procedures as required by these procedures shall be at the work site for the duration of the job. The Confined Space Pre-Entry Check List must be completed by the LEAD WORKER before entry into a confined space. This list verifies completion of items listed below. This check list shall be kept at the job site for duration of the job. If circumstances dictate an interruption in the work, the permit space must be re-evaluated and a new check list must be completed.

Control of atmospheric and engulfment hazards.

Pumps and Lines. All pumps and lines which may reasonably cause contaminants to flow into the space shall be disconnected, blinded and locked out, or effectively isolated by other means to prevent development of dangerous air contamination or engulfment. Not all laterals to sewers or storm drains require blocking. However, where experience or knowledge of industrial use indicates there is a reasonable potential for contamination of air or engulfment into an occupied sewer, then all affected laterals shall be blocked. If blocking and/or isolation requires entry into the space the provisions for entry into a permit-required confined space must be implemented.

Surveillance. The surrounding area shall be surveyed to avoid hazards such as drifting vapors from the tanks, piping, or sewers.

Testing. The atmosphere within the space will be tested to determine whether dangerous air contamination and/or oxygen deficiency exists. Detector tubes, alarm only gas monitors and explosion meters are examples of monitoring equipment that may be used to test permit space atmospheres. Testing shall be performed by the LEAD WORKER who has successfully completed the Gas Detector training for the monitor he will use.

The minimum parameters to be monitored are oxygen deficiency, LFL, and hydrogen sulfide concentration. A written record of the pre-entry test results shall be made and kept at the work site for the duration of the job. The supervisor will certify in writing, based upon the results of the pre-entry testing, that all hazards have been eliminated. Affected employees shall be able to review the testing results. The most hazardous conditions shall govern when work is being performed in two adjoining, connecting spaces.

Entry Procedures. If there are no non-atmospheric hazards present and if the pre-entry tests show there is no dangerous air contamination and/or oxygen deficiency within the space and there is no reason to believe that any is likely to develop, entry into and work within may proceed. Continuous testing of the atmosphere in the immediate vicinity of the workers within the space shall be accomplished. The workers will immediately leave the permit space when any of the gas monitor alarm set points are reached as defined. Workers will not return to the area until a SUPERVISOR who has completed the gas detector training has used a direct reading gas detector to evaluate the situation and has determined that it is safe to enter.

Rescue. Arrangements for rescue services are not required where there is no attendant. See the rescue portion of section B., below, for instructions regarding rescue planning where an entry permit is required.

B. ENTRY PERMIT REQUIRED

Permits. Confined Space Entry Permit. All spaces shall be considered permit-required confined spaces until the pre-entry procedures demonstrate otherwise. Any employee required or permitted to pre-check or enter a permit-required confined space shall have successfully completed, as a minimum, the training as required by the following sections of these procedures. A written copy of operating and rescue procedures as required by these procedures shall be at the work site for the duration of the job. The Confined Space Entry Permit must be completed before approval can be given to enter a permit-required confined space. This permit verifies completion of items listed below. This permit shall be kept at the job site for the duration of the job. If circumstances cause an interruption in the work or a change in the alarm conditions for which entry was approved, a new Confined Space Entry Permit must be completed.

Control of atmospheric and engulfment hazards.

Surveillance. The surrounding area shall be surveyed to avoid hazards such as drifting vapors from tanks, piping or sewers.

Testing. The confined space atmosphere shall be tested to determine whether dangerous air contamination and/or oxygen deficiency exists. A direct reading gas monitor shall be used. Testing shall be performed by the SUPERVISOR who has successfully completed the gas detector training for the monitor he will use. The minimum parameters to be monitored are oxygen deficiency, LFL and hydrogen sulfide concentration. A written record of the pre-entry test results shall be made and kept at the work site for the duration of the job. Affected employees shall be able to review the testing results. The most hazardous conditions shall govern when work is being performed in two adjoining, connected spaces.

Space Ventilation. Mechanical ventilation systems, where applicable, shall be set at 100% outside air. Where possible, open additional manholes to increase air circulation. Use portable blowers to augment natural circulation if needed. After a suitable ventilating period, repeat the testing. Entry may not begin until testing has demonstrated that the hazardous atmosphere has been eliminated.

Entry Procedures. The following procedure shall be observed under any of the following conditions: 1.) Testing demonstrates the existence of dangerous or deficient conditions and additional ventilation cannot reduce concentrations to safe levels; 2.) The atmosphere tests as safe but unsafe conditions can reasonably be expected to develop; 3.) It is not feasible to provide for ready exit from spaces equipped with automatic fire suppression systems and it is not practical or safe to deactivate such systems; or 4.) An emergency exists and it is not feasible to wait for pre-entry procedures to take effect.

All personnel must be trained. A self-contained breathing apparatus shall be worn by any person entering the space. At least one worker shall stand by the outside of the space ready to give assistance in case of emergency. The standby worker shall have a self-contained breathing apparatus available for immediate use. There shall be at least one additional worker within sight or call of the standby worker. Continuous powered communications shall be maintained between the worker within the confined space and standby personnel.

If at any time there is any questionable action or non-movement by the worker inside, a verbal check will be made. If there is no response, the worker will be moved immediately.

Exception: If the worker is disabled due to falling or impact, he/she shall not be removed from the confined space unless there is immediate danger to his/her life. Local fire department rescue personnel shall be notified immediately. The standby worker may only enter the confined space in case of an emergency (wearing the self-contained breathing apparatus) and only after being relieved by another worker. Safety belt or harness with attached lifeline shall be used by all workers entering the space with the free end of the line secured outside the entry opening. The standby worker shall attempt to remove a disabled worker via his lifeline before entering the space.

When practical, these spaces shall be entered through side openings -- those within 3 1/2 feet (1.07 m) of the bottom. When entry must be through a top opening, the safety belt shall be of the harness type that suspends a person upright and a hoisting device or similar apparatus shall be available for lifting workers out of the space.

In any situation where their use may endanger the worker, use of a hoisting device or safety belt and attached lifeline may be discontinued.

When dangerous air contamination is attributable to flammable and/or explosive substances, lighting and electrical equipment shall be Class 1, Division 1 rated per National Electrical Code and no ignition sources shall be introduced into the area.

Continuous gas monitoring shall be performed during all confined space operations. If alarm conditions change adversely, entry personnel shall exit the confined space and a new confined space permit issued.

Rescue. Call the fire department services for rescue. Where immediate hazards to injured personnel are present, workers at the site shall implement emergency procedures to fit the situation.

Example 2.
Workplace. Meat and poultry rendering plants.
Cookers and dryers are either batch or continuous in their operation. Multiple batch cookers are operated in parallel. When one unit of a multiple set is shut down for repairs, means are available to isolate that unit from the others which remain in operation.
Cookers and dryers are horizontal, cylindrical vessels equipped with a center, rotating shaft and agitator paddles or discs.
If the inner shell is jacketed, it is usually heated with steam at pressures up to 150 psig (1034.25 kPa). The rotating shaft assembly of the continuous cooker or dryer is also steam heated.
Potential Hazards. The recognized hazards associated with cookers and dryers are the risk that employees could be:
1. Struck or caught by rotating agitator;
2. Engulfed in raw material or hot, recycled fat;
3. Burned by steam from leaks into the cooker/dryer steam jacket or the condenser duct system if steam valves are not properly closed and locked out;
4. Burned by contact with hot metal surfaces, such as the agitator shaft assembly, or inner shell of the cooker/dryer;
5. Heat stress caused by warm atmosphere inside cooker/dryer;
6. Slipping and falling on grease in the cooker/dryer;
7. Electrically shocked by faulty equipment taken into the cooker/dryer;
8. Burned or overcome by fire or products of combustion; or
9. Overcome by fumes generated by welding or cutting done on grease covered surfaces.
Permits. The supervisor in this case is always present at the cooker/dryer or other permit entry confined space when entry is made. The supervisor must follow the pre-entry isolation procedures described in the entry permit in preparing for entry, and ensure that the protective clothing, ventilating equipment and any other equipment required by the permit are at the entry site.
Control of hazards. Mechanical. Lock out main power switch to agitator motor at main power panel. Affix tag to the lock to inform others that a permit entry confined space entry is in progress.
Engulfment. Close all valves in the raw material blow line. Secure each valve in its closed position using chain and lock. Attach a tag to the valve and chain warning that a permit entry confined space entry is in progress. The same procedure shall be used for securing the fat recycle valve.
Burns and heat stress. Close steam supply valves to jacket and secure with chains and tags. Insert solid blank at flange in cooker vent line to condenser manifold duct system. Vent cooker/dryer by opening access door at discharge end and top center door to allow natural ventilation throughout the entry. If faster cooling is needed, use a portable ventilation fan to increase ventilation. Cooling water may be circulated through the jacket to reduce both outer and inner surface temperatures of cooker/dryers faster. Check air and inner surface temperatures in cooker/dryer to assure they are within acceptable limits before entering, or use proper protective clothing.
Fire and fume hazards. Careful site preparation, such as cleaning the area within 4 inches (10.16 cm) of all welding or torch cutting operations, and proper ventilation are the preferred controls. All welding and cutting operations shall be done in accordance with the requirements of 29 CFR Part 1910, Subpart Q, OSHA's welding standard. Proper ventilation may be achieved by local exhaust ventilation, or the use of portable ventilation fans, or a combination of the two practices.

Electrical shock. Electrical equipment used in cooker/dryers shall be in serviceable condition.
Slips and falls. Remove residual grease before entering cooker/dryer.
Attendant. The supervisor shall be the attendant for employees entering cooker/dryers.
Permit. The permit shall specify how isolation shall be done and any other preparations needed before making entry. This is especially important in parallel arrangements of cooker/dryers so that the entire operation need not be shut down to allow safe entry into one unit.
Rescue. When necessary, the attendant shall call the fire department as previously arranged.
Example 3.
Workplace. Workplaces where tank cars, trucks, and trailers, dry bulk tanks and trailers, railroad tank cars, and similar portable tanks are fabricated or serviced.
A. During fabrication. These tanks and dry-bulk carriers are entered repeatedly throughout the fabrication process. These products are not configured identically, but the manufacturing processes by which they are made are very similar.
Sources of hazards. In addition to the mechanical hazards arising from the risks that an entrant would be injured due to contact with components of the tank or the tools being used, there is also the risk that a worker could be injured by breathing fumes from welding materials or mists or vapors from materials used to coat the tank interior. In addition, many of these vapors and mists are flammable, so the failure to properly ventilate a tank could lead to a fire or explosion.

Control of hazards.

Welding. Local exhaust ventilation shall be used to remove welding fumes once the tank or carrier is completed to the point that workers may enter and exit only through a manhole. (Follow the requirements of 29 CFR 1910, Subpart Q, OSHA's welding standard, at all times.) Welding gas tanks may never be brought into a tank or carrier that is a permit entry confined space.
Application of interior coatings/linings. Atmospheric hazards shall be controlled by forced air ventilation sufficient to keep the atmospheric concentration of flammable materials below 10% of the lower flammable limit (LFL) (or lower explosive limit (LEL), whichever term is used locally). The appropriate respirators are provided and shall be used in addition to providing forced ventilation if the forced ventilation does not maintain acceptable respiratory conditions.

Permits. Because of the repetitive nature of the entries in these operations, an "Area Entry Permit" will be issued for a 1 month period to cover those production areas where tanks are fabricated to the point that entry and exit are made using manholes.
Authorization. Only the area supervisor may authorize an employee to enter a tank within the permit area. The area supervisor must determine that conditions in the tank trailer, dry bulk trailer or truck, etc. meet permit requirements before authorizing entry.
Attendant. The area supervisor shall designate an employee to maintain communication by employer specified means with employees working in tanks to ensure their safety. The attendant may not enter any permit entry confined space to rescue an entrant or for any other reason, unless authorized by the rescue procedure and, even then, only after calling the rescue team and being relieved by an attendant or another worker.
Communications and observation. Communications between attendant and entrant(s) shall be maintained throughout entry. Methods of communication that may be specified by the permit include voice, voice powered radio, tapping or rapping codes on tank walls, signaling tugs on a rope, and the attendant's observation that work activities such as chipping, grinding, welding, spraying, etc., which require deliberate operator control continue normally. These activities often generate so much noise that the necessary hearing protection makes communication by voice difficult.

Rescue procedures. Acceptable rescue procedures include entry by a team of employee-rescuers, use of public emergency services, and procedures for breaching the tank. The area permit specifies which procedures are available, but the area supervisor makes the final decision based on circumstances. (Certain injuries may make it necessary to breach the tank to remove a person rather than risk additional injury by removal through an existing manhole. However, the supervisor must ensure that no breaching procedure used for rescue would violate terms of the entry permit. For instance, if the tank must be breached by cutting with a torch, the tank surfaces to be cut must be free of volatile or combustible coatings within 4 inches (10.16 cm) of the cutting line and the atmosphere within the tank must be below the LFL.

Retrieval line and harnesses. The retrieval lines and harnesses generally required under this standard are usually impractical for use in tanks because the internal configuration of the tanks and their interior baffles and other structures would prevent rescuers from hauling out injured entrants. However, unless the rescue procedure calls for breaching the tank for rescue, the rescue team shall be trained in the use of retrieval lines and harnesses for removing injured employees through manholes.

B. Repair or service of "used" tanks and bulk trailers.

Sources of hazards. In addition to facing the potential hazards encountered in fabrication or manufacturing, tanks or trailers which have been in service may contain residues of dangerous materials, whether left over from the transportation of hazardous cargoes or generated by chemical or bacterial action on residues of non-hazardous cargoes.

Control of atmospheric hazards. A "used" tank shall be brought into areas where tank entry is authorized only after the tank has been emptied, cleansed (without employee entry) of any residues, and purged of any potential atmospheric hazards.

Welding. In addition to tank cleaning for control of atmospheric hazards, coating and surface materials shall be removed 4 inches (10.16 cm) or more from any surface area where welding or other torch work will be done and care taken that the atmosphere within the tank remains well below the LFL. (Follow the requirements of 29 CFR 1910, Subpart Q, OSHA's welding standard, at all times.)

Permits. An entry permit valid for up to 1 year shall be issued prior to authorization of entry into used tank trailers, dry bulk trailers or trucks. In addition to the pre-entry cleaning requirement, this permit shall require the employee safeguards specified for new tank fabrication or construction permit areas.

Authorization. Only the area supervisor may authorize an employee to enter a tank trailer, dry bulk trailer or truck within the permit area. The area supervisor must determine that the entry permit requirements have been met before authorizing entry.

[58 FR 4549, Jan. 14, 1993; 58 FR 34846, June 29, 1993]

Confined Space Pre-Entry Check List - 1910.146 App D

Appendix D to §1910.146 -- Sample Permits

Appendix D-1

Confined Space Entry Permit

Date and Time Issued: _______________ Date and Time Expires: ________

Job site/Space I.D.: ________________ Job Supervisor:________________

Equipment to be worked on: __________ Work to be performed: _________

Stand-by personnel: __________________ ________________ _____________

1. Atmospheric Checks: Time ________
   Oxygen ________%
   Explosive ________% L.F.L.
   Toxic ________PPM

2. Tester's signature: _____________________________

3. Source isolation (No Entry): N/A Yes No
   Pumps or lines blinded, ( ) ( ) ( )
   disconnected, or blocked ( ) ( ) ( )

4. Ventilation Modification: N/A Yes No
   Mechanical ( ) ( ) ( )
   Natural Ventilation only ( ) ( ) ( )

5. Atmospheric check after
   isolation and Ventilation:
   Oxygen __________% > 19.5 %
   Explosive _______% L.F.L < 10 %
   Toxic ___________PPM < 10 PPM H(2)S
   Time ____________
   Testers signature: _____________________________

6. Communication procedures: ____
____

7. Rescue procedures: ____
____
____
____

8. Entry, standby, and back up persons: Yes No
   Successfully completed required training?
   Is it current? ( ) ( )
9. Equipment: N/A Yes No
   Direct reading gas monitor - tested ( ) ( ) ( )
   Safety harnesses and lifelines
   for entry and standby persons ( ) ( ) ( )
   Hoisting equipment ( ) ( ) ( )
   Powered communications ( ) ( ) ( )
   SCBA's for entry and standby
   persons ( ) ( ) ( )

Protective Clothing ( ) ( ) ( )
All electric equipment listed
Class I, Division I, Group D
and Non-sparking tools ( ) ( ) ( )

10. Periodic atmospheric tests:

Oxygen	____%	Time ____	Oxygen	____%	Time ____
Oxygen	____%	Time ____	Oxygen	____%	Time ____
Explosive	____%	Time ____	Explosive	____%	Time ____
Explosive	____%	Time ____	Explosive	____%	Time ____
Toxic	____%	Time ____	Toxic	____%	Time ____
Toxic	____%	Time ____	Toxic	____%	Time ____

We have reviewed the work authorized by this permit and the information contained herein. Written instructions and safety procedures have been received and are understood. Entry cannot be approved if any squares are marked in the "No" column. This permit is not valid unless all appropriate items are completed.

Permit Prepared By: (Supervisor)____

Approved By: (Unit Supervisor)____

Reviewed By (Cs Operations Personnel) :

__________________________________ ______________________________________
(printed name) (signature)

This permit to be kept at job site. Return job site copy to Safety Office following job completion.

Copies: White Original (Safety Office)
Yellow (Unit Supervisor)
Hard (Job site)

Appendix D - 2

ENTRY PERMIT

PERMIT VALID FOR 8 HOURS ONLY. ALL COPIES OF PERMIT WILL REMAIN AT JOB SITE UNTIL JOB IS COMPLETED

DATE: - - SITE LOCATION and DESCRIPTION ______________________________

PURPOSE OF ENTRY ____

SUPERVISOR(S) in charge of crews Type of Crew Phone #

____

____

COMMUNICATION PROCEDURES ____

RESCUE PROCEDURES (PHONE NUMBERS AT BOTTOM) ______________________

____

* BOLD DENOTES MINIMUM REQUIREMENTS TO BE COMPLETED AND REVIEWED PRIOR TO ENTRY*

REQUIREMENTS COMPLETED	DATE	TIME
Lock Out/De-energize/Try-out	____	____
Line(s) Broken-Capped-Blanked	____	____
Purge-Flush and Vent	____	____
Ventilation	____	____
Secure Area (Post and Flag)	____	____
Breathing Apparatus	____	____
Resuscitator - Inhalator	____	____
Standby Safety Personnel	____	____
Full Body Harness w/"D" ring	____	____
Emergency Escape Retrieval Equip	____	____
Lifelines	____	____
Fire Extinguishers	____	____
Lighting (Explosive Proof)	____	____
Protective Clothing	____	____
Respirator(s) (Air Purifying)	____	____
Burning and Welding Permit	____	____

Note: Items that do not apply enter N/A in the blank.

**RECORD CONTINUOUS MONITORING RESULTS EVERY 2 HOURS

CONTINUOUS MONITORING** TEST(S) TO BE TAKEN	Permissible Entry Level	________________
PERCENT OF OXYGEN	19.5% to 23.5%	___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
LOWER FLAMMABLE LIMIT	Under 10%	___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
CARBON MONOXIDE	+35 PPM	___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
Aromatic Hydrocarbon	+ 1 PPM * 5PPM	___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
Hydrogen Cyanide	(Skin) * 4PPM	___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
Hydrogen Sulfide	+10 PPM *15PPM	___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
Sulfur Dioxide	+ 2 PPM * 5PPM	___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___
Ammonia	*35PPM	___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___ ___

* Short-term exposure limit: Employee can work in the area up to 15 minutes.
+ 8 hr. Time Weighted Avg.: Employee can work in area 8 hrs (longer with appropriate respiratory protection).

REMARKS: ____

GAS TESTER NAME & CHECK #	INSTRUMENT(S) USED	MODEL &/OR TYPE	SERIAL &/OR UNIT #
________________	_______________	___________	____________
________________	_______________	___________	____________

SAFETY STANDBY PERSON IS REQUIRED FOR ALL CONFINED SPACE WORK

SAFETY STANDBY PERSON(S)	CHECK #	CONFINED SPACE ENTRANT(S)	CHECK #	SPACE ENTRANT(S)	CHECK #
______________	_______	__________	_______	__________	_______
______________	_______	__________	_______	__________	_______

SUPERVISOR AUTHORIZING - ALL CONDITIONS SATISFIED____________________

DEPARTMENT/PHONE ___________________________

AMBULANCE 2800 FIRE 2900   Safety   4901 Gas Coordinator 4529/5387

[58 FR 4549, Jan. 14, 1993; 58 FR 34846, June 29, 1993]

Regulations (Standards - 29 CFR)
Sewer System Entry. - 1910.146 App E

Sewer entry differs in three vital respects from other permit entries; first, there rarely exists any way to completely isolate the space (a section of a continuous system) to be entered; second, because isolation is not complete, the atmosphere may suddenly and unpredictably become lethally hazardous (toxic, flammable or explosive) from causes beyond the control of the entrant or employer, and third, experienced sewer workers are especially knowledgeable in entry and work in their permit spaces because of their frequent entries. Unlike other employments where permit space entry is a rare and exceptional event, sewer workers' usual work environment is a permit space.
(1) Adherence to procedure. The employer should designate as entrants only employees who are thoroughly trained in the employer's sewer entry procedures and who demonstrate that they follow these entry procedures exactly as prescribed when performing sewer entries.
(2) Atmospheric monitoring. Entrants should be trained in the use of, and be equipped with, atmospheric monitoring equipment which sounds an audible alarm, in addition to its visual readout, whenever one of the following conditions are encountered: Oxygen concentration less than 19.5 percent; flammable gas or vapor at 10 percent or more of the lower flammable limit (LFL); or hydrogen sulfide or carbon monoxide at or above 10 ppm or 35 ppm, respectively, measured as an 8-hour time-weighted average. Atmospheric monitoring equipment needs to be calibrated according to the manufacturer's instructions. The oxygen sensor/broad range sensor is best suited for initial use in situations where the actual or potential contaminants have not been identified, because broad range sensors, unlike substance-specific sensors, enable employers to obtain an overall reading of the hydrocarbons (flammables) present in the space. However, such sensors only indicate that a hazardous threshold of a class of chemicals has been exceeded. They do not measure the levels of contamination of specific substances. Therefore, substance-specific devices, which measure the actual levels of specific substances, are best suited for use where actual and potential contaminants have been identified. The measurements obtained with substance-specific devices are of vital importance to the employer when decisions are made concerning the measures necessary to protect entrants (such as ventilation or personal protective equipment) and the setting and attainment of appropriate entry conditions. However, the sewer environment may suddenly and unpredictably change, and the substance-specific devices may not detect the potentially lethal atmospheric hazards which may enter the sewer environment.
Although OSHA considers the information and guidance provided above to be appropriate and useful in most sewer entry situations, the Agency emphasizes that each employer must consider the unique circumstances, including the predictability of the atmosphere, of the sewer permit spaces in the employer's workplace in preparing for entry. Only the employer can decide, based upon his or her knowledge of, and experience with permit spaces in sewer systems, what the best type of testing instrument may be for any specific entry operation.
The selected testing instrument should be carried and used by the entrant in sewer line work to monitor the atmosphere in the entrant's environment, and in advance of the entrant's direction of movement, to warn the entrant of any deterioration in atmospheric conditions. Where several entrants are working together in the same immediate location, one instrument, used by the lead entrant, is acceptable.
(3) Surge flow and flooding. Sewer crews should develop and maintain liaison, to the extent possible, with the local weather bureau and fire and emergency services in their area so that sewer work may be delayed or interrupted and entrants withdrawn whenever sewer lines might be suddenly flooded by rain or fire suppression activities, or whenever flammable or

other hazardous materials are released into sewers during emergencies by industrial or transportation accidents.

(4) Special Equipment. Entry into large bore sewers may require the use of special equipment. Such equipment might include such items as atmosphere monitoring devices with automatic audible alarms, escape self-contained breathing apparatus (ESCBA) with at least 10 minute air supply (or other NIOSH approved self-rescuer), and waterproof flashlights, and may also include boats and rafts, radios and rope stand-offs for pulling around bends and corners as needed.

[58 FR 4549, Jan. 14, 1993; 58 FR 34845, June 29, 1993; 59 FR 26115, May 19, 1994]

Lift Station used to convey sewer or collections to a higher location in the system.

Non-Mandatory Appendix F -- Rescue Team or Rescue Service Evaluation Criteria - 1910.146 App F

Non-Mandatory Appendix F -- Rescue Team or Rescue Service Evaluation Criteria

(1) This appendix provides guidance to employers in choosing an appropriate rescue service. It contains criteria that may be used to evaluate the capabilities both of prospective and current rescue teams. Before a rescue team can be trained or chosen, however, a satisfactory permit program, including an analysis of all permit- required confined spaces to identify all potential hazards in those spaces, must be completed. OSHA believes that compliance with all the provisions of §1910.146 will enable employers to conduct permit space operations without recourse to rescue services in nearly all cases. However, experience indicates that circumstances will arise where entrants will need to be rescued from permit spaces. It is therefore important for employers to select rescue services or teams, either on-site or off-site, that are equipped and capable of minimizing harm to both entrants and rescuers if the need arises.

(2) For all rescue teams or services, the employer's evaluation should consist of two components: an initial evaluation, in which employers decide whether a potential rescue service or team is adequately trained and equipped to perform permit space rescues of the kind needed at the facility and whether such rescuers can respond in a timely manner, and a performance evaluation, in which employers measure the performance of the team or service during an actual or practice rescue. For example, based on the initial evaluation, an employer may determine that maintaining an on-site rescue team will be more expensive than obtaining the services of an off-site team, without being significantly more effective, and decide to hire a rescue service. During a performance evaluation, the employer could decide, after observing the rescue service perform a practice rescue, that the service's training or preparedness was not adequate to affect a timely or effective rescue at his or her facility and decide to select another rescue service, or to form an internal rescue team.

A. Initial Evaluation

I. The employer should meet with the prospective rescue service to facilitate the evaluations required by §1910.146(k)(1)(i) and §1910.146(k)(1)(ii). At a minimum, if an off-site rescue service is being considered, the employer must contact the service to plan and coordinate the evaluations required by the standard. Merely posting the service's number or planning to rely on the 911 emergency phone number to obtain these services at the time of a permit space emergency would not comply with paragraph (k)(1) of the standard.

II. The capabilities required of a rescue service vary with the type of permit spaces from which rescue may be necessary and the hazards likely to be encountered in those spaces. Answering the questions below will assist employers in determining whether the rescue service is capable of performing rescues in the permit spaces present at the employer's workplace.

1. What are the needs of the employer with regard to response time (time for the rescue service to receive notification, arrive at the scene, and set up and be ready for entry)? For example, if entry is to be made into an IDLH atmosphere, or into a space that can quickly develop an IDLH atmosphere (if ventilation fails or for other reasons), the rescue team or service would need to be standing by at the permit space. On the other hand, if the danger to entrants is restricted to mechanical hazards that would cause injuries (e.g., broken bones, abrasions) a response time of 10 or 15 minutes might be adequate.
2. How quickly can the rescue team or service get from its location to the permit spaces from which rescue may be necessary? Relevant factors to consider would include: the location of the rescue team or service relative to the employer's workplace, the quality of roads and highways to be traveled, potential bottlenecks or traffic congestion that might be encountered in transit, the reliability of the rescuer's vehicles, and the training and skill of its drivers.

3. What is the availability of the rescue service? Is it unavailable at certain times of the day or in certain situations? What is the likelihood that key personnel of the rescue service might be unavailable at times? If the rescue service becomes unavailable while an entry is underway, does it have the capability of notifying the employer so that the employer can instruct the attendant to abort the entry immediately?
4. Does the rescue service meet all the requirements of paragraph (k)(2) of the standard? If not, has it developed a plan that will enable it to meet those requirements in the future? If so, how soon can the plan be implemented?
5. For off-site services, is the service willing to perform rescues at the employer's workplace? (An employer may not rely on a rescuer who declines, for whatever reason, to provide rescue services.)
6. Is an adequate method for communications between the attendant, employer and prospective rescuer available so that a rescue request can be transmitted to the rescuer without delay? How soon after notification can a prospective rescuer dispatch a rescue team to the entry site?
7. For rescues into spaces that may pose significant atmospheric hazards and from which rescue entry, patient packaging and retrieval cannot be safely accomplished in a relatively short time (15-20 minutes), employers should consider using airline respirators (with escape bottles) for the rescuers and to supply rescue air to the patient. If the employer decides to use SCBA, does the prospective rescue service have an ample supply of replacement cylinders and procedures for rescuers to enter and exit (or be retrieved) well within the SCBA's air supply limits?
8. If the space has a vertical entry over 5 feet in depth, can the prospective rescue service properly perform entry rescues? Does the service have the technical knowledge and equipment to perform rope work or elevated rescue, if needed?
9. Does the rescue service have the necessary skills in medical evaluation, patient packaging and emergency response?
10. Does the rescue service have the necessary equipment to perform rescues, or must the equipment be provided by the employer or another source?

B. Performance Evaluation

Rescue services are required by paragraph (k)(2)(iv) of the standard to practice rescues at least once every 12 months, provided that the team or service has not successfully performed a permit space rescue within that time. As part of each practice session, the service should perform a critique of the practice rescue, or have another qualified party perform the critique, so that deficiencies in procedures, equipment, training, or number of personnel can be identified and corrected. The results of the critique, and the corrections made to respond to the deficiencies identified, should be given to the employer to enable it to determine whether the rescue service can quickly be upgraded to meet the employer's rescue needs or whether another service must be selected. The following questions will assist employers and rescue teams and services evaluate their performance.

1. Have all members of the service been trained as permit space entrants, at a minimum, including training in the potential hazards of all permit spaces, or of representative permit spaces, from which rescue may be needed? Can team members recognize the signs, symptoms, and consequences of exposure to any hazardous atmospheres that may be present in those permit spaces?
2. Is every team member provided with, and properly trained in, the use and need for PPE, such as SCBA or fall arrest equipment, which may be required to perform permit space rescues in the facility? Is every team member properly trained to perform his or her functions and make rescues, and to use any rescue equipment, such as ropes and backboards, that may be needed in a rescue attempt?

3. Are team members trained in the first aid and medical skills needed to treat victims overcome or injured by the types of hazards that may be encountered in the permit spaces at the facility?
4. Do all team members perform their functions safely and efficiently? Do rescue service personnel focus on their own safety before considering the safety of the victim?
5. If necessary, can the rescue service properly test the atmosphere to determine if it is IDLH?
6. Can the rescue personnel identify information pertinent to the rescue from entry permits, hot work permits, and MSDSs?
7. Has the rescue service been informed of any hazards to personnel that may arise from outside the space, such as those that may be caused by future work near the space?
8. If necessary, can the rescue service properly package and retrieve victims from a permit space that has a limited size opening (less than 24 inches (60.9 cm) in diameter), limited internal space, or internal obstacles or hazards?
9. If necessary, can the rescue service safely perform an elevated (high angle) rescue?
10. Does the rescue service have a plan for each of the kinds of permit space rescue operations at the facility? Is the plan adequate for all types of rescue operations that may be needed at the facility? Teams may practice in representative spaces, or in spaces that are "worst-case" or most restrictive with respect to internal configuration, elevation, and portal size. The following characteristics of a practice space should be considered when deciding whether a space is truly representative of an actual permit space:
(1) Internal configuration.
(a) Open -- there are no obstacles, barriers, or obstructions within the space. One example is a water tank.
(b) Obstructed -- the permit space contains some type of obstruction that a rescuer would need to maneuver around. An example would be a baffle or mixing blade. Large equipment, such as a ladder or scaffold, brought into a space for work purposes would be considered an obstruction if the positioning or size of the equipment would make rescue more difficult.
(2) Elevation.

(a) Elevated -- a permit space where the entrance portal or opening is above grade by 4 feet or more. This type of space usually requires knowledge of high angle rescue procedures because of the difficulty in packaging and transporting a patient to the ground from the portal.
(b) Non-elevated -- a permit space with the entrance portal located less than 4 feet above grade. This type of space will allow the rescue team to transport an injured employee normally.
(3) Portal size.
(a) Restricted -- A portal of 24 inches or less in the least dimension. Portals of this size are too small to allow a rescuer to simply enter the space while using SCBA. The portal size is also too small to allow normal spinal immobilization of an injured employee.
(b) Unrestricted -- A portal of greater than 24 inches in the least dimension. These portals allow relatively free movement into and out of the permit space.
(4) Space access.
(a) Horizontal -- The portal is located on the side of the permit space. Use of retrieval lines could be difficult.
(b) Vertical -- The portal is located on the top of the permit space, so that rescuers must climb down, or the bottom of the permit space, so that rescuers must climb up to enter the space. Vertical portals may require knowledge of rope techniques, or special patient packaging to safely retrieve a downed entrant.
[63 FR 66039, Dec. 1, 1998]

The control of hazardous energy (lockout/tagout). - 1910.147

Scope, application and purpose -
1910.147(a)(1)
Scope
1910.147(a)(1)(i)
This standard covers the servicing and maintenance of machines and equipment in which the **unexpected** energization or startup of the machines or equipment, or release of stored energy could cause injury to employees. This standard establishes minimum performance requirements for the control of such hazardous energy.
1910.147(a)(1)(ii)
This standard does not cover the following:
1910.147(a)(1)(ii)(A)
Construction, agriculture and maritime employment;
1910.147(a)(1)(ii)(B)
Installations under the exclusive control of electric utilities for the purpose of power generation, transmission and distribution, including related equipment for communication or metering; and
1910.147(a)(1)(ii)(C)
Exposure to electrical hazards from work on, near, or with conductors or equipment in electric utilization installations, which is covered by Subpart S of this part; and
..1910.147(a)(1)(ii)(D)

1910.147(a)(1)(ii)(D)
Oil and gas well drilling and servicing.
1910.147(a)(2)
Application.
1910.147(a)(2)(i)
This standard applies to the control of energy during servicing and/or maintenance of machines and equipment.

1910.147(a)(2)(ii)
Normal production operations are not covered by this standard (See Subpart O of this Part). Servicing and/or maintenance which takes place during normal production operations is covered by this standard only if:
1910.147(a)(2)(ii)(A)
An employee is required to remove or bypass a guard or other safety device; or
1910.147(a)(2)(ii)(B)
An employee is required to place any part of his or her body into an area on a machine or piece of equipment where work is actually performed upon the material being processed (point of operation) or where an associated danger zone exists during a machine operating cycle.
Note: **Exception to paragraph (a)(2)(ii):** Minor tool changes and adjustments, and other minor servicing activities, which take place during normal production operations, are not covered by this standard if they are routine, repetitive, and integral to the use of the equipment for production, provided that the work is performed using alternative measures which provide effective protection (See Subpart O of this Part).
1910.147(a)(2)(iii)
This standard does not apply to the following:
..1910.147(a)(2)(iii)(A)

1910.147(a)(2)(iii)(A)
Work on cord and plug connected electric equipment for which exposure to the hazards of unexpected energization or startup of the equipment is controlled by the unplugging of the equipment from the energy source and by the plug being under the exclusive control of the employee performing the servicing or maintenance.
1910.147(a)(2)(iii)(B)
Hot tap operations involving transmission and distribution systems for substances such as gas, steam, water or petroleum products when they are performed on pressurized pipelines, provided that the employer demonstrates that-
1910.147(a)(2)(iii)(B)(1)
continuity of service is essential;
1910.147(a)(2)(iii)(B)(2)
shutdown of the system is impractical; and

1910.147(a)(2)(iii)(B)(3)
documented procedures are followed, and special equipment is used which will provide proven effective protection for employees.
1910.147(a)(3)
Purpose.
1910.147(a)(3)(i)
This section requires employers to establish a program and utilize procedures for affixing appropriate lockout devices or tagout devices to energy isolating devices, and to otherwise disable machines or equipment to prevent unexpected energization, start up or release of stored energy in order to prevent injury to employees.
1910.147(a)(3)(ii)
When other standards in this part require the use of lockout or tagout, they shall be used and supplemented by the procedural and training requirements of this section.
1910.147(b)
Definitions applicable to this section.
Affected employee. An employee whose job requires him/her to operate or use a machine or equipment on which servicing or maintenance is being performed under lockout or tagout, or whose job requires him/her to work in an area in which such servicing or maintenance is being performed.
Authorized employee. A person who locks out or tags out machines or equipment in order to perform servicing or maintenance on that machine or equipment. An affected employee becomes an authorized employee when that employee's duties include performing servicing or maintenance covered under this section.
Capable of being locked out. An energy isolating device is capable of being locked out if it has a hasp or other means of attachment to which, or through which, a lock can be affixed, or it has a locking mechanism built into it. Other energy isolating devices are capable of being locked out, if lockout can be achieved without the need to dismantle, rebuild, or replace the energy isolating device or permanently alter its energy control capability.
Energized. Connected to an energy source or containing residual or stored energy.
Energy isolating device. A mechanical device that physically prevents the transmission or release of energy, including but not limited to the following: A manually operated electrical circuit breaker; a disconnect switch; a manually operated switch by which the conductors of a circuit can be disconnected from all ungrounded supply conductors, and, in addition, no pole can be operated independently; a line valve; a block; and any similar device used to block or isolate energy. Push buttons, selector switches and other control circuit type devices are not energy isolating devices.
Energy source. Any source of electrical, mechanical, hydraulic, pneumatic, chemical, thermal, or other energy.

Hot tap. A procedure used in the repair, maintenance and services activities which involves welding on a piece of equipment (pipelines, vessels or tanks) under pressure, in order to install connections or appurtenances. it is commonly used to replace or add sections of pipeline without the interruption of service for air, gas, water, steam, and petrochemical distribution systems.
Lockout. The placement of a lockout device on an energy isolating device, in accordance with an established procedure, ensuring that the energy isolating device and the equipment being controlled cannot be operated until the lockout device is removed.
Lockout device. A device that utilizes a positive means such as a lock, either key or combination type, to hold an energy isolating device in the safe position and prevent the energizing of a machine or equipment. Included are blank flanges and bolted slip blinds.
Normal production operations. The utilization of a machine or equipment to perform its intended production function.
Servicing and/or maintenance. Workplace activities such as constructing, installing, setting up, adjusting, inspecting, modifying, and maintaining and/or servicing machines or equipment. These activities include lubrication, cleaning or unjamming of machines or equipment and making adjustments or tool changes, where the employee may be exposed to the **unexpected** energization or startup of the equipment or release of hazardous energy.
Setting up. Any work performed to prepare a machine or equipment to perform its normal production operation.
Tagout. The placement of a tagout device on an energy isolating device, in accordance with an established procedure, to indicate that the energy isolating device and the equipment being controlled may not be operated until the tagout device is removed.
Tagout device. A prominent warning device, such as a tag and a means of attachment, which can be securely fastened to an energy isolating device in accordance with an established procedure, to indicate that the energy isolating device and the equipment being controlled may not be operated until the tagout device is removed.
..1910.147(c)

1910.147(c) General -
1910.147(c)(1)
Energy control program. The employer shall establish a program consisting of energy control procedures, employee training and periodic inspections to ensure that before any employee performs any servicing or maintenance on a machine or equipment where the unexpected energizing, startup or release of stored energy could occur and cause injury, the machine or equipment shall be isolated from the energy source and rendered inoperative.
1910.147(c)(2)

Lockout/tagout.
1910.147(c)(2)(i)
If an energy isolating device is not capable of being locked out, the employer's energy control program under paragraph (c)(1) of this section shall utilize a tagout system.
1910.147(c)(2)(ii)
If an energy isolating device is capable of being locked out, the employer's energy control program under paragraph (c)(1) of this section shall utilize lockout, unless the employer can demonstrate that the utilization of a tagout system will provide full employee protection as set forth in paragraph (c)(3) of this section.
1910.147(c)(2)(iii)
After January 2, 1990, whenever replacement or major repair, renovation or modification of a machine or equipment is performed, and whenever new machines or equipment are

installed, energy isolating devices for such machine or equipment shall be designed to accept a lockout device.

1910.147(c)(3)

Full employee protection.

1910.147(c)(3)(i)

When a tagout device is used on an energy isolating device which is capable of being locked out, the tagout device shall be attached at the same location that the lockout device would have been attached, and the employer shall demonstrate that the tagout program will provide a level of safety equivalent to that obtained by using a lockout program.

..1910.147(c)(3)(ii)

1910.147(c)(3)(ii)

In demonstrating that a level of safety is achieved in the tagout program which is equivalent to the level of safety obtained by using a lockout program, the employer shall demonstrate full compliance with all tagout-related provisions of this standard together with such additional elements as are necessary to provide the equivalent safety available from the use of a lockout device. Additional means to be considered as part of the demonstration of full employee protection shall include the implementation of additional safety measures such as the removal of an isolating circuit element, blocking of a controlling switch, opening of an extra disconnecting device, or the removal of a valve handle to reduce the likelihood of inadvertent energization.

1910.147(c)(4)

Energy control procedure.

1910.147(c)(4)(i)

Procedures shall be developed, documented and utilized for the control of potentially hazardous energy when employees are engaged in the activities covered by this section. Note: **Exception:** The employer need not document the required procedure for a particular machine or equipment, when all of the following elements exist: (1) The machine or equipment has no potential for stored or residual energy or re-accumulation of stored energy after shut down which could endanger employees; (2) the machine or equipment has a single energy source which can be readily identified and isolated; (3) the isolation and locking out of that energy source will completely de-energize and deactivate the machine or equipment; (4) the machine or equipment is isolated from that energy source and locked out during servicing or maintenance; (5) a single lockout device will achieve a locker-out condition; (6) the lockout device is under the exclusive control of the authorized employee performing the servicing or maintenance; (7) the servicing or maintenance does not create hazards for other employees; and (8) the employer, in utilizing this exception, has had no accidents involving the unexpected activation or re-energization of the machine or equipment during servicing or maintenance.

1910.147(c)(4)(ii)

The procedures shall clearly and specifically outline the scope, purpose, authorization, rules, and techniques to be utilized for the control of hazardous energy, and the means to enforce compliance including, but not limited to, the following:

1910.147(c)(4)(ii)(A)

A specific statement of the intended use of the procedure;

1910.147(c)(4)(ii)(B)

Specific procedural steps for shutting down, isolating, blocking and securing machines or equipment to control hazardous energy;

1910.147(c)(4)(ii)(C)

Specific procedural steps for the placement, removal and transfer of lockout devices or tagout devices and the responsibility for them; and

..1910.147(c)(4)(ii)(D)

1910.147(c)(4)(ii)(D)
Specific requirements for testing a machine or equipment to determine and verify the effectiveness of lockout devices, tagout devices, and other energy control measures.

1910.147(c)(5)
Protective materials and hardware.
1910.147(c)(5)(i)
Locks, tags, chains, wedges, key blocks, adapter pins, self-locking fasteners, or other hardware shall be provided by the employer for isolating, securing or blocking of machines or equipment from energy sources.
1910.147(c)(5)(ii)
Lockout devices and tagout devices shall be singularly identified; shall be the only devices(s) used for controlling energy; shall not be used for other purposes; and shall meet the following requirements:
1910.147(c)(5)(ii)(A)
Durable.
1910.147(c)(5)(ii)(A)(1)
Lockout and tagout devices shall be capable of withstanding the environment to which they are exposed for the maximum period of time that exposure is expected.
1910.147(c)(5)(ii)(A)(2)
Tagout devices shall be constructed and printed so that exposure to weather conditions or wet and damp locations will not cause the tag to deteriorate or the message on the tag to become illegible.
1910.147(c)(5)(ii)(A)(3)
Tags shall not deteriorate when used in corrosive environments such as areas where acid and alkali chemicals are handled and stored.
..1910.147(c)(5)(ii)(B)

1910.147(c)(5)(ii)(B)
Standardized. Lockout and tagout devices shall be standardized within the facility in at least one of the following criteria: Color; shape; or size; and additionally, in the case of tagout devices, print and format shall be standardized.
1910.147(c)(5)(ii)(C)
Substantial -
1910.147(c)(5)(ii)(C)(1)
Lockout devices. Lockout devices shall be substantial enough to prevent removal without the use of excessive force or unusual techniques, such as with the use of bolt cutters or other metal cutting tools.
1910.147(c)(5)(ii)(C)(2)
Tagout devices. Tagout devices, including their means of attachment, shall be substantial enough to prevent inadvertent or accidental removal. Tagout device attachment means shall be of a non-reusable type, attachable by hand, self-locking, and non-releasable with a minimum unlocking strength of no less than 50 pounds and having the general design and basic characteristics of being at least equivalent to a one-piece, all environment-tolerant nylon cable tie.
1910.147(c)(5)(ii)(D)
Identifiable. Lockout devices and tagout devices shall indicate the identity of the employee applying the device(s).
1910.147(c)(5)(iii)

Tagout devices shall warn against hazardous conditions if the machine or equipment is energized and shall include a legend such as the following: **Do Not Start. Do Not Open. Do Not Close. Do Not Energize. Do Not Operate.**
..1910.147(c)(6)

1910.147(c)(6)
Periodic inspection.
1910.147(c)(6)(i)
The employer shall conduct a periodic inspection of the energy control procedure at least annually to ensure that the procedure and the requirements of this standard are being followed.
1910.147(c)(6)(i)(A)
The periodic inspection shall be performed by an authorized employee other than the ones(s) utilizing the energy control procedure being inspected.
1910.147(c)(6)(i)(B)
The periodic inspection shall be conducted to correct any deviations or inadequacies identified.
1910.147(c)(6)(i)(C)
Where lockout is used for energy control, the periodic inspection shall include a review, between the inspector and each authorized employee, of that employee's responsibilities under the energy control procedure being inspected.

1910.147(c)(6)(i)(D)
Where tagout is used for energy control, the periodic inspection shall include a review, between the inspector and each authorized and affected employee, of that employee's responsibilities under the energy control procedure being inspected, and the elements set forth in paragraph (c)(7)(ii) of this section.
..1910.147(c)(6)(ii)

1910.147(c)(6)(ii)
The employer shall certify that the periodic inspections have been performed. The certification shall identify the machine or equipment on which the energy control procedure was being utilized, the date of the inspection, the employees included in the inspection, and the person performing the inspection.
1910.147(c)(7)
Training and communication.
1910.147(c)(7)(i)
The employer shall provide training to ensure that the purpose and function of the energy control program are understood by employees and that the knowledge and skills required for the safe application, usage, and removal of the energy controls are acquired by employees. The training shall include the following:
1910.147(c)(7)(i)(A)
Each authorized employee shall receive training in the recognition of applicable hazardous energy sources, the type and magnitude of the energy available in the workplace, and the methods and means necessary for energy isolation and control.
1910.147(c)(7)(i)(B)
Each affected employee shall be instructed in the purpose and use of the energy control procedure.
1910.147(c)(7)(i)(C)
All other employees whose work operations are or may be in an area where energy control procedures may be utilized, shall be instructed about the procedure, and about the prohibition relating to attempts to restart or reenergize machines or equipment which are locked out or tagged out.

1910.147(c)(7)(ii)
When tagout systems are used, employees shall also be trained in the following limitations of tags:
..1910.147(c)(7)(ii)(A)

1910.147(c)(7)(ii)(A)
Tags are essentially warning devices affixed to energy isolating devices, and do not provide the physical restraint on those devices that is provided by a lock.
1910.147(c)(7)(ii)(B)
When a tag is attached to an energy isolating means, it is not to be removed without authorization of the authorized person responsible for it, and it is never to be bypassed, ignored, or otherwise defeated.
1910.147(c)(7)(ii)(C)
Tags must be legible and understandable by all authorized employees, affected employees, and all other employees whose work operations are or may be in the area, in order to be effective.
1910.147(c)(7)(ii)(D)
Tags and their means of attachment must be made of materials which will withstand the environmental conditions encountered in the workplace.
1910.147(c)(7)(ii)(E)
Tags may evoke a false sense of security, and their meaning needs to be understood as part of the overall energy control program.
1910.147(c)(7)(ii)(F)
Tags must be securely attached to energy isolating devices so that they cannot be inadvertently or accidentally detached during use.
1910.147(c)(7)(iii)
Employee retraining.
..1910.147(c)(7)(iii)(A)

1910.147(c)(7)(iii)(A)
Retraining shall be provided for all authorized and affected employees whenever there is a change in their job assignments, a change in machines, equipment or processes that present a new hazard, or when there is a change in the energy control procedures.
1910.147(c)(7)(iii)(B)
Additional retraining shall also be conducted whenever a periodic inspection under paragraph (c)(6) of this section reveals, or whenever the employer has reason to believe that there are deviations from or inadequacies in the employee's knowledge or use of the energy control procedures.

1910.147(c)(7)(iii)(C)
The retraining shall reestablish employee proficiency and introduce new or revised control methods and procedures, as necessary.
1910.147(c)(7)(iv)
The employer shall certify that employee training has been accomplished and is being kept up to date. The certification shall contain each employee's name and dates of training.
1910.147(c)(8)
Energy isolation. Lockout or tagout shall be performed only by the authorized employees who are performing the servicing or maintenance.
1910.147(c)(9)
Notification of employees. Affected employees shall be notified by the employer or authorized employee of the application and removal of lockout devices or tagout devices.

Notification shall be given before the controls are applied, and after they are removed from the machine or equipment.

1910.147(d)

Application of control. The established procedures for the application of energy control (the lockout or tagout procedures) shall cover the following elements and actions and shall be done in the following sequence:

1910.147(d)(1)

Preparation for shutdown. Before an authorized or affected employee turns off a machine or equipment, the authorized employee shall have knowledge of the type and magnitude of the energy, the hazards of the energy to be controlled, and the method or means to control the energy.

1910.147(d)(2)

Machine or equipment shutdown. The machine or equipment shall be turned off or shut down using the procedures established for the machine or equipment. An orderly shutdown must be utilized to avoid any additional or increased hazard(s) to employees as a result of the equipment stoppage.

1910.147(d)(3)

Machine or equipment isolation. All energy isolating devices that are needed to control the energy to the machine or equipment shall be physically located and operated in such a manner as to isolate the machine or equipment from the energy source(s).

1910.147(d)(4)

Lockout or tagout device application.

1910.147(d)(4)(i)

Lockout or tagout devices shall be affixed to each energy isolating device by authorized employees.

..1910.147(d)(4)(ii)

1910.147(d)(4)(ii)

Lockout devices, where used, shall be affixed in a manner to that will hold the energy isolating devices in a "safe" or "off" position.

1910.147(d)(4)(iii)

Tagout devices, where used, shall be affixed in such a manner as will clearly indicate that the operation or movement of energy isolating devices from the "safe" or "off" position is prohibited.

1910.147(d)(4)(iii)(A)

Where tagout devices are used with energy isolating devices designed with the capability of being locked, the tag attachment shall be fastened at the same point at which the lock would have been attached.

1910.147(d)(4)(iii)(B)

Where a tag cannot be affixed directly to the energy isolating device, the tag shall be located as close as safely possible to the device, in a position that will be immediately obvious to anyone attempting to operate the device.

1910.147(d)(5)

Stored energy.

1910.147(d)(5)(i)

Following the application of lockout or tagout devices to energy isolating devices, all potentially hazardous stored or residual energy shall be relieved, disconnected, restrained, and otherwise rendered safe.

..1910.147(d)(5)(ii)

1910.147(d)(5)(ii)
If there is a possibility of re-accumulation of stored energy to a hazardous level, verification of isolation shall be continued until the servicing or maintenance is completed, or until the possibility of such accumulation no longer exists.
1910.147(d)(6)
Verification of isolation. Prior to starting work on machines or equipment that have been locked out or tagged out, the authorized employee shall verify that isolation and de-energization of the machine or equipment have been accomplished.
1910.147(e)
Release from lockout or tagout. Before lockout or tagout devices are removed and energy is restored to the machine or equipment, procedures shall be followed and actions taken by the authorized employee(s) to ensure the following:
1910.147(e)(1)
The machine or equipment. The work area shall be inspected to ensure that nonessential items have been removed and to ensure that machine or equipment components are operationally intact.
1910.147(e)(2)
Employees.
1910.147(e)(2)(i)
The work area shall be checked to ensure that all employees have been safely positioned or removed.
1910.147(e)(2)(ii)
After lockout or tagout devices have been removed and before a machine or equipment is started, affected employees shall be notified that the lockout or tagout device(s) have been removed.
1910.147(e)(3)
Lockout or tagout devices removal. Each lockout or tagout device shall be removed from each energy isolating device by the employee who applied the device. **Exception to paragraph (e)(3):** When the authorized employee who applied the lockout or tagout device is not available to remove it, that device may be removed under the direction of the employer, provided that specific procedures and training for such removal have been developed, documented and incorporated into the employer's energy control program. The employer shall demonstrate that the specific procedure provides equivalent safety to the removal of the device by the authorized employee who applied it. The specific procedure shall include at least the following elements:
1910.147(e)(3)(i)
Verification by the employer that the authorized employee who applied the device is not at the facility:
1910.147(e)(3)(ii)
Making all reasonable efforts to contact the authorized employee to inform him/her that his/her lockout or tagout device has been removed; and

1910.147(e)(3)(iii)
Ensuring that the authorized employee has this knowledge before he/she resumes work at that facility.
..1910.147(f)

1910.147(f)
Additional requirements.
1910.147(f)(1)
Testing or positioning of machines, equipment or components thereof. In situations in which lockout or tagout devices must be temporarily removed from the energy isolating device and the machine or equipment energized to test or position the machine, equipment or component thereof, the following sequence of actions shall be followed:
1910.147(f)(1)(i)
Clear the machine or equipment of tools and materials in accordance with paragraph (e)(1) of this section;
1910.147(f)(1)(ii)
Remove employees from the machine or equipment area in accordance with paragraph (e)(2) of this section;
1910.147(f)(1)(iii)
Remove the lockout or tagout devices as specified in paragraph (e)(3) of this section;
1910.147(f)(1)(iv)
Energize and proceed with testing or positioning;
1910.147(f)(1)(v)
De-energize all systems and reapply energy control measures in accordance with paragraph (d) of this section to continue the servicing and/or maintenance.
1910.147(f)(2)
Outside personnel (contractors, etc.).
1910.147(f)(2)(i)
Whenever outside servicing personnel are to be engaged in activities covered by the scope and application of this standard, the on-site employer and the outside employer shall inform each other of their respective lockout or tagout procedures.
..1910.147(f)(2)(ii)

1910.147(f)(2)(ii)
The on-site employer shall ensure that his/her employees understand and comply with the restrictions and prohibitions of the outside employer's energy control program.
1910.147(f)(3)
Group lockout or tagout.
1910.147(f)(3)(i)
When servicing and/or maintenance is performed by a crew, craft, department or other group, they shall utilize a procedure which affords the employees a level of protection equivalent to that provided by the implementation of a personal lockout or tagout device.
1910.147(f)(3)(ii)
Group lockout or tagout devices shall be used in accordance with the procedures required by paragraph (c)(4) of this section including, but not necessarily limited to, the following specific requirements:
1910.147(f)(3)(ii)(A)
Primary responsibility is vested in an authorized employee for a set number of employees working under the protection of a group lockout or tagout device (such as an operations lock);
1910.147(f)(3)(ii)(B)
Provision for the authorized employee to ascertain the exposure status of individual group members with regard to the lockout or tagout of the machine or equipment and
1910.147(f)(3)(ii)(C)
When more than one crew, craft, department, etc. is involved, assignment of overall job-associated lockout or tagout control responsibility to an authorized employee designated to coordinate affected work forces and ensure continuity of protection; and

..1910.147(f)(3)(ii)(D)

1910.147(f)(3)(ii)(D)
Each authorized employee shall affix a personal lockout or tagout device to the group lockout device, group lockbox, or comparable mechanism when he or she begins work, and shall remove those devices when he or she stops working on the machine or equipment being serviced or maintained.

1910.147(f)(4)
Shift or personnel changes. Specific procedures shall be utilized during shift or personnel changes to ensure the continuity of lockout or tagout protection, including provision for the orderly transfer of lockout or tagout device protection between off-going and oncoming employees, to minimize exposure to hazards from the unexpected energization or start-up of the machine or equipment, or the release of stored energy.
Note: The following appendix to §1910.147 services as a non-mandatory guideline to assist employers and employees in complying with the requirements of this section, as well as to provide other helpful information. Nothing in the appendix adds to or detracts from any of the requirements of this section.
[54 FR 36687, Sept. 1, 1989, as amended at 54 FR 42498, Oct. 17, 1989; 55 FR 38685, 38686, Sept. 20, 1990; 61 FR 5507, Feb. 13, 1996]

Typical Minimal Lockout Procedures - 1910.147 App A

General
The following simple lockout procedure is provided to assist employers in developing their procedures so they meet the requirements of this standard. When the energy isolating devices are not lockable, tagout may be used, provided the employer complies with the provisions of the standard which require additional training and more rigorous periodic inspections. When tagout is used and the energy isolating devices are lockable, the employer must provide full employee protection (see paragraph (c)(3)) and additional training and more rigorous periodic inspections are required. For more complex systems, more comprehensive procedures may need to be developed, documented, and utilized.

Lockout Procedure

Lockout Procedure for

____

(Name of Company for single procedure or identification of equipment
if multiple procedures are used).

Purpose
This procedure establishes the minimum requirements for the lockout of energy isolating devices whenever maintenance or servicing is done on machines or equipment. It shall be used to ensure that the machine or equipment is stopped, isolated from all potentially hazardous energy sources and locked out before employees perform any servicing or maintenance where the unexpected energization or start-up of the machine or equipment or release of stored energy could cause injury.
Compliance With This Program
All employees are required to comply with the restrictions and limitations imposed upon them during the use of lockout. The authorized employees are required to perform the lockout in accordance with this procedure. All employees, upon observing a machine or piece of equipment which is locked out to perform servicing or maintenance shall not attempt to start, energize, or use that machine or equipment.

____

Type of compliance enforcement to be taken for violation of the above

Sequence of Lockout

(1) Notify all affected employees that servicing or maintenance is required on a machine or equipment and that the machine or equipment must be shut down and locked out to perform the servicing or maintenance.

____

Name(s)/Job Title(s) of affected employees and how to notify.

(2) The authorized employee shall refer to the company procedure to identify the type and magnitude of the energy that the machine or equipment utilizes, shall understand the hazards of the energy, and shall know the methods to control the energy.

____

Type(s) and magnitude(s) of energy, its hazards and the methods to control the energy.

(3) If the machine or equipment is operating, shut it down by the normal stopping procedure (depress the stop button, open switch, close valve, etc.).

____

Type(s) and location(s) of machine or equipment operating controls.

(4) De-activate the energy isolating device(s) so that the machine or equipment is isolated from the energy source(s).

____

Type(s) and location(s) of energy isolating devices.

(5) Lock out the energy isolating device(s) with assigned individual lock(s).
(6) Stored or residual energy (such as that in capacitors, springs, elevated machine members, rotating flywheels, hydraulic systems, and air, gas, steam, or water pressure, etc.) must be dissipated or restrained by methods such as grounding, repositioning, blocking, bleeding down, etc.

____

Type(s) of stored energy - methods to dissipate or restrain.

(7) Ensure that the equipment is disconnected from the energy source(s) by first checking that no personnel are exposed, then verify the isolation of the equipment by operating the push button or other normal operating control(s) or by testing to make certain the equipment will not operate.
Caution: Return operating control(s) to neutral or "off" position after verifying the isolation of the equipment.

____

Method of verifying the isolation of the equipment.
(8) The machine or equipment is now locked out.
"Restoring Equipment to Service." When the servicing or maintenance is completed and the machine or equipment is ready to return to normal operating condition, the following steps shall be taken.
(1) Check the machine or equipment and the immediate area around the machine to ensure that nonessential items have been removed and that the machine or equipment components are operationally intact.
(2) Check the work area to ensure that all employees have been safely positioned or removed from the area.
(3) Verify that the controls are in neutral.
(4) Remove the lockout devices and reenergize the machine or equipment. Note: The removal of some forms of blocking may require re-energization of the machine before safe removal.
(5) Notify affected employees that the servicing or maintenance is completed and the machine or equipment is ready for used.
[54 FR 36687, Sept. 1, 1989 as amended at 54 FR 42498, Oct. 17, 1989; 55 FR 38685, Sept. 20, 1990; 61 FR 5507, Feb. 13, 1996]

Regulations (Standards - 29 CFR)
Respiratory Protection. - 1910.134

This section applies to General Industry (part 1910), Shipyards (part 1915), Marine Terminals (part 1917), Longshoring (part 1918), and Construction (part 1926).
..1910.134(a)

1910.134(a)
Permissible practice.
1910.134(a)(1)
In the control of those occupational diseases caused by breathing air contaminated with harmful dusts, fogs, fumes, mists, gases, smokes, sprays, or vapors, the primary objective shall be to prevent atmospheric contamination. This shall be accomplished as far as feasible by accepted engineering control measures (for example, enclosure or confinement of the operation, general and local ventilation, and substitution of less toxic materials). When effective engineering controls are not feasible, or while they are being instituted, appropriate respirators shall be used pursuant to this section.
1910.134(a)(2)
Respirators shall be provided by the employer when such equipment is necessary to protect the health of the employee. The employer shall provide the respirators which are applicable and suitable for the purpose intended. The employer shall be responsible for the establishment and maintenance of a respiratory protection program which shall include the requirements outlined in paragraph (c) of this section.
1910.134(b)
Definitions. The following definitions are important terms used in the respiratory protection standard in this section.

Air-purifying respirator means a respirator with an air-purifying filter, cartridge, or canister that removes specific air contaminants by passing ambient air through the air-purifying element.

Assigned protection factor (APF) [Reserved]

Atmosphere-supplying respirator means a respirator that supplies the respirator user with breathing air from a source independent of the ambient atmosphere, and includes supplied-air respirators (SARs) and self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA) units.

Canister or cartridge means a container with a filter, sorbent, or catalyst, or combination of these items, which removes specific contaminants from the air passed through the container.

Demand respirator means an atmosphere-supplying respirator that admits breathing air to the facepiece only when a negative pressure is created inside the facepiece by inhalation.

Emergency situation means any occurrence such as, but not limited to, equipment failure, rupture of containers, or failure of control equipment that may or does result in an uncontrolled significant release of an airborne contaminant.

Employee exposure means exposure to a concentration of an airborne contaminant that would occur if the employee were not using respiratory protection.

End-of-service-life indicator (ESLI) means a system that warns the respirator user of the approach of the end of adequate respiratory protection, for example, that the sorbent is approaching saturation or is no longer effective.

Escape-only respirator means a respirator intended to be used only for emergency exit.

Filter or air purifying element means a component used in respirators to remove solid or liquid aerosols from the inspired air.

Filtering facepiece (dust mask) means a negative pressure particulate respirator with a filter as an integral part of the facepiece or with the entire facepiece composed of the filtering medium.

Fit factor means a quantitative estimate of the fit of a particular respirator to a specific individual, and typically estimates the ratio of the concentration of a substance in ambient air to its concentration inside the respirator when worn.

Fit test means the use of a protocol to qualitatively or quantitatively evaluate the fit of a respirator on an individual. (See also Qualitative fit test QLFT and Quantitative fit test QNFT.)

Helmet means a rigid respiratory inlet covering that also provides head protection against impact and penetration.

High efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filter means a filter that is at least 99.97% efficient in removing monodisperse particles of 0.3 micrometers in diameter. The equivalent NIOSH 42 CFR 84 particulate filters are the N100, R100, and P100 filters.

Hood means a respiratory inlet covering that completely covers the head and neck and may also cover portions of the shoulders and torso.

Immediately dangerous to life or health (IDLH) means an atmosphere that poses an immediate threat to life, would cause irreversible adverse health effects, or would impair an individual's ability to escape from a dangerous atmosphere.

Interior structural firefighting means the physical activity of fire suppression, rescue or both, inside of buildings or enclosed structures which are involved in a fire situation beyond the incipient stage. (See 29 CFR 1910.155)

Loose-fitting facepiece means a respiratory inlet covering that is designed to form a partial seal with the face.

Maximum use concentration (MUC) [Reserved].

Negative pressure respirator (tight fitting) means a respirator in which the air pressure inside the facepiece is negative during inhalation with respect to the ambient air pressure outside the respirator.

Oxygen deficient atmosphere means an atmosphere with an oxygen content below 19.5% by volume.

Physician or other licensed health care professional (PLHCP) means an individual whose legally permitted scope of practice (i.e., license, registration, or certification) allows him or her to independently provide, or be delegated the responsibility to provide, some or all of the health care services required by paragraph (e) of this section.

Positive pressure respirator means a respirator in which the pressure inside the respiratory inlet covering exceeds the ambient air pressure outside the respirator.

Powered air-purifying respirator (PAPR) means an air-purifying respirator that uses a blower to force the ambient air through air-purifying elements to the inlet covering.

Pressure demand respirator means a positive pressure atmosphere-supplying respirator that admits breathing air to the facepiece when the positive pressure is reduced inside the facepiece by inhalation.

Qualitative fit test (QLFT) means a pass/fail fit test to assess the adequacy of respirator fit that relies on the individual's response to the test agent.

Quantitative fit test (QNFT) means an assessment of the adequacy of respirator fit by numerically measuring the amount of leakage into the respirator.

Respiratory inlet covering means that portion of a respirator that forms the protective barrier between the user's respiratory tract and an air-purifying device or breathing air source, or both. It may be a facepiece, helmet, hood, suit, or a mouthpiece respirator with nose clamp.

Self-contained breathing apparatus (SCBA) means an atmosphere-supplying respirator for which the breathing air source is designed to be carried by the user.

Service life means the period of time that a respirator, filter or sorbent, or other respiratory equipment provides adequate protection to the wearer.

Supplied-air respirator (SAR) or airline respirator means an atmosphere-supplying respirator for which the source of breathing air is not designed to be carried by the user.

This section means this respiratory protection standard.

Tight-fitting facepiece means a respiratory inlet covering that forms a complete seal with the face.

User seal check means an action conducted by the respirator user to determine if the respirator is properly seated to the face.

1910.134(c)
Respiratory protection program. This paragraph requires the employer to develop and implement a written respiratory protection program with required worksite-specific procedures and elements for required respirator use. The program must be administered by a suitably trained program administrator. In addition, certain program elements may be required for voluntary use to prevent potential hazards associated with the use of the respirator. The Small Entity Compliance Guide contains criteria for the selection of a program administrator and a sample program that meets the requirements of this paragraph. Copies of the Small Entity Compliance Guide will be available on or about April 8, 1998 from the Occupational Safety and Health Administration's Office of Publications, Room N 3101, 200 Constitution Avenue, NW, Washington, DC, 20210 (202-219-4667).

1910.134(c)(1)
In any workplace where respirators are necessary to protect the health of the employee or whenever respirators are required by the employer, the employer shall establish and implement a written respiratory protection program with worksite-specific procedures. The program shall be updated as necessary to reflect those changes in workplace conditions that affect respirator use. The employer shall include in the program the following provisions of this section, as applicable:

1910.134(c)(1)(i)
Procedures for selecting respirators for use in the workplace;
1910.134(c)(1)(ii)
Medical evaluations of employees required to use respirators;

1910.134(c)(1)(iii)
Fit testing procedures for tight-fitting respirators;
1910.134(c)(1)(iv)
Procedures for proper use of respirators in routine and reasonably foreseeable emergency situations;
1910.134(c)(1)(v)
Procedures and schedules for cleaning, disinfecting, storing, inspecting, repairing, discarding, and otherwise maintaining respirators;
1910.134(c)(1)(vi)
Procedures to ensure adequate air quality, quantity, and flow of breathing air for atmosphere-supplying respirators;
1910.134(c)(1)(vii)
Training of employees in the respiratory hazards to which they are potentially exposed during routine and emergency situations;
..1910.134(c)(1)(viii)

1910.134(c)(1)(viii)
Training of employees in the proper use of respirators, including putting on and removing them, any limitations on their use, and their maintenance; and
1910.134(c)(1)(ix)
Procedures for regularly evaluating the effectiveness of the program.
1910.134(c)(2)
Where respirator use is not required:
1910.134(c)(2)(i)
An employer may provide respirators at the request of employees or permit employees to use their own respirators, if the employer determines that such respirator use will not in itself create a hazard. If the employer determines that any voluntary respirator use is permissible, the employer shall provide the respirator users with the information contained in Appendix D to this section ("Information for Employees Using Respirators When Not Required Under the Standard"); and
1910.134(c)(2)(ii)
In addition, the employer must establish and implement those elements of a written respiratory protection program necessary to ensure that any employee using a respirator voluntarily is medically able to use that respirator, and that the respirator is cleaned, stored, and maintained so that its use does not present a health hazard to the user. Exception: Employers are not required to include in a written respiratory protection program those employees whose only use of respirators involves the voluntary use of filtering facepieces (dust masks).
1910.134(c)(3)

The employer shall designate a program administrator who is qualified by appropriate training or experience that is commensurate with the complexity of the program to administer or oversee the respiratory protection program and conduct the required evaluations of program effectiveness.
1910.134(c)(4)
The employer shall provide respirators, training, and medical evaluations at no cost to the employee.
1910.134(d)
Selection of respirators. This paragraph requires the employer to evaluate respiratory hazard(s) in the workplace, identify relevant workplace and user factors, and base respirator selection on these factors. The paragraph also specifies appropriately protective respirators for use in IDLH atmospheres, and limits the selection and use of air-purifying respirators.

1910.134(d)(1)
General requirements.
1910.134(d)(1)(i)
The employer shall select and provide an appropriate respirator based on the respiratory hazard(s) to which the worker is exposed and workplace and user factors that affect respirator performance and reliability.

1910.134(d)(1)(ii)
The employer shall select a NIOSH-certified respirator. The respirator shall be used in compliance with the conditions of its certification.
1910.134(d)(1)(iii)
The employer shall identify and evaluate the respiratory hazard(s) in the workplace; this evaluation shall include a reasonable estimate of employee exposures to respiratory hazard(s) and an identification of the contaminant's chemical state and physical form. Where the employer cannot identify or reasonably estimate the employee exposure, the employer shall consider the atmosphere to be IDLH.
..1910.134(d)(1)(iv)

1910.134(d)(1)(iv)
The employer shall select respirators from a sufficient number of respirator models and sizes so that the respirator is acceptable to, and correctly fits, the user.
1910.134(d)(2)
Respirators for IDLH atmospheres.
1910.134(d)(2)(i)
The employer shall provide the following respirators for employee use in IDLH atmospheres:
1910.134(d)(2)(i)(A)
A full facepiece pressure demand SCBA certified by NIOSH for a minimum service life of thirty minutes, or
1910.134(d)(2)(i)(B)
A combination full facepiece pressure demand supplied-air respirator (SAR) with auxiliary self-contained air supply.
1910.134(d)(2)(ii)
Respirators provided only for escape from IDLH atmospheres shall be NIOSH-certified for escape from the atmosphere in which they will be used.
1910.134(d)(2)(iii)
All oxygen-deficient atmospheres shall be considered IDLH. Exception: If the employer demonstrates that, under all foreseeable conditions, the oxygen concentration can be maintained within the ranges specified in Table II of this section (i.e., for the altitudes set out in the table), then any atmosphere-supplying respirator may be used.
1910.134(d)(3)

Respirators for atmospheres that are not IDLH.
1910.134(d)(3)(i)
The employer shall provide a respirator that is adequate to protect the health of the employee and ensure compliance with all other OSHA statutory and regulatory requirements, under routine and reasonably foreseeable emergency situations.
1910.134(d)(3)(i)(A)
Assigned Protection Factors (APFs) [Reserved]
1910.134(d)(3)(i)(B)
Maximum Use Concentration (MUC) [Reserved]
1910.134(d)(3)(ii)
The respirator selected shall be appropriate for the chemical state and physical form of the contaminant.

1910.134(d)(3)(iii)
For protection against gases and vapors, the employer shall provide:
1910.134(d)(3)(iii)(A)
An atmosphere-supplying respirator, or
1910.134(d)(3)(iii)(B)
An air-purifying respirator, provided that:
1910.134(d)(3)(iii)(B)(1)
The respirator is equipped with an end-of-service-life indicator (ESLI) certified by NIOSH for the contaminant; or
1910.134(d)(3)(iii)(B)(2)
If there is no ESLI appropriate for conditions in the employer's workplace, the employer implements a change schedule for canisters and cartridges that is based on objective information or data that will ensure that canisters and cartridges are changed before the end of their service life. The employer shall describe in the respirator program the information and data relied upon and the basis for the canister and cartridge change schedule and the basis for reliance on the data.
1910.134(d)(3)(iv)
For protection against particulates, the employer shall provide:
1910.134(d)(3)(iv)(A)
An atmosphere-supplying respirator; or
1910.134(d)(3)(iv)(B)
An air-purifying respirator equipped with a filter certified by NIOSH under 30 CFR part 11 as a high efficiency particulate air (HEPA) filter, or an air-purifying respirator equipped with a filter certified for particulates by NIOSH under 42 CFR part 84; or
1910.134(d)(3)(iv)(C)
For contaminants consisting primarily of particles with mass median aerodynamic diameters (MMAD) of at least 2 micrometers, an air-purifying respirator equipped with any filter certified for particulates by NIOSH.

TABLE I. -- ASSIGNED PROTECTION FACTORS
[RESERVED]

TABLE II

Altitude (ft.)	Oxygen deficient Atmospheres (% 0_2) for which the employer atmosphere-may rely on

	supplying respirators
Less than 3,001	16.0-19.5
3,001-4,000	16.4-19.5
4,001-5,000	17.1-19.5
5,001-6,000	17.8-19.5
6,001-7,000	18.5-19.5
7,001-8,000[1]	19.3-19.5.

[1]Above 8,000 feet the exception does not apply. Oxygen-enriched breathing air must be supplied above 14,000 feet.

1910.134(e)
Medical evaluation. Using a respirator may place a physiological burden on employees that varies with the type of respirator worn, the job and workplace conditions in which the respirator is used, and the medical status of the employee. Accordingly, this paragraph specifies the minimum requirements for medical evaluation that employers must implement to determine the employee's ability to use a respirator.

1910.134(e)(1)
General. The employer shall provide a medical evaluation to determine the employee's ability to use a respirator, before the employee is fit tested or required to use the respirator in the workplace. The employer may discontinue an employee's medical evaluations when the employee is no longer required to use a respirator.
1910.134(e)(2)
Medical evaluation procedures.
1910.134(e)(2)(i)
The employer shall identify a physician or other licensed health care professional (PLHCP) to perform medical evaluations using a medical questionnaire or an initial medical examination that obtains the same information as the medical questionnaire.
1910.134(e)(2)(ii)
The medical evaluation shall obtain the information requested by the questionnaire in Sections 1 and 2, Part A of Appendix C of this section.
1910.134(e)(3)
Follow-up medical examination.
1910.134(e)(3)(i)
The employer shall ensure that a follow-up medical examination is provided for an employee who gives a positive response to any question among questions 1 through 8 in Section 2, Part A of Appendix C or whose initial medical examination demonstrates the need for a follow-up medical examination.
1910.134(e)(3)(ii)
The follow-up medical examination shall include any medical tests, consultations, or diagnostic procedures that the PLHCP deems necessary to make a final determination.
1910.134(e)(4)
Administration of the medical questionnaire and examinations.
1910.134(e)(4)(i)
The medical questionnaire and examinations shall be administered confidentially during the employee's normal working hours or at a time and place convenient to the employee. The medical questionnaire shall be administered in a manner that ensures that the employee understands its content.
1910.134(e)(4)(ii)
The employer shall provide the employee with an opportunity to discuss the questionnaire and examination results with the PLHCP.

1910.134(e)(5)
Supplemental information for the PLHCP.
1910.134(e)(5)(i)
The following information must be provided to the PLHCP before the PLHCP makes a recommendation concerning an employee's ability to use a respirator:
1910.134(e)(5)(i)(A)
(A) The type and weight of the respirator to be used by the employee;
1910.134(e)(5)(i)(B)
The duration and frequency of respirator use (including use for rescue and escape);

1910.134(e)(5)(i)(C)
The expected physical work effort;
1910.134(e)(5)(i)(D)
Additional protective clothing and equipment to be worn; and
1910.134(e)(5)(i)(E)
Temperature and humidity extremes that may be encountered.
1910.134(e)(5)(ii)
Any supplemental information provided previously to the PLHCP regarding an employee need not be provided for a subsequent medical evaluation if the information and the PLHCP remain the same.

1910.134(e)(5)(iii)
The employer shall provide the PLHCP with a copy of the written respiratory protection program and a copy of this section.

Note to Paragraph (e)(5)(iii): When the employer replaces a PLHCP, the employer must ensure that the new PLHCP obtains this information, either by providing the documents directly to the PLHCP or having the documents transferred from the former PLHCP to the new PLHCP. However, OSHA does not expect employers to have employees medically reevaluated solely because a new PLHCP has been selected.
1910.134(e)(6)
Medical determination. In determining the employee's ability to use a respirator, the employer shall:
1910.134(e)(6)(i)
Obtain a written recommendation regarding the employee's ability to use the respirator from the PLHCP. The recommendation shall provide only the following information:
1910.134(e)(6)(i)(A)
Any limitations on respirator use related to the medical condition of the employee, or relating to the workplace conditions in which the respirator will be used, including whether or not the employee is medically able to use the respirator;
1910.134(e)(6)(i)(B)
The need, if any, for follow-up medical evaluations; and
1910.134(e)(6)(i)(C)
A statement that the PLHCP has provided the employee with a copy of the PLHCP's written recommendation.
1910.134(e)(6)(ii)
If the respirator is a negative pressure respirator and the PLHCP finds a medical condition that may place the employee's health at increased risk if the respirator is used, the employer shall provide a PAPR if the PLHCP's medical evaluation finds that the employee can use such a respirator; if a subsequent medical evaluation finds that the employee is medically able to use a negative pressure respirator, then the employer is no longer required to provide a PAPR.

1910.134(e)(7)
Additional medical evaluations. At a minimum, the employer shall provide additional medical evaluations that comply with the requirements of this section if:
1910.134(e)(7)(i)
An employee reports medical signs or symptoms that are related to ability to use a respirator;
1910.134(e)(7)(ii)
A PLHCP, supervisor, or the respirator program administrator informs the employer that an employee needs to be reevaluated;
1910.134(e)(7)(iii)
Information from the respiratory protection program, including observations made during fit testing and program evaluation, indicates a need for employee reevaluation; or
1910.134(e)(7)(iv)
A change occurs in workplace conditions (e.g., physical work effort, protective clothing, temperature) that may result in a substantial increase in the physiological burden placed on an employee.
1910.134(f)
Fit testing. This paragraph requires that, before an employee may be required to use any respirator with a negative or positive pressure tight-fitting facepiece, the employee must be fit tested with the same make, model, style, and size of respirator that will be used. This paragraph specifies the kinds of fit tests allowed, the procedures for conducting them, and how the results of the fit tests must be used.
1910.134(f)(1)
The employer shall ensure that employees using a tight-fitting facepiece respirator pass an appropriate qualitative fit test (QLFT) or quantitative fit test (QNFT) as stated in this paragraph.

1910.134(f)(2)
The employer shall ensure that an employee using a tight-fitting facepiece respirator is fit tested prior to initial use of the respirator, whenever a different respirator facepiece (size, style, model or make) is used, and at least annually thereafter.
1910.134(f)(3)
The employer shall conduct an additional fit test whenever the employee reports, or the employer, PLHCP, supervisor, or program administrator makes visual observations of, changes in the employee's physical condition that could affect respirator fit. Such conditions include, but are not limited to, facial scarring, dental changes, cosmetic surgery, or an obvious change in body weight.
1910.134(f)(4)
If after passing a QLFT or QNFT, the employee subsequently notifies the employer, program administrator, supervisor, or PLHCP that the fit of the respirator is unacceptable, the employee shall be given a reasonable opportunity to select a different respirator facepiece and to be retested.
..1910.134(f)(5)
1910.134(f)(5)
The fit test shall be administered using an OSHA-accepted QLFT or QNFT protocol. The OSHA-accepted QLFT and QNFT protocols and procedures are contained in Appendix A of this section.
1910.134(f)(6)
QLFT may only be used to fit test negative pressure air-purifying respirators that must achieve a fit factor of 100 or less.
1910.134(f)(7)

If the fit factor, as determined through an OSHA-accepted QNFT protocol, is equal to or greater than 100 for tight-fitting half facepieces, or equal to or greater than 500 for tight-fitting full facepieces, the QNFT has been passed with that respirator.

1910.134(f)(8)

Fit testing of tight-fitting atmosphere-supplying respirators and tight-fitting powered air-purifying respirators shall be accomplished by performing quantitative or qualitative fit testing in the negative pressure mode, regardless of the mode of operation (negative or positive pressure) that is used for respiratory protection.

1910.134(f)(8)(i)

Qualitative fit testing of these respirators shall be accomplished by temporarily converting the respirator user's actual facepiece into a negative pressure respirator with appropriate filters, or by using an identical negative pressure air-purifying respirator facepiece with the same sealing surfaces as a surrogate for the atmosphere-supplying or powered air-purifying respirator facepiece.

1910.134(f)(8)(ii)

Quantitative fit testing of these respirators shall be accomplished by modifying the facepiece to allow sampling inside the facepiece in the breathing zone of the user, midway between the nose and mouth. This requirement shall be accomplished by installing a permanent sampling probe onto a surrogate facepiece, or by using a sampling adapter designed to temporarily provide a means of sampling air from inside the facepiece.

1910.134(f)(8)(iii)

Any modifications to the respirator facepiece for fit testing shall be completely removed, and the facepiece restored to NIOSH-approved configuration, before that facepiece can be used in the workplace.

1910.134(g)

Use of respirators. This paragraph requires employers to establish and implement procedures for the proper use of respirators. These requirements include prohibiting conditions that may result in facepiece seal leakage, preventing employees from removing respirators in hazardous environments, taking actions to ensure continued effective respirator operation throughout the work shift, and establishing procedures for the use of respirators in IDLH atmospheres or in interior structural firefighting situations.

1910.134(g)(1)

Facepiece seal protection.

1910.134(g)(1)(i)

The employer shall not permit respirators with tight-fitting facepieces to be worn by employees who have:

1910.134(g)(1)(i)(A)

Facial hair that comes between the sealing surface of the facepiece and the face or that interferes with valve function; or

1910.134(g)(1)(i)(B)

Any condition that interferes with the face-to-facepiece seal or valve function.

1910.134(g)(1)(ii)

If an employee wears corrective glasses or goggles or other personal protective equipment, the employer shall ensure that such equipment is worn in a manner that does not interfere with the seal of the facepiece to the face of the user.

1910.134(g)(1)(iii)

For all tight-fitting respirators, the employer shall ensure that employees perform a user seal check each time they put on the respirator using the procedures in Appendix B-1 or procedures recommended by the respirator manufacturer that the employer demonstrates are as effective as those in Appendix B-1 of this section.

1910.134(g)(2)

Continuing respirator effectiveness.
1910.134(g)(2)(i)
Appropriate surveillance shall be maintained of work area conditions and degree of employee exposure or stress. When there is a change in work area conditions or degree of employee exposure or stress that may affect respirator effectiveness, the employer shall reevaluate the continued effectiveness of the respirator.
1910.134(g)(2)(ii)
The employer shall ensure that employees leave the respirator use area:
..1910.134(g)(2)(ii)(A)

1910.134(g)(2)(ii)(A)
To wash their faces and respirator facepieces as necessary to prevent eye or skin irritation associated with respirator use; or
1910.134(g)(2)(ii)(B)
If they detect vapor or gas breakthrough, changes in breathing resistance, or leakage of the facepiece; or
1910.134(g)(2)(ii)(C)
To replace the respirator or the filter, cartridge, or canister elements.
1910.134(g)(2)(iii)
If the employee detects vapor or gas breakthrough, changes in breathing resistance, or leakage of the facepiece, the employer must replace or repair the respirator before allowing the employee to return to the work area.

1910.134(g)(3)
Procedures for IDLH atmospheres. For all IDLH atmospheres, the employer shall ensure that:
1910.134(g)(3)(i)
One employee or, when needed, more than one employee is located outside the IDLH atmosphere;
1910.134(g)(3)(ii)
Visual, voice, or signal line communication is maintained between the employee(s) in the IDLH atmosphere and the employee(s) located outside the IDLH atmosphere;
1910.134(g)(3)(iii)
The employee(s) located outside the IDLH atmosphere are trained and equipped to provide effective emergency rescue;

1910.134(g)(3)(iv)
The employer or designee is notified before the employee(s) located outside the IDLH atmosphere enter the IDLH atmosphere to provide emergency rescue;
1910.134(g)(3)(v)
The employer or designee authorized to do so by the employer, once notified, provides necessary assistance appropriate to the situation;
1910.134(g)(3)(vi)
Employee(s) located outside the IDLH atmospheres are equipped with:
1910.134(g)(3)(vi)(A)
Pressure demand or other positive pressure SCBAs, or a pressure demand or other positive pressure supplied-air respirator with auxiliary SCBA; and either
1910.134(g)(3)(vi)(B)
Appropriate retrieval equipment for removing the employee(s) who enter(s) these hazardous atmospheres where retrieval equipment would contribute to the rescue of the employee(s) and would not increase the overall risk resulting from entry; or

1910.134(g)(3)(vi)(C)
Equivalent means for rescue where retrieval equipment is not required under paragraph (g)(3)(vi)(B).
1910.134(g)(4)
Procedures for interior structural firefighting. In addition to the requirements set forth under paragraph (g)(3), in interior structural fires, the employer shall ensure that:
1910.134(g)(4)(i)
At least two employees enter the IDLH atmosphere and remain in visual or voice contact with one another at all times;
1910.134(g)(4)(ii)
At least two employees are located outside the IDLH atmosphere; and
1910.134(g)(4)(iii)
All employees engaged in interior structural firefighting use SCBAs.

Note 1 to paragraph (g): One of the two individuals located outside the IDLH atmosphere may be assigned to an additional role, such as incident commander in charge of the emergency or safety officer, so long as this individual is able to perform assistance or rescue activities without jeopardizing the safety or health of any firefighter working at the incident.

Note 2 to paragraph (g): Nothing in this section is meant to preclude firefighters from performing emergency rescue activities before an entire team has assembled.
1910.134(h)
Maintenance and care of respirators. This paragraph requires the employer to provide for the cleaning and disinfecting, storage, inspection, and repair of respirators used by employees.

1910.134(h)(1)
Cleaning and disinfecting. The employer shall provide each respirator user with a respirator that is clean, sanitary, and in good working order. The employer shall ensure that respirators are cleaned and disinfected using the procedures in Appendix B-2 of this section, or procedures recommended by the respirator manufacturer, provided that such procedures are of equivalent effectiveness. The respirators shall be cleaned and disinfected at the following intervals:
1910.134(h)(1)(i)
Respirators issued for the exclusive use of an employee shall be cleaned and disinfected as often as necessary to be maintained in a sanitary condition;
1910.134(h)(1)(ii)
Respirators issued to more than one employee shall be cleaned and disinfected before being worn by different individuals;

1910.134(h)(1)(iii)
Respirators maintained for emergency use shall be cleaned and disinfected after each use; and
1910.134(h)(1)(iv)
Respirators used in fit testing and training shall be cleaned and disinfected after each use.
1910.134(h)(2)
Storage. The employer shall ensure that respirators are stored as follows:
1910.134(h)(2)(i)
All respirators shall be stored to protect them from damage, contamination, dust, sunlight, extreme temperatures, excessive moisture, and damaging chemicals, and they shall be packed or stored to prevent deformation of the facepiece and exhalation valve.

1910.134(h)(2)(ii)
In addition to the requirements of paragraph (h)(2)(i) of this section, emergency respirators shall be:
1910.134(h)(2)(ii)(A)
Kept accessible to the work area;
1910.134(h)(2)(ii)(B)
Stored in compartments or in covers that are clearly marked as containing emergency respirators; and
1910.134(h)(2)(ii)(C)
Stored in accordance with any applicable manufacturer instructions.
..1910.134(h)(3)

1910.134(h)(3)
Inspection.
1910.134(h)(3)(i)
The employer shall ensure that respirators are inspected as follows:
1910.134(h)(3)(i)(A)
All respirators used in routine situations shall be inspected before each use and during cleaning;
1910.134(h)(3)(i)(B)
All respirators maintained for use in emergency situations shall be inspected at least monthly and in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations, and shall be checked for proper function before and after each use; and
1910.134(h)(3)(i)(C)
Emergency escape-only respirators shall be inspected before being carried into the workplace for use.
1910.134(h)(3)(ii)
The employer shall ensure that respirator inspections include the following:
1910.134(h)(3)(ii)(A)
A check of respirator function, tightness of connections, and the condition of the various parts including, but not limited to, the facepiece, head straps, valves, connecting tube, and cartridges, canisters or filters; and
1910.134(h)(3)(ii)(B)
A check of elastomeric parts for pliability and signs of deterioration.
1910.134(h)(3)(iii)
In addition to the requirements of paragraphs (h)(3)(i) and (ii) of this section, self-contained breathing apparatus shall be inspected monthly. Air and oxygen cylinders shall be maintained in a fully charged state and shall be recharged when the pressure falls to 90% of the manufacturer's recommended pressure level. The employer shall determine that the regulator and warning devices function properly.
1910.134(h)(3)(iv)
For respirators maintained for emergency use, the employer shall:
1910.134(h)(3)(iv)(A)
Certify the respirator by documenting the date the inspection was performed, the name (or signature) of the person who made the inspection, the findings, required remedial action, and a serial number or other means of identifying the inspected respirator; and

1910.134(h)(3)(iv)(B)
Provide this information on a tag or label that is attached to the storage compartment for the respirator, is kept with the respirator, or is included in inspection reports stored as paper or electronic files. This information shall be maintained until replaced following a subsequent certification.

1910.134(h)(4)
Repairs. The employer shall ensure that respirators that fail an inspection or are otherwise found to be defective are removed from service, and are discarded or repaired or adjusted in accordance with the following procedures:
1910.134(h)(4)(i)
Repairs or adjustments to respirators are to be made only by persons appropriately trained to perform such operations and shall use only the respirator manufacturer's NIOSH-approved parts designed for the respirator;
1910.134(h)(4)(ii)
Repairs shall be made according to the manufacturer's recommendations and specifications for the type and extent of repairs to be performed; and
1910.134(h)(4)(iii)
Reducing and admission valves, regulators, and alarms shall be adjusted or repaired only by the manufacturer or a technician trained by the manufacturer.
1910.134(i)
Breathing air quality and use. This paragraph requires the employer to provide employees using atmosphere-supplying respirators (supplied-air and SCBA) with breathing gases of high purity.
1910.134(i)(1)
The employer shall ensure that compressed air, compressed oxygen, liquid air, and liquid oxygen used for respiration accords with the following specifications:
1910.134(i)(1)(i)
Compressed and liquid oxygen shall meet the United States Pharmacopoeia requirements for medical or breathing oxygen; and
..1910.134(i)(1)(ii)

1910.134(i)(1)(ii)
Compressed breathing air shall meet at least the requirements for Grade D breathing air described in ANSI/Compressed Gas Association Commodity Specification for Air, G-7.1-1989, to include:
1910.134(i)(1)(ii)(A)
Oxygen content (v/v) of 19.5-23.5%;
1910.134(i)(1)(ii)(B)
Hydrocarbon (condensed) content of 5 milligrams per cubic meter of air or less;
1910.134(i)(1)(ii)(C)
Carbon monoxide (CO) content of 10 ppm or less;

1910.134(i)(1)(ii)(D)
Carbon dioxide content of 1,000 ppm or less; and
1910.134(i)(1)(ii)(E)
Lack of noticeable odor.
1910.134(i)(2)
The employer shall ensure that compressed oxygen is not used in atmosphere-supplying respirators that have previously used compressed air.
1910.134(i)(3)
The employer shall ensure that oxygen concentrations greater than 23.5% are used only in equipment designed for oxygen service or distribution.
1910.134(i)(4)
The employer shall ensure that cylinders used to supply breathing air to respirators meet the following requirements:
1910.134(i)(4)(i)
Cylinders are tested and maintained as prescribed in the Shipping Container Specification Regulations of the Department of Transportation (49 CFR part 173 and part 178);

1910.134(i)(4)(ii)
Cylinders of purchased breathing air have a certificate of analysis from the supplier that the breathing air meets the requirements for Grade D breathing air; and

1910.134(i)(4)(iii)
The moisture content in the cylinder does not exceed a dew point of -50 deg.F (-45.6 deg.C) at 1 atmosphere pressure.
1910.134(i)(5)
The employer shall ensure that compressors used to supply breathing air to respirators are constructed and situated so as to:
1910.134(i)(5)(i)
Prevent entry of contaminated air into the air-supply system;
1910.134(i)(5)(ii)
Minimize moisture content so that the dew point at 1 atmosphere pressure is 10 degrees F (5.56 deg.C) below the ambient temperature;
1910.134(i)(5)(iii)
Have suitable in-line air-purifying sorbent beds and filters to further ensure breathing air quality. Sorbent beds and filters shall be maintained and replaced or refurbished periodically following the manufacturer's instructions.
1910.134(i)(5)(iv)
Have a tag containing the most recent change date and the signature of the person authorized by the employer to perform the change. The tag shall be maintained at the compressor.
1910.134(i)(6)
For compressors that are not oil-lubricated, the employer shall ensure that carbon monoxide levels in the breathing air do not exceed 10 ppm.
1910.134(i)(7)
For oil-lubricated compressors, the employer shall use a high-temperature or carbon monoxide alarm, or both, to monitor carbon monoxide levels. If only high-temperature alarms are used, the air supply shall be monitored at intervals sufficient to prevent carbon monoxide in the breathing air from exceeding 10 ppm.
1910.134(i)(8)
The employer shall ensure that breathing air couplings are incompatible with outlets for nonrespirable worksite air or other gas systems. No asphyxiating substance shall be introduced into breathing air lines.
1910.134(i)(9)
The employer shall use breathing gas containers marked in accordance with the NIOSH respirator certification standard, 42 CFR part 84.
1910.134(j)
Identification of filters, cartridges, and canisters. The employer shall ensure that all filters, cartridges and canisters used in the workplace are labeled and color coded with the NIOSH approval label and that the label is not removed and remains legible.
1910.134(k)
Training and information. This paragraph requires the employer to provide effective training to employees who are required to use respirators. The training must be comprehensive, understandable, and recur annually, and more often if necessary. This paragraph also requires the employer to provide the basic information on respirators in Appendix D of this section to employees who wear respirators when not required by this section or by the employer to do so.
1910.134(k)(1)
The employer shall ensure that each employee can demonstrate knowledge of at least the following:

1910.134(k)(1)(i)
Why the respirator is necessary and how improper fit, usage, or maintenance can compromise the protective effect of the respirator;
1910.134(k)(1)(ii)
What the limitations and capabilities of the respirator are;
1910.134(k)(1)(iii)
How to use the respirator effectively in emergency situations, including situations in which the respirator malfunctions;
1910.134(k)(1)(iv)
How to inspect, put on and remove, use, and check the seals of the respirator;
1910.134(k)(1)(v)
What the procedures are for maintenance and storage of the respirator;
1910.134(k)(1)(vi)
How to recognize medical signs and symptoms that may limit or prevent the effective use of respirators; and
1910.134(k)(1)(vii)
The general requirements of this section.
1910.134(k)(2)
The training shall be conducted in a manner that is understandable to the employee.
1910.134(k)(3)
The employer shall provide the training prior to requiring the employee to use a respirator in the workplace.
1910.134(k)(4)
An employer who is able to demonstrate that a new employee has received training within the last 12 months that addresses the elements specified in paragraph (k)(1)(i) through (vii) is not required to repeat such training provided that, as required by paragraph (k)(1), the employee can demonstrate knowledge of those element(s). Previous training not repeated initially by the employer must be provided no later than 12 months from the date of the previous training.
1910.134(k)(5)
Retraining shall be administered annually, and when the following situations occur:
1910.134(k)(5)(i)
Changes in the workplace or the type of respirator render previous training obsolete;
1910.134(k)(5)(ii)
Inadequacies in the employee's knowledge or use of the respirator indicate that the employee has not retained the requisite understanding or skill; or
1910.134(k)(5)(iii)
Any other situation arises in which retraining appears necessary to ensure safe respirator use.

1910.134(k)(6)
The basic advisory information on respirators, as presented in Appendix D of this section, shall be provided by the employer in any written or oral format, to employees who wear respirators when such use is not required by this section or by the employer.

1910.134(l)
Program evaluation. This section requires the employer to conduct evaluations of the workplace to ensure that the written respiratory protection program is being properly implemented, and to consult employees to ensure that they are using the respirators properly.

1910.134(l)(1)
The employer shall conduct evaluations of the workplace as necessary to ensure that the provisions of the current written program are being effectively implemented and that it continues to be effective.
1910.134(l)(2)
The employer shall regularly consult employees required to use respirators to assess the employees' views on program effectiveness and to identify any problems. Any problems that are identified during this assessment shall be corrected. Factors to be assessed include, but are not limited to:
..1910.134((l)(2)(i)

1910.134(l)(2)(i)
Respirator fit (including the ability to use the respirator without interfering with effective workplace performance);
1910.134(l)(2)(ii)
Appropriate respirator selection for the hazards to which the employee is exposed;
1910.134(l)(2)(iii)
Proper respirator use under the workplace conditions the employee encounters; and
1910.134(l)(2)(iv)
Proper respirator maintenance.
1910.134(m)
Recordkeeping. This section requires the employer to establish and retain written information regarding medical evaluations, fit testing, and the respirator program. This information will facilitate employee involvement in the respirator program, assist the employer in auditing the adequacy of the program, and provide a record for compliance determinations by OSHA.
..1910.134(m)(1)

1910.134(m)(1)
Medical evaluation. Records of medical evaluations required by this section must be retained and made available in accordance with 29 CFR 1910.1020.
1910.134(m)(2)
Fit testing.
1910.134(m)(2)(i)
The employer shall establish a record of the qualitative and quantitative fit tests administered to an employee including:
1910.134(m)(2)(i)(A)
The name or identification of the employee tested;
1910.134(m)(2)(i)(B)
Type of fit test performed;
1910.134(m)(2)(i)(C)
Specific make, model, style, and size of respirator tested;
1910.134(m)(2)(i)(D)
Date of test; and
1910.134(m)(2)(i)(E)
The pass/fail results for QLFTs or the fit factor and strip chart recording or other recording of the test results for QNFTs.
1910.134(m)(2)(ii)
Fit test records shall be retained for respirator users until the next fit test is administered.
1910.134(m)(3)
A written copy of the current respirator program shall be retained by the employer.
1910.134(m)(4)

Written materials required to be retained under this paragraph shall be made available upon request to affected employees and to the Assistant Secretary or designee for examination and copying.
1910.134(n)

Dates.
1910.134(n)(1)
Effective date. This section is effective April 8, 1998. The obligations imposed by this section commence on the effective date unless otherwise noted in this paragraph. Compliance with obligations that do not commence on the effective date shall occur no later than the applicable start-up date.
1910.134(n)(2)
Compliance dates. All obligations of this section commence on the effective date except as follows:
..1910.134(n)(2)(i)

1910.134(n)(2)(i)
The determination that respirator use is required (paragraph (a)) shall be completed no later than September 8, 1998.
1910.134(n)(2)(ii)
Compliance with provisions of this section for all other provisions shall be completed no later than October 5, 1998.
1910.134(n)(3)
The provisions of 29 CFR 1910.134 and 29 CFR 1926.103, contained in the 29 CFR parts 1900 to 1910.99 and the 29 CFR part 1926 editions, revised as of July 1, 1997, are in effect and enforceable until October 5, 1998, or during any administrative or judicial stay of the provisions of this section.
1910.134(n)(4)
Existing Respiratory Protection Programs. If, in the 12 month period proceeding April 8, 1998, the employer has conducted annual respirator training, fit testing, respirator program evaluation, or medical evaluations, the employer may use the results of those activities to comply with the corresponding provisions of this section, providing that these activities were conducted in a manner that meets the requirements of this section.
..1910.134(o)

1910.134(o)
Appendices.
1910.134(o)(1)
Compliance with Appendix A, Appendix B-1, Appendix B-2, and Appendix C of this section is mandatory.
1910.134(o)(2)
Appendix D of this section is non-mandatory and is not intended to create any additional obligations not otherwise imposed or to detract from any existing obligations.
[63 FR 1152, Jan. 8, 1998; 63 FR 20098, April 23, 1998]

Other Related Confined Space Rules

Under the California Labor Code and the California Occupational Safety and Health Act of 1973, all employers in California have the legal obligation to provide and maintain a safe and healthful workplace for employees. The general requirements for employers to provide an effective Injury and Illness Prevention Program are in Title 8 of the California Code of Regulations (T8 CCR), Section 3203.

The specific confined space regulatory requirements are in T8 CCR, Article 108, sections 5156 through 5158. Because confined space work may involve many different hazards, other regulatory requirements may also apply.

Section 5156 Identifies operations and industries that are regulated under Section 5158.
Section 5157 Covers all other industries. It contains requirements for practices and procedures to protect employees from the hazards of entry into permit-required confined spaces.
Section 5158 Applies specifically to construction, agriculture, marine terminals, shipyard operations, grain handlings, telecommunication, natural gas, and electric utilities.

To obtain a free copy of the Injury and Illness Prevention Program or the confined space standard, or for more information on these requirements, please call the nearest Cal/OSHA Consultation Service Office.

Employers needing on-site consultation may also call the Cal/OSHA Consultation Service Office for free professional assistance.

Cal/OSHA consultants advise employers of any changes needed to eliminate potential and existing hazards. Consultants do not participate in enforcement activities. When hazards are identified during an on-site consultation visit, consultants do not issue citations or penalties.

The ***Confined Space Guide*** has been developed to explain the hazards of confined space work and to assist employers in establishing and maintaining an effective confined space program. By implementing such a program, both employers and employees will be able to:
• Recognize, evaluate, and control confined space hazards.
• Save lives and protect employees from job-related injuries and illnesses.
• Promote safe and effective work practices.
• Reduce preventable workers' compensation losses.
• Comply with the law.

The *Confined Space Guide* contains information, definitions and requirements for entry into permit-required confined spaces (Section 5157). To call the attention of employers whose operations and industries are regulated under Section 5158, the confined space definition and requirements are distinctively highlighted.

To clarify and facilitate the understanding of confined space issues, the guide presents the information in the format of questions and answers and includes a list of the most frequently asked questions.

For easy reference, the guide is separated into six distinct main sections:

Rescue, which addresses questions about various types of rescue operations, rescue training, and equipment, along with the importance of well-planned rescue activities.

Definitions and Basics, which contains essential definitions of terms such as confined space, immediately dangerous to life and health (IDLH), and the permissible exposure limit (PEL). This section also addresses entry issues and issues relating to permit evaluation (including permit-required confined space reclassification, alternate procedures, and hot work permits).

Confined Space Hazards, which addresses specific atmospheric and physical problems that can be encountered when working in confined spaces as well as questions relating to Material Safety Data Sheets and atmospheric testing.

Hazard Controls, which addresses means of preventing accidents and controlling other problems by eliminating or controlling confined space hazards.

Training and Education, which addresses the importance of gaining new understanding of critical confined space issues and acquiring practical skills for successful confined space work. This section applies to the supervisor, the entrant, and the attendant.

Frequently Asked Questions, which contains a variety of other questions about miscellaneous confined space issues. At the back of this guide, there are six attachments intended to further assist employers who are starting to learn about confined spaces or for those who wish to improve an existing program.

Attachments A through D provide samples of hot work and permit-required confined space entry forms, Material Safety Data Sheets, atmospheric monitoring equipment information, and general testing protocols. Attachment E, "Setting Up a Permit-Required Confined Space Program," contains easy, step-by-step instructions for required and suggested actions in the implementation of a confined space program that meets regulatory requirements. Attachment F, "Permit-Required Confined Space (PRCS) Decision Flow Chart," helps employers to determine the required entry procedure as defined by the confined space standard. This guide does not list every conceivable confined space hazard. It is not intended as a legal interpretation of federal or state standards and should not be used as a substitute for training.

Cal-OSHA Title 8, Article 108, 5157(k) also provides the "Host Employer" the same options but further states "The employer shall ensure that at least one standby person at the site is trained and immediately available to perform rescue and emergency services."

Fed-OSHA 1910.146(k)**(1)**(i) and Cal-OSHA 5157(k)(1)(B) both require the rescue service shall be trained to perform the assigned rescue duties and to utilize rescue equipment. This brings the number up from the one standby person to a minimum of 3 CSER trained personnel to perform a non-hazardous material entry rescue. Team members will have to be supplemented with support personnel who have training in specific functions like confined space awareness, ventilation, monitoring, site security, etc., as the incident becomes more complex.

Complete California Rule can be found at:
http://www.dir.ca.gov/dosh/dosh_publications/ConfSpa.pdf

OSHA Construction Confined Space Standard

On May 4, 2015, OSHA issued a new standard for construction work in confined spaces, which became effective August 3, 2015. Confined spaces can present physical and atmospheric hazards that can be avoided if they are recognized and addressed prior to entering these spaces to perform work. The new standard, Subpart AA of 29 CFR 1926 will help prevent construction workers from being hurt or killed by eliminating and isolating hazards in confined spaces at construction sites similar to the way workers in other industries are already protected.

§1926.1203 General requirements.
(a) Before it begins work at a worksite, each employer must ensure that a competent person identifies all confined spaces in which one or more of the employees it directs may work, and identifies each space that is a permit space, through consideration and evaluation of the elements of that space, including testing as necessary.
(b) If the workplace contains one or more permit spaces, the employer who identifies, or who receives notice of, a permit space must:
(1) Inform exposed employees by posting danger signs or by any other equally effective means, of the existence and location of, and the danger posed by, each permit space; and
Note to paragraph §1926.1203(b)(1). A sign reading "DANGER -- PERMITREQUIRED CONFINED SPACE, DO NOT ENTER" or using other similar language would satisfy the requirement for a sign.
(2) Inform, in a timely manner and in a manner other than posting, its employees' authorized representatives and the controlling contractor of the existence and location of, and the danger posed by, each permit space.
(c) Each employer who identifies, or receives notice of, a permit space and has not authorized employees it directs to work in that space must take effective measures to prevent those employees from entering that permit space, in addition to complying with all other applicable requirements of this standard.
(d) If any employer decides that employees it directs will enter a permit space, that employer must have a written permit space program that complies with §1926.1204 implemented at the construction site. The written program must be made available prior to and during entry operations for inspection by employees and their authorized representatives.
(e) An employer may use the alternate procedures specified in paragraph §1926.1203(e)(2) for entering a permit space only under the conditions set forth in paragraph §1926.1203(e)(1).
(1) An employer whose employees enter a permit space need not comply with §§1926.1204 through 1206 and §§1926.1208 through 1211, provided that all of the following conditions are met:
(i) The employer can demonstrate that all physical hazards in the space are eliminated or isolated through engineering controls so that the only hazard posed by the permit space is an actual or potential hazardous atmosphere;
(ii) The employer can demonstrate that continuous forced air ventilation alone is sufficient to maintain that permit space safe for entry, and that, in the event the ventilation system stops working, entrants can exit the space safely;

(iii) The employer develops monitoring and inspection data that supports the demonstrations required by paragraphs §1926.1203(e)(1)(i) and §1926.1203(e)(1)(ii);
(iv) If an initial entry of the permit space is necessary to obtain the data required by paragraph §1926.1203(e)(1)(iii), the entry is performed in compliance with §§1926.1204 through 1211 of this standard;
(v) The determinations and supporting data required by paragraphs §1926.1203(e)(1)(i), (e)(1)(ii), and (e)(1)(iii) are documented by the employer and are made available to each employee who enters the permit space under the terms of paragraph §1926.1203(e) or to that employee's authorized representative; and
(vi) Entry into the permit space under the terms of paragraph §1926.1203(e)(1) is performed in accordance with the requirements of paragraph §1926.1203(e)(2).
Note to paragraph §1926.1203(e)(1). See paragraph §1926.1203(g) for reclassification of a permit space after all hazards within the space have been eliminated.
(2) The following requirements apply to entry into permit spaces that meet the conditions set forth in paragraph §1926.1203(e)(1):
(i) Any conditions making it unsafe to remove an entrance cover must be eliminated before the cover is removed.
(ii) When entrance covers are removed, the opening must be immediately guarded by a railing, temporary cover, or other temporary barrier that will prevent an accidental fall through the opening and that will protect each employee working in the space from foreign objects entering the space.
(iii) Before an employee enters the space, the internal atmosphere must be tested, with a calibrated direct-reading instrument, for oxygen content, for flammable gases and vapors, and for potential toxic air contaminants, in that order. Any employee who enters the space, or that employee's authorized representative, must be provided an opportunity to observe the
pre-entry testing required by this paragraph.
(iv) No hazardous atmosphere is permitted within the space whenever any employee is inside the space.
(v) Continuous forced air ventilation must be used, as follows:
(A) An employee must not enter the space until the forced air ventilation has eliminated any hazardous atmosphere;
(B) The forced air ventilation must be so directed as to ventilate the immediate areas where an employee is or will be present within the space and must continue until all employees have left the space;
(C) The air supply for the forced air ventilation must be from a clean source and must not increase the hazards in the space.
(vi) The atmosphere within the space must be continuously monitored unless the entry employer can demonstrate that equipment for continuous monitoring is not commercially available or periodic monitoring is sufficient. If continuous monitoring is used, the employer must ensure that
the monitoring equipment has an alarm that will notify all entrants if a specified atmospheric threshold is achieved, or that an employee will check the monitor with sufficient frequency to ensure that entrants have adequate time to escape. If continuous monitoring is not used, periodic monitoring is required. All monitoring must ensure that the continuous forced air ventilation is preventing the accumulation of a hazardous atmosphere. Any employee who enters the space, or that employee's authorized representative, must be provided with an opportunity to observe the testing required by this paragraph.
(vii) If a hazard is detected during entry:

(A) Each employee must leave the space immediately;
(B) The space must be evaluated to determine how the hazard developed; and
(C) The employer must implement measures to protect employees from the hazard before any subsequent entry takes place.
(viii) The employer must ensure a safe method of entering and exiting the space.
If a hoisting system is used, it must be designed and manufactured for personnel hoisting; however, a job-made hoisting system is permissible if it is approved for personnel hoisting by a registered professional engineer, in writing, prior to use.
(ix) The employer must verify that the space is safe for entry and that the pre-entry measures required by paragraph §1926.1203(e)(2) have been taken, through a written certification that contains the date, the location of the space, and the signature of the person providing the certification. The certification must be made before entry and must be made available to
each employee entering the space or to that employee's authorized representative.
(f) When there are changes in the use or configuration of a non-permit confined space that might increase the hazards to entrants, or some indication that the initial evaluation of the space may not have been adequate, each entry employer must have a competent person re-evaluate that space and, if necessary, reclassify it as a permit required confined space.
(g) A space classified by an employer as a permit-required confined space may only be reclassified as a non-permit confined space when a competent person determines that all of the applicable requirements in paragraphs §1926.1203(g)(1) through (g)(4) have been met:
(1) If the permit space poses no actual or potential atmospheric hazards and if all hazards within the space are eliminated or isolated without entry into the space (unless the employer can demonstrate that doing so without entry is infeasible), the permit space may be reclassified as a non-permit confined space for as long as the non-atmospheric hazards remain eliminated or isolated;
(2) The entry employer must eliminate or isolate the hazards without entering the space, unless it can demonstrate that this is infeasible. If it is necessary to enter the permit space to eliminate or isolate hazards, such entry must be performed under §§1926.1204 through 1211 of this standard. If testing and inspection during that entry demonstrate that the hazards within the permit space have been eliminated or isolated, the permit space may be reclassified as a non-permit confined space for as long as the hazards remain eliminated or isolated; Note to paragraph §1926.1203(g)(2). Control of atmospheric hazards through forced air ventilation does not constitute elimination or isolation of the hazards. Paragraph §1926.1203(e) covers permit space entry where the employer can demonstrate that forced air ventilation alone will control all hazards in the space.
(3) The entry employer must document the basis for determining that all hazards in a permit space have been eliminated or isolated, through a certification that contains the date, the location of the space, and the signature of the person making the determination. The certification must be made available to each employee entering the space or to that employee's authorized representative; and
(4) If hazards arise within a permit space that has been reclassified as a non-permit space under paragraph §1926.1203(g), each employee in the space must exit the space. The entry employer must then reevaluate the space and reclassify it as a permit space as appropriate in accordance with all other applicable provisions of this standard.
(h) Permit Space Entry Communication and Coordination:

(1) Before entry operations begin, the host employer must provide the following information, if it has it, to the controlling contractor:
(i) The location of each known permit space;
(ii) The hazards or potential hazards in each space or the reason it is a permit space; and
(iii) Any precautions that the host employer or any previous controlling contractor or entry employer implemented for the protection of employees in the permit space.
(2) Before entry operations begin, the controlling contractor must:
(i) Obtain the host employer's information about the permit space hazards and previous entry operations; and
(ii) Provide the following information to each entity entering a permit space and any other entity at the worksite whose activities could foreseeably result in a hazard in the permit space:
(A) The information received from the host employer;
(B) Any additional information the controlling contractor has about the subjects listed in paragraph (h)(1) of this section; and
(C) The precautions that the host employer, controlling contractor, or other entry employers implemented for the protection of employees in the permit spaces.
(3) Before entry operations begin, each entry employer must:
(i) Obtain all of the controlling contractor's information regarding permit space hazards and entry operations; and
(ii) Inform the controlling contractor of the permit space program that the entry employer will follow, including any hazards likely to be confronted or created in each permit space.
(4) The controlling contractor and entry employer(s) must coordinate entry operations when:
(i) More than one entity performs permit space entry at the same time; or
(ii) Permit space entry is performed at the same time that any activities that could foreseeably result in a hazard in the permit space are performed.
(5) After entry operations:
(i) The controlling contractor must debrief each entity that entered a permit space regarding the permit space program followed and any hazards confronted or created in the permit space(s) during entry operations;
(ii) The entry employer must inform the controlling contractor in a timely manner of the permit space program followed and of any hazards confronted or created in the permit space(s) during entry operations; and
(iii) The controlling contractor must apprise the host employer of the information exchanged with the entry entities pursuant to this subparagraph.
Note to paragraph §1926.1203(h). Unless a host employer or controlling contractor has or will have employees in a confined space, it is not required to enter any confined space to collect the information specified in this paragraph (h).
(iv) If there is no controlling contractor present at the worksite, the requirements for, and role of, controlling contactors in §1926.1203 must be fulfilled by the host employer or other employer who arranges to have employees of another employer perform work that involves permit space entry.

§1926.1204 Permit-Required Confined Space Program.
Each entry employer must:
(a) Implement the measures necessary to prevent unauthorized entry;
(b) Identify and evaluate the hazards of permit spaces before employees enter them;
(c) Develop and implement the means, procedures, and practices necessary for safe permit space entry operations, including, but not limited to, the following:
(1) Specifying acceptable entry conditions;
(2) Providing each authorized entrant or that employee's authorized representative with the opportunity to observe any monitoring or testing of permit spaces;
(3) Isolating the permit space and physical hazard(s) within the space;
(4) Purging, inerting, flushing, or ventilating the permit space as necessary to eliminate or control atmospheric hazards;
Note to paragraph §1204(c)(4). When an employer is unable to reduce the atmosphere below 10 percent LFL, the employer may only enter if the employer inerts the space so as to render the entire atmosphere in the space noncombustible, and the employees use PPE to address any other atmospheric hazards (such as oxygen deficiency), and the employer eliminates or isolates all physical hazards in the space.
(5) Determining that, in the event the ventilation system stops working, the monitoring procedures will detect an increase in atmospheric hazard levels in sufficient time for the entrants to safely exit the permit space;
(6) Providing pedestrian, vehicle, or other barriers as necessary to protect entrants from external hazards;
(7) Verifying that conditions in the permit space are acceptable for entry throughout the duration of an authorized entry, and ensuring that employees are not allowed to enter into, or remain in, a permit space with a hazardous atmosphere unless the employer can demonstrate that personal protective equipment (PPE) will provide effective protection for each employee in the permit space and provides the appropriate PPE to each employee; and
(8) Eliminating any conditions (for example, high pressure) that could make it unsafe to remove an entrance cover.
(d) Provide the following equipment (specified in paragraphs §1926.1204(d)(1) through (d)(9)) at no cost to each employee, maintain that equipment properly, and ensure that each employee uses that equipment properly:
(1) Testing and monitoring equipment needed to comply with paragraph §1926.1204(e);
(2) Ventilating equipment needed to obtain acceptable entry conditions;
(3) Communications equipment necessary for compliance with paragraphs §1926.1208(c) and §1926.1209(e), including any necessary electronic communication equipment for attendants assessing entrants' status in multiple spaces;
(4) Personal protective equipment insofar as feasible engineering and work-practice controls do not adequately protect employees;
Note to paragraph §1926.1204(d)(4). The requirements of subpart E of this part and other PPE requirements continue to apply to the use of PPE in a permit space. For example, if employees use respirators, then the respirator requirements in §1926.103 (Respiratory protection) must be met.
(5) Lighting equipment that meets the minimum illumination requirements in §1926.56, that is approved for the ignitable or combustible properties of the specific gas, vapor, dust, or fiber that will be present, and that is sufficient to enable employees to see well enough to work safely and to exit the space quickly in an emergency;

(6) Barriers and shields as required by paragraph §1926.1204(c)(4);
(7) Equipment, such as ladders, needed for safe ingress and egress by authorized entrants;
(8) Rescue and emergency equipment needed to comply with paragraph §1926.1204(i), except to the extent that the equipment is provided by rescue services; and
(9) Any other equipment necessary for safe entry into, safe exit from, and rescue from, permit spaces.
(e) Evaluate permit space conditions in accordance with the following paragraphs (e)(1) through (6) of this section when entry operations are conducted:
(1) Test conditions in the permit space to determine if acceptable entry conditions exist before changes to the space's natural ventilation are made, and before entry is authorized to begin, except that, if an employer demonstrates that isolation of the space is infeasible because the space is large or is part of a continuous system (such as a sewer), the employer must:
(i) Perform pre-entry testing to the extent feasible before entry is authorized; and,
(ii) If entry is authorized, continuously monitor entry conditions in the areas where authorized entrants are working, except that employers may use periodic monitoring in accordance with paragraph §1926.1204(e)(2) for monitoring an atmospheric hazard if they can demonstrate that equipment for continuously monitoring that hazard is not commercially available;
(iii) Provide an early-warning system that continuously monitors for non-isolated engulfment hazards. The system must alert authorized entrants and attendants in sufficient time for the authorized entrants to safely exit the space.
(2) Continuously monitor atmospheric hazards unless the employer can demonstrate that the equipment for continuously monitoring a hazard is not commercially available or that periodic monitoring is of sufficient frequency to ensure that the atmospheric hazard is being controlled at safe levels. If continuous monitoring is not used, periodic monitoring is required with sufficient frequency to ensure that acceptable entry conditions are being maintained during the course of entry operations;
(3) When testing for atmospheric hazards, test first for oxygen, then for combustible gases and vapors, and then for toxic gases and vapors;
(4) Provide each authorized entrant or that employee's authorized representative an opportunity to observe the pre-entry and any subsequent testing or monitoring of permit spaces;
(5) Reevaluate the permit space in the presence of any authorized entrant or that employee's authorized representative who requests that the employer conduct such reevaluation because there is some indication that the evaluation of that space may not have been adequate; and
(6) Immediately provide each authorized entrant or that employee's authorized representative with the results of any testing conducted in accordance with §1926.1204 of this standard.
(f) Provide at least one attendant outside the permit space into which entry is authorized for the duration of entry operations;
(1) Attendants may be assigned to more than one permit space provided the duties described in §1926.1209 of this standard can be effectively performed for each permit space.
(2) Attendants may be stationed at any location outside the permit space as long as the duties described in §1926.1209 of this standard can be effectively performed for each permit space to which the attendant is assigned.

(g) If multiple spaces are to be assigned to a single attendant, include in the permit program the means and procedures to enable the attendant to respond to an emergency affecting one or more of those permit spaces without distraction from the attendant's responsibilities under §1926.1209 of this standard;
(h) Designate each person who is to have an active role (as, for example, authorized entrants, attendants, entry supervisors, or persons who test or monitor the atmosphere in a permit space) in entry operations, identify the duties of each such employee, and provide each such employee with the training required by §1926.1207 of this standard;
(i) Develop and implement procedures for summoning rescue and emergency services (including procedures for summoning emergency assistance in the event of a failed non-entry rescue), for rescuing entrants from permit spaces, for providing necessary emergency services to rescued employees, and for preventing unauthorized personnel from attempting a rescue;
(j) Develop and implement a system for the preparation, issuance, use, and cancellation of entry permits as required by this standard, including the safe termination of entry operations under both planned and emergency conditions;
(k) Develop and implement procedures to coordinate entry operations, in consultation with the controlling contractor, when employees of more than one employer are working simultaneously in a permit space or elsewhere on the worksite where their activities could, either alone or in conjunction with the activities within a permit space, foreseeably result in a hazard within the confined space, so that employees of one employer do not endanger the employees of any other employer;
(l) Develop and implement procedures (such as closing off a permit space and canceling the permit) necessary for concluding the entry after entry operations have been completed;
(m) Review entry operations when the measures taken under the permit space program may not protect employees and revise the program to correct deficiencies found to exist before subsequent entries are authorized; and
Note to paragraph §1926.1204(m). Examples of circumstances requiring the review of the permit space program include, but are not limited to: any unauthorized entry of a permit space, the detection of a permit space hazard not covered by the permit, the detection of a condition prohibited by the permit, the occurrence of an injury or near-miss during entry, a change in the use or configuration of a permit space, and employee complaints about the effectiveness of the program.
(n) Review the permit space program, using the canceled permits retained under paragraph §1926.1205(f), within 1 year after each entry and revise the program as necessary to ensure that employees participating in entry operations are protected from permit space hazards.
Note to paragraph §1926.1204(n). Employers may perform a single annual review covering all entries performed during a 12-month period. If no entry is performed during a 12-month period, no review is necessary.

§1926.1205 Permitting Process.
(a) Before entry is authorized, each entry employer must document the completion of measures required by paragraph §1926.1204(c) of this standard by preparing an entry permit.
(b) Before entry begins, the entry supervisor identified on the permit must sign the entry permit to authorize entry.
(c) The completed permit must be made available at the time of entry to all authorized entrants or their authorized representatives, by posting it at the entry portal or by any other equally effective means, so that the entrants can confirm that pre-entry preparations have been completed.
(d) The duration of the permit may not exceed the time required to complete the assigned task or job identified on the permit in accordance with paragraph §1926.1206(b) of this standard.
(e) The entry supervisor must terminate entry and take the following action when any of the following apply:
(1) Cancel the entry permit when the entry operations covered by the entry permit have been completed; or
(2) Suspend or cancel the entry permit and fully reassess the space before allowing reentry when a condition that is not allowed under the entry permit arises in or near the permit space and that condition is temporary in nature and does not change the configuration of the space or create any new hazards within it; and
(3) Cancel the entry permit when a condition that is not allowed under the entry permit arises in or near the permit space and that condition is not covered by subparagraph (e)(2) of this section.
(f) The entry employer must retain each canceled entry permit for at least 1 year to facilitate the review of the permit-required confined space program required by paragraph §1926.1204(n) of this standard. Any problems encountered during an entry operation must be noted on the pertinent permit so that appropriate revisions to the permit space program can be made.

§1926.1206 Entry permit.
The entry permit that documents compliance with this section and authorizes entry to a permit space must identify:
(a) The permit space to be entered;
(b) The purpose of the entry;
(c) The date and the authorized duration of the entry permit;
(d) The authorized entrants within the permit space, by name or by such other means (for example, through the use of rosters or tracking systems) as will enable the attendant to determine quickly and accurately, for the duration of the permit, which authorized entrants are inside the permit space;
Note to paragraph §1926.1206(d). This requirement may be met by inserting a reference on the entry permit as to the means used, such as a roster or tracking system, to keep track of the authorized entrants within the permit space.
(e) Means of detecting an increase in atmospheric hazard levels in the event the ventilation system stops working;
(f) Each person, by name, currently serving as an attendant;
(g) The individual, by name, currently serving as entry supervisor, and the signature or initials of each entry supervisor who authorizes entry;
(h) The hazards of the permit space to be entered;

(i) The measures used to isolate the permit space and to eliminate or control permit space hazards before entry;
Note to paragraph §1926.1206(i). Those measures can include, but are not limited to, the lockout or tagging of equipment and procedures for purging, inerting, ventilating, and flushing permit spaces.
(j) The acceptable entry conditions;
(k) The results of tests and monitoring performed under paragraph §1926.1204(e) of this standard, accompanied by the names or initials of the testers and by an indication of when the tests were performed;
(l) The rescue and emergency services that can be summoned and the means (such as the equipment to use and the numbers to call) for summoning those services;
(m) The communication procedures used by authorized entrants and attendants to maintain contact during the entry;
(n) Equipment, such as personal protective equipment, testing equipment, communications equipment, alarm systems, and rescue equipment, to be provided for compliance with this standard;
(o) Any other information necessary, given the circumstances of the particular confined space, to ensure employee safety; and
(p) Any additional permits, such as for hot work, that have been issued to authorize work in the permit space.

§1926.1207 Training.
(a) The employer must provide training to each employee whose work is regulated by this standard, at no cost to the employee, and ensure that the employee possesses the understanding, knowledge, and skills necessary for the safe performance of the duties assigned under this standard. This training must result in an understanding of the hazards in the permit space and the methods used to isolate, control or in other ways protect employees from these hazards, and for those employees not authorized to perform entry rescues, in the dangers of attempting such rescues.
(b) Training required by this section must be provided to each affected employee:
(1) In both a language and vocabulary that the employee can understand;
(2) Before the employee is first assigned duties under this standard;
(3) Before there is a change in assigned duties;
(4) Whenever there is a change in permit space entry operations that presents a hazard about which an employee has not previously been trained; and
(5) Whenever there is any evidence of a deviation from the permit space entry procedures required by paragraph §1926.1204(c) of this standard or there are inadequacies in the employee's knowledge or use of these procedures.
(c) The training must establish employee proficiency in the duties required by this standard and must introduce new or revised procedures, as necessary, for compliance with this standard.
(d) The employer must maintain training records to show that the training required by paragraphs §1926.1207(a) through (c) of this standard has been accomplished. The training records must contain each employee's name, the name of the trainers, and the dates of training. The documentation must be available for inspection by employees and their authorized representatives, for the period of time the employee is employed by that employer.

§1926.1208 Duties of authorized entrants.
The entry employer must ensure that all authorized entrants:
(a) Are familiar with and understand the hazards that may be faced during entry, including information on the mode, signs or symptoms, and consequences of the exposure;
(b) Properly use equipment as required by paragraph §1926.1204(d) of this standard;
(c) Communicate with the attendant as necessary to enable the attendant to assess entrant status and to enable the attendant to alert entrants of the need to evacuate the space as required by paragraph §1926.1209(f) of this standard;
(d) Alert the attendant whenever:
(1) There is any warning sign or symptom of exposure to a dangerous situation; or
(2) The entrant detects a prohibited condition; and
(e) Exit from the permit space as quickly as possible whenever:
(1) An order to evacuate is given by the attendant or the entry supervisor;
(2) There is any warning sign or symptom of exposure to a dangerous situation;
(3) The entrant detects a prohibited condition; or
(4) An evacuation alarm is activated.

§1926.1209 Duties of attendants.
The entry employer must ensure that each attendant:
(a) Is familiar with and understands the hazards that may be faced during entry, including information on the mode, signs or symptoms, and consequences of the exposure;
(b) Is aware of possible behavioral effects of hazard exposure in authorized entrants;
(c) Continuously maintains an accurate count of authorized entrants in the permit space and ensures that the means used to identify authorized entrants under paragraph 1926.1206(d) of this standard accurately identifies who is in the permit space;
(d) Remains outside the permit space during entry operations until relieved by another attendant;
Note to paragraph §1926.1209(d). Once an attendant has been relieved by another attendant, the relieved attendant may enter a permit space to attempt a rescue when the employer's permit space program allows attendant entry for rescue and the attendant has been trained and equipped for rescue operations as required by paragraph §1926.1211(a).
(e) Communicates with authorized entrants as necessary to assess entrant status and to alert entrants of the need to evacuate the space under paragraph §1926.1208(e);
(f) Assesses activities and conditions inside and outside the space to determine if it is safe for entrants to remain in the space and orders the authorized entrants to evacuate the permit space immediately under any of the following conditions:
(1) If there is a prohibited condition;
(2) If the behavioral effects of hazard exposure are apparent in an authorized entrant;
(3) If there is a situation outside the space that could endanger the authorized entrants; or
(4) If the attendant cannot effectively and safely perform all the duties required under §1926.1209 of this standard;
(g) Summons rescue and other emergency services as soon as the attendant determines that authorized entrants may need assistance to escape from permit space hazards;
(h) Takes the following actions when unauthorized persons approach or enter a permit space while entry is underway:

(1) Warns the unauthorized persons that they must stay away from the permit space;
(2) Advises the unauthorized persons that they must exit immediately if they have entered the permit space; and (3) Informs the authorized entrants and the entry supervisor if unauthorized persons
have entered the permit space;
(i) Performs non-entry rescues as specified by the employer's rescue procedure; and
(j) Performs no duties that might interfere with the attendant's primary duty to assess and protect the authorized entrants.

§1926.1210 Duties of entry supervisors.
The entry employer must ensure that each entry supervisor:
(a) Is familiar with and understands the hazards that may be faced during entry, including information on the mode, signs or symptoms, and consequences of the exposure;
(b) Verifies, by checking that the appropriate entries have been made on the permit, that all tests specified by the permit have been conducted and that all procedures and equipment specified by the permit are in place before endorsing the permit and allowing entry to begin;
(c) Terminates the entry and cancels or suspends the permit as required by paragraph 1926.1205(e) of this standard;
(d) Verifies that rescue services are available and that the means for summoning them are operable, and that the employer will be notified as soon as the services become unavailable;
(e) Removes unauthorized individuals who enter or who attempt to enter the permit space during entry operations; and
(f) Determines, whenever responsibility for a permit space entry operation is transferred, and at intervals dictated by the hazards and operations performed within the space, that entry operations remain consistent with terms of the entry permit and that acceptable entry conditions are maintained.

§1926.1211 Rescue and emergency services.
(a) An employer who designates rescue and emergency services, pursuant to paragraph §1926.1204(i) of this standard, must:
(1) Evaluate a prospective rescuer's ability to respond to a rescue summons in a timely manner, considering the hazard(s) identified;
Note to paragraph §1926.1211(a)(1). What will be considered timely will vary according to the specific hazards involved in each entry.

For example, §1926.103—Respiratory Protection requires that employers provide a standby
person or persons capable of immediate action to rescue employee(s) wearing respiratory protection while in work areas defined as IDLH atmospheres.
(2) Evaluate a prospective rescue service's ability, in terms of proficiency with rescue-related tasks and equipment, to function appropriately while rescuing entrants from the particular permit space or types of permit spaces identified;
(3) Select a rescue team or service from those evaluated that:
(i) Has the capability to reach the victim(s) within a time frame that is appropriate for the permit space hazard(s) identified;
(ii) Is equipped for, and proficient in, performing the needed rescue services;

(iii) Agrees to notify the employer immediately in the event that the rescue service becomes unavailable;
(4) Inform each rescue team or service of the hazards they may confront when called on to perform rescue at the site; and
(5) Provide the rescue team or service selected with access to all permit spaces from which rescue may be necessary so that the rescue team or service can develop appropriate rescue plans and practice rescue operations.
(b) An employer whose employees have been designated to provide permit space rescue and/or emergency services must take the following measures and provide all equipment and training at no cost to those employees:
(1) Provide each affected employee with the personal protective equipment (PPE) needed to conduct permit space rescues safely and train each affected employee so the employee is proficient in the use of that PPE;
(2) Train each affected employee to perform assigned rescue duties. The employer must ensure that such employees successfully complete the training required and establish proficiency as authorized entrants, as provided by §§1926.1207 and 1926.1208 of this standard;
(3) Train each affected employee in basic first aid and cardiopulmonary resuscitation (CPR). The employer must ensure that at least one member of the rescue team or service holding a current certification in basic first aid and CPR is available; and
(4) Ensure that affected employees practice making permit space rescues before attempting an actual rescue, and at least once every 12 months, by means of simulated rescue operations in which they remove dummies, manikins, or actual persons from the actual permit spaces or from representative permit spaces, except practice rescue is not required where the affected employees properly performed a rescue operation during the last 12 months in the same permit space the authorized entrant will enter, or in a similar permit space. Representative permit spaces must, with respect to opening size, configuration, and accessibility, simulate the types of permit spaces from which rescue is to be performed.
(c) Non-entry rescue is required unless the retrieval equipment would increase the overall risk of entry or would not contribute to the rescue of the entrant. The employer must designate an entry rescue service whenever non-entry rescue is not selected. Whenever non-entry rescue is selected, the entry employer must ensure that retrieval systems or methods are used whenever an authorized entrant enters a permit space, and must confirm, prior to entry, that emergency assistance would be available in the event that non-entry rescue fails. Retrieval systems must meet the following requirements:
(1) Each authorized entrant must use a chest or full body harness, with a retrieval line attached at the center of the entrant's back near shoulder level, above the entrant's head, or at another point which the employer can establish presents a profile small enough for the successful removal of the entrant. Wristlets or anklets may be used in lieu of the chest or full body harness if the employer can demonstrate that the use of a chest or full body harness is infeasible or creates a greater hazard and that the use of wristlets or anklets is the safest and most
effective alternative.
(2) The other end of the retrieval line must be attached to a mechanical device or fixed point outside the permit space in such a manner that rescue can begin as soon as the rescuer becomes aware that rescue is necessary. A mechanical device must be available to retrieve personnel from vertical type permit spaces more than 5 feet (1.52 meters) deep.

(3) Equipment that is unsuitable for retrieval must not be used, including, but not limited to, retrieval lines that have a reasonable probability of becoming entangled with the retrieval lines used by other authorized entrants, or retrieval lines that will not work due to the internal configuration of the permit space.
(d) If an injured entrant is exposed to a substance for which a Safety Data Sheet (SDS) or other similar written information is required to be kept at the worksite, that SDS or written information must be made available to the medical facility treating the exposed entrant.

§1926.1212 Employee participation.
(a) Employers must consult with affected employees and their authorized representatives on the development and implementation of all aspects of the permit space program required by §1926.1203 of this standard.
(b) Employers must make available to each affected employee and his/her authorized representatives all information required to be developed by this standard.

§1926.1213 Provision of documents to Secretary.
For each document required to be retained in this standard, the retaining employer must make the document available on request to the Secretary of Labor or the Secretary's designee.

Post Quiz Answers

Confined Space Chapter Answers
1. Bodily enter and perform work, 2. Continuous employee occupancy, 3. The potential for engulfing an entrant, 4. Confined spaces, 5. Inherent hazards, 6. Both inherent and induced hazards, 7. A variety of vaults,8. An oxygen-deficient atmosphere, 9. Hazard, 10. Serious hazards, 11. Most frequently unrecognized types of confined spaces, 12. Potential oxygen-deficient atmospheres, 13. Electrical shock, 14. Heat prostration, 15. Another type of confined workspace, 16. True, 17. Heat prostration, 18. Permits, 19. Entry supervisor, 20. True

Hazard Communication Post Quiz Answers
1. Right to know, 2. Old standard, 3. Modified standard, 4. Hazard communication standard (HazCom), 5. SDS/MSDS, 6. Hazard Communication Standard (HCS), 7. Hazardous chemicals, 8. Chemical safety, 9. Hazardous chemicals, 10. Hazard class and category, 11. Recognition and understanding, 12. An international approach, 13. GHS, 14. Hazard determination, 15. HCS, 16. Standardizing and harmonizing, 17. Hazard criteria, 18. Hazardous properties of chemicals

Respirator Protection Chapter Post Quiz Answers
1. False, 2. True, 3. True, 4. True, 5. False, 6. True, 7. False, 8. True, 9. False, 10. True, 11. True, 12. False, 13. True, 14. True, 15. True, 16. True, 17. True, 18. False, 19. True, 20. True

Excavation Chapter Post Quiz Answers
1. Identifying, 2. Knowledgeable, 3. Performs, 4. Inspection(s) or Inspect, 5. Inspection(s) or Inspect, 6. Knowledge, 7. Determine(s), 8. Maintain(s), 9. Maintain(s), 10. Monitor, 11. Determine(d), 12. Precautions,13. Employees, 14. Excavation(s), 15. Access or egress, 16. Means of egress, 17. Properly secured, 18. Excavation(s)

General Safety Chapter Post Quiz Answers
1. Control the energy, 2. All affected employees, 3. Specific procedures, 4. Equipment de-energization, 5. Energy source, 6. Authorized employees, 7. Lockout devices, 8. Tagout devices, 9. Assigned, 10. "Fire triangle", 11. Tetrahedron, 12. Fire triangle/ tetrahedron, 13. Fuel sources, 14. Risk of exposure, 15. Asbestos standards, 16. Regulated areas, 17. Hands-on experience, 18. OSHA

REFERENCES

National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Criteria for a Recommended Standard, Working in Confined Spaces. DHEW (NIOSH) Publication No. 80-106, December 1979.

National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Criteria for a Recommended Standard, Occupational Exposure to Carbon Monoxide, HSM Publication 73-11000, 1972.

Golden, F. Hypothermia: A Problem for North Sea Industries, J. Soc. Occup. Med. 1976; 26:85-88.

National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Alert - Request for Assistance in Preventing Occupational Fatalities in Confined Spaces. DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No. 86-110, January, 1986.

National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, A Guide to Safety in Confined Spaces. DHHS (NIOSH) Publication No. 87-113, July, 1987.

National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health, Guide to Industrial Respiratory Protection. DHHS (NIOSH) Publication 87-116, September, 1987.

American National Standards Institute, Inc. (ANSI), Safety Requirements for Confined Spaces, ANSI Z117.1-1989.

National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), Fire Department Self-Contained Breathing Apparatus Program, NFPA 1404, 3-1, 1989.

National Fire Protection Association, (NFPA), Fire Department Occupational Safety and Health Program, NFPA 1500, 3-1, 1987.

We welcome you to complete the assignment in Microsoft Word. You can find the assignment at www.abctlc.com.

Once complete, just simply fax or e-mail the answer key along with the registration page to us and allow two weeks for grading.

Once we grade it, we will e-mail a certificate of completion to you. Call us if you need any help.

If you need your certificate back within 48 hours, you may be asked to pay a rush service fee of $50.00.

You can download the assignment in Microsoft Word from TLC's website under the Assignment Page. www.abctlc.com

You will have 90 days to successfully complete this assignment with a score of 70% or better.

If you need any assistance, please contact TLC's Student Services.